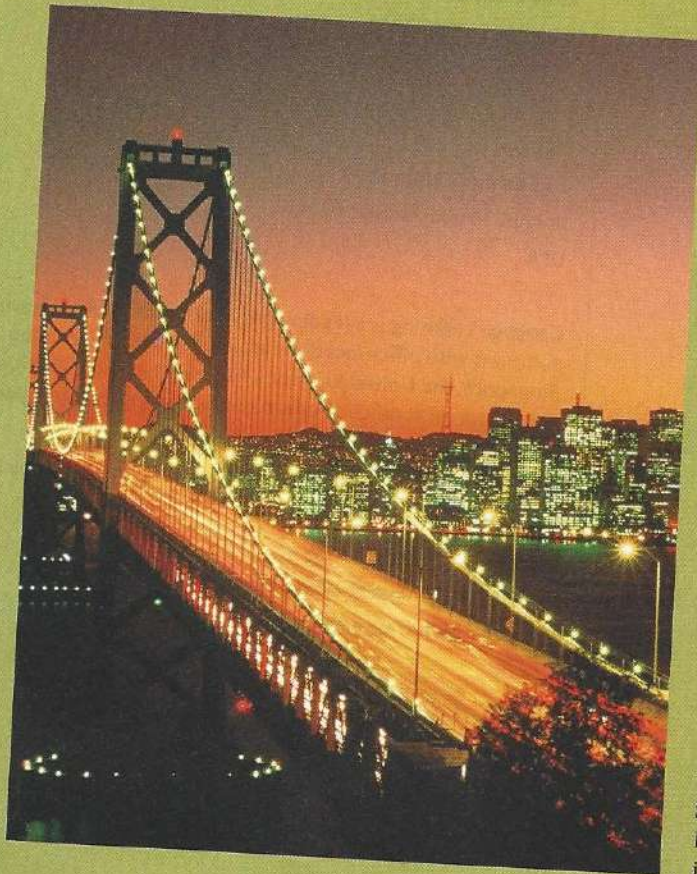


FIFTH EDITION

2

# GRAMMAR *in* CONTEXT

SANDRA N. ELBAUM



The cover photo shows the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge over San Francisco Bay in California.

 HEINLE  
CENGAGE Learning™

Australia • Brazil • Japan • Korea • Mexico • Singapore • Spain • United Kingdom • United States



**Grammar in Context 2, Fifth Edition**  
**Student Book**  
**Sandra N. Elbaum**

**Publisher:** Sherrise Roehr  
**Acquisitions Editor:** Tom Jefferies  
**Development Editor:** Sarah Sandoski  
**Technology Development Manager:**  
Debie Mirtle  
**Director of Global Marketing:** Ian Martin  
**Director of US Marketing:** Jim McDonough  
**Product Marketing Manager:** Katie Kelley  
**Marketing Manager:** Caitlin Driscoll  
**Content Project Manager:** Andrea Bobotas  
**Senior Print Buyer:** Susan Spencer  
**Project Manager:** Chrystie Hopkins  
**Production Services:** Nesbitt Graphics, Inc.  
**Interior Design and Cover Design:**  
Muse Group, Inc.

© 2010 Sandra N. Elbaum

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at [www.cengage.com/permissions](http://www.cengage.com/permissions)

Further permissions questions can be emailed to [permissionrequest@cengage.com](mailto:permissionrequest@cengage.com)

Library of Congress Control Number: 2009936998

ISBN 13: 978-1-4240-7901-8

ISBN 10: 1-4240-7901-2

**Heinle**  
20 Channel Center Street  
Boston, Massachusetts 02210  
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate our local office at [international.cengage.com/region](http://international.cengage.com/region)

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

Visit Heinle online at [elt.heinle.com](http://elt.heinle.com)

Visit our corporate website at [www.cengage.com](http://www.cengage.com)



# Contents

## Lesson 1

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>The Simple Present Tense; Frequency Words</b> .....	1
<b>Context</b>	<b>Pets and Other Animals</b> .....	1
	<b>READING</b> Americans and Their Pets .....	2
	<b>1.1</b> <i>Be</i> —Forms and Uses .....	3
	<b>1.2</b> Contractions with <i>Be</i> .....	5
	<b>READING</b> Dog Walkers .....	7
	<b>1.3</b> Questions with <i>Be</i> .....	8
	<b>READING</b> Guide Dogs .....	14
	<b>1.4</b> The Simple Present Tense—Affirmative Statements .....	15
	<b>1.5</b> Negative Statements with the Simple Present Tense .....	17
	<b>READING</b> Search and Rescue Dogs .....	18
	<b>1.6</b> Questions with the Simple Present Tense .....	19
	<b>1.7</b> <i>Wh-</i> Questions with a Preposition .....	21
	<b>1.8</b> Questions About Meaning, Spelling, Cost, and Time .....	23
	<b>READING</b> Marianne and Sparky .....	26
	<b>1.9</b> Simple Present Tense with Frequency Words .....	27
	<b>1.10</b> Position of Frequency Words and Expressions .....	29
	<b>1.11</b> Questions with <i>Ever</i> .....	31
	<b>1.12</b> Questions with <i>How Often</i> and Answers with Frequency Expressions ..	32
	<b>SUMMARY</b> .....	33
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> .....	34
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> .....	36
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> .....	37
	<b>EXPANSION</b> .....	40

## Lesson 2

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>The Present Continuous Tense; Action and Nonaction Verbs; the Future Tense</b> .....	43
<b>Context</b>	<b>Getting Older</b> .....	43
	<b>READING</b> Retirement Living .....	44
	<b>2.1</b> Present Continuous Tense .....	46
	<b>READING</b> Life After Retirement .....	48
	<b>2.2</b> Using the Present Continuous for Longer Actions .....	49
	<b>2.3</b> Questions with the Present Continuous Tense .....	52
	<b>READING</b> Technology and the Generation Gap .....	56
	<b>2.4</b> Contrasting the Simple Present and the Present Continuous .....	58
	<b>2.5</b> Action and Nonaction Verbs .....	61



<b>READING</b> The Graying of America . . . . .	66
<b>2.6</b> The Future Tense with <i>Will</i> . . . . .	67
<b>2.7</b> The Future Tense with <i>Be Going To</i> . . . . .	70
<b>2.8</b> Choosing <i>Will</i> or <i>Be Going To</i> . . . . .	72
<b>2.9</b> Future Tense + Time/ <i>If</i> Clause . . . . .	75
<b>SUMMARY</b> . . . . .	79
<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> . . . . .	80
<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> . . . . .	81
<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> . . . . .	82
<b>EXPANSION</b> . . . . .	85

## Lesson 3

<b>Grammar Context</b>	<b>Habitual Past with <i>Used To</i>; the Simple Past Tense</b> . . . . .	87
	<b>Working Toward Equality</b> . . . . .	87
	<b>READING</b> Equal Rights for All . . . . .	88
	<b>3.1</b> Habitual Past with <i>Used To</i> . . . . .	90
	<b>READING</b> George Dawson—Life Is So Good . . . . .	92
	<b>3.2</b> Past Tense of <i>Be</i> . . . . .	93
	<b>3.3</b> The Simple Past Tense of Regular Verbs . . . . .	95
	<b>3.4</b> The Simple Past Tense of Irregular Verbs . . . . .	97
	<b>READING</b> Barack Obama and <i>Dreams from My Father</i> . . . . .	99
	<b>3.5</b> Negative Statements . . . . .	100
	<b>READING</b> Questions and Answers about Barack Obama . . . . .	101
	<b>3.6</b> Questions with the Simple Past Tense . . . . .	102
	<b>SUMMARY</b> . . . . .	105
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> . . . . .	106
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> . . . . .	107
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> . . . . .	108
	<b>EXPANSION</b> . . . . .	111

## Lesson 4

<b>Grammar Context</b>	<b>Possessive Forms; Object Pronouns; Reflexive Pronouns; Questions</b> . . .	115
	<b>Weddings</b> . . . . .	115
	<b>READING</b> A Traditional American Wedding . . . . .	116
	<b>4.1</b> Possessive Forms of Nouns . . . . .	117
	<b>4.2</b> Possessive Adjectives . . . . .	119
	<b>4.3</b> Possessive Pronouns . . . . .	120
	<b>4.4</b> Questions with <i>Whose</i> . . . . .	123
	<b>4.5</b> Object Pronouns . . . . .	124
	<b>READING</b> New Wedding Trends . . . . .	127
	<b>4.6</b> Direct and Indirect Objects . . . . .	129
	<b>4.7</b> <i>Say</i> and <i>Tell</i> . . . . .	130



	<b>READING</b> Economizing on a Wedding . . . . .	131
	<b>4.8</b> Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	132
	<b>READING</b> Questions and Answers about an American Wedding . . . . .	135
	<b>4.9</b> Questions about the Subject or Complement . . . . .	136
	<b>SUMMARY</b> . . . . .	141
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> . . . . .	142
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> . . . . .	144
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> . . . . .	146
	<b>EXPANSION</b> . . . . .	149

## Lesson 5

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Singular and Plural; Count and Noncount Nouns; <i>There + Be</i>; Quantity Words</b> . . . . .	151
<b>Context</b>	<b>Thanksgiving, Pilgrims, and Native Americans</b> . . . . .	151
	<b>READING</b> A Typical Thanksgiving . . . . .	152
	<b>5.1</b> Noun Plurals . . . . .	153
	<b>5.2</b> Using the Singular and Plural for Generalizations . . . . .	156
	<b>5.3</b> Special Cases of Singular and Plural . . . . .	157
	<b>READING</b> The Origin of Thanksgiving . . . . .	158
	<b>5.4</b> Count and Noncount Nouns . . . . .	159
	<b>5.5</b> Nouns That Can Be Both Count or Noncount . . . . .	161
	<b>READING</b> Recipe for Turkey Stuffing . . . . .	163
	<b>5.6</b> Quantities with Count and Noncount Nouns . . . . .	164
	<b>READING</b> Taking the Land from the Native Americans . . . . .	165
	<b>5.7</b> <i>There + a Form of Be</i> . . . . .	166
	<b>5.8</b> Using <i>There</i> . . . . .	167
	<b>READING</b> Navajo Code Talkers . . . . .	169
	<b>5.9</b> Quantity Expressions— An Overview . . . . .	170
	<b>5.10</b> <i>Some, Any, A, No</i> . . . . .	171
	<b>5.11</b> <i>A Lot Of, Much, Many</i> . . . . .	173
	<b>5.12</b> <i>A Lot Of vs. Too Much/Too Many</i> . . . . .	174
	<b>5.13</b> <i>A Few, Several, A Little</i> . . . . .	176
	<b>5.14</b> <i>A Few vs. Few; A Little vs. Little</i> . . . . .	177
	<b>SUMMARY</b> . . . . .	181
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> . . . . .	182
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> . . . . .	183
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> . . . . .	184
	<b>EXPANSION</b> . . . . .	186

## Lesson 6

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Adjectives; Noun Modifiers; Adverbs; <i>Too/Enough/Very/A Lot Of</i></b> . . . . .	189
<b>Context</b>	<b>Health</b> . . . . .	189



<b>READING</b> Obesity: A National Problem	190
<b>6.1</b> Adjectives	192
<b>6.2</b> Noun Modifiers	194
<b>READING</b> Obesity: The Solution	196
<b>6.3</b> Adverbs of Manner	198
<b>6.4</b> Adjective vs. Adverb	200
<b>READING</b> Sleep	202
<b>6.5</b> <i>Too</i> and <i>Enough</i>	203
<b>6.6</b> <i>Too</i> and <i>Very</i> and <i>A Lot Of</i>	205
<b>SUMMARY</b>	206
<b>EDITING ADVICE</b>	207
<b>EDITING QUIZ</b>	208
<b>TEST/REVIEW</b>	209
<b>EXPANSION</b>	210

## Lesson 7

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Time Words and Time Clauses; the Past Continuous Tense</b>	213
<b>Context</b>	<b>Immigrants and Refugees</b>	213
	<b>READING</b> Ellis Island	214
	<b>7.1</b> <i>When, Until, While</i>	215
	<b>7.2</b> <i>When</i> and <i>Whenever</i>	217
	<b>7.3</b> Time Words	218
	<b>7.4</b> The Past Continuous Tense—Forms	220
	<b>READING</b> Terence and Charlotte—Refugees	220
	<b>7.5</b> The Past Continuous Tense—with Specific Times	221
	<b>7.6</b> The Past Continuous + a <i>When</i> Clause	222
	<b>READING</b> Albert Einstein—Refugee from Germany	223
	<b>7.7</b> The Past Continuous in a <i>While</i> Clause	225
	<b>7.8</b> <i>Was/Were Going To</i>	228
	<b>7.9</b> Simple Past vs. Past Continuous with <i>When</i>	229
	<b>7.10</b> Simple Past vs. Past Continuous	230
	<b>7.11</b> Using the <i>-ing</i> Form After Time Words	231
	<b>SUMMARY</b>	232
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b>	233
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b>	234
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b>	234
	<b>EXPANSION</b>	236

## Lesson 8

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Modals; Related Expressions</b>	239
<b>Context</b>	<b>Renting an Apartment</b>	239
	<b>8.1</b> Modals and Related Expressions—An Overview	240



	<b>READING</b> An Apartment Lease . . . . .	240
	<b>8.2</b> Negatives with Modals . . . . .	242
	<b>8.3</b> Statements and Questions with Modals . . . . .	243
	<b>8.4</b> <i>Must, Have To, Have Got To</i> . . . . .	244
	<b>8.5</b> Obligation with <i>Must</i> or <i>Be Supposed To</i> . . . . .	246
	<b>8.6</b> <i>Can, May, Could</i> , and Alternate Expressions . . . . .	248
	<b>READING</b> Tenants' Rights . . . . .	250
	<b>8.7</b> <i>Should; Had Better</i> . . . . .	252
	<b>READING</b> Using Craigslist.org to Find a Roommate . . . . .	254
	<b>8.8</b> Negatives of Modals . . . . .	256
	<b>READING</b> The New Neighbors . . . . .	260
	<b>8.9</b> <i>Must</i> for Conclusions . . . . .	261
	<b>8.10</b> <i>Will</i> and <i>May/Might</i> . . . . .	264
	<b>READING</b> At a Garage Sale . . . . .	266
	<b>8.11</b> Using Modals and Questions for Politeness . . . . .	268
	<b>SUMMARY</b> . . . . .	271
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> . . . . .	272
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> . . . . .	273
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> . . . . .	274
	<b>EXPANSION</b> . . . . .	276

## Lesson 9

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>The Present Perfect; The Present Perfect Continuous</b> . . . . .	279
<b>Context</b>	<b>The Internet</b> . . . . .	279
	<b>9.1</b> The Present Perfect Tense—An Overview . . . . .	280
	<b>READING</b> Google . . . . .	280
	<b>9.2</b> The Past Participle . . . . .	282
	<b>9.3</b> The Present Perfect—Contractions and Negatives . . . . .	284
	<b>9.4</b> Adding an Adverb . . . . .	285
	<b>9.5</b> The Present Perfect—Statements and Questions . . . . .	286
	<b>9.6</b> Continuation from Past to Present . . . . .	287
	<b>9.7</b> The Simple Present vs. the Present Perfect . . . . .	290
	<b>9.8</b> The Present Perfect vs. the Simple Past . . . . .	292
	<b>9.9</b> The Present Perfect Continuous—An Overview . . . . .	294
	<b>READING</b> Genealogy . . . . .	294
	<b>9.10</b> The Present Perfect Continuous—Forms . . . . .	295
	<b>9.11</b> The Present Perfect Continuous—Use . . . . .	297
	<b>READING</b> E-Books . . . . .	301
	<b>9.12</b> The Present Perfect with Repetition from Past to Present . . . . .	302
	<b>9.13</b> The Simple Past vs. the Present Perfect with Repetition . . . . .	304
	<b>9.14</b> The Present Perfect with Indefinite Past Time . . . . .	305
	<b>9.15</b> Answering a Present Perfect Question . . . . .	307



<b>SUMMARY</b> .....	310
<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> .....	311
<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> .....	313
<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> .....	314
<b>EXPANSION</b> .....	316

## Lesson 10

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Gerunds; Infinitives</b> .....	319
<b>Context</b>	<b>Finding a Job</b> .....	319
	<b>10.1</b> Gerunds—An Overview .....	320
	<b>READING</b> Finding a Job .....	320
	<b>10.2</b> Gerund as Subject .....	323
	<b>10.3</b> Gerund after Verb .....	325
	<b>10.4</b> Gerund after Preposition .....	327
	<b>10.5</b> Gerund in Adverbial Phrase .....	330
	<b>10.6</b> Infinitives—An Overview .....	332
	<b>READING</b> Tips on Writing a Résumé .....	332
	<b>10.7</b> Infinitive as Subject .....	334
	<b>10.8</b> Infinitive after Adjective .....	336
	<b>10.9</b> Infinitive after Verb .....	338
	<b>10.10</b> Gerund or Infinitive after Verb .....	340
	<b>10.11</b> Object before Infinitive .....	341
	<b>10.12</b> Infinitive to Show Purpose .....	343
	<b>READING</b> Rita's Story .....	344
	<b>10.13</b> <i>Used To</i> vs. <i>Be Used To</i> .....	346
	<b>SUMMARY</b> .....	350
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b> .....	351
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b> .....	352
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b> .....	353
	<b>EXPANSION</b> .....	355

## Lesson 11

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Adjective Clauses</b> .....	357
<b>Context</b>	<b>Making Connections—Old Friends and New</b> .....	357
	<b>11.1</b> Adjective Clauses—An Overview .....	358
	<b>READING</b> Finding Old Friends .....	358
	<b>11.2</b> Relative Pronoun as Subject .....	360
	<b>11.3</b> Relative Pronoun as Object .....	362
	<b>11.4</b> <i>Where</i> and <i>When</i> .....	366
	<b>11.5</b> Formal vs. Informal .....	367
	<b>READING</b> Social Networking in the Twenty-First Century .....	368
	<b>11.6</b> <i>Whose</i> + Noun .....	369

SUMMARY	373
EDITING ADVICE	373
EDITING QUIZ	375
TEST/REVIEW	376
EXPANSION	377

## Lesson 12

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Superlatives; Comparatives</b>	379
<b>Context</b>	<b>Sports and Athletes</b>	379
	<b>12.1</b> Superlatives and Comparatives—An Overview	380
	<b>READING</b> Golf and Tiger Woods	380
	<b>12.2</b> The Superlative Form	381
	<b>12.3</b> Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives and Adverbs	382
	<b>12.4</b> Superlatives and Word Order	386
	<b>READING</b> Americans' Attitude Toward Soccer	387
	<b>12.5</b> Comparatives	388
	<b>12.6</b> Comparatives and Word Order	390
	<b>READING</b> An Amazing Athlete	392
	<b>12.7</b> <i>As . . . As</i>	393
	<b>12.8</b> <i>As Many/Much . . . As</i>	395
	<b>12.9</b> <i>The Same . . . As</i>	397
	<b>12.10</b> Equality with Nouns or Adjectives	398
	<b>READING</b> Football and Soccer	400
	<b>12.11</b> Similarity with <i>Like</i> and <i>Alike</i>	401
	<b>12.12</b> <i>Be Like</i>	403
	<b>12.13</b> Same or Different	404
	<b>SUMMARY</b>	407
	<b>EDITING ADVICE</b>	407
	<b>EDITING QUIZ</b>	408
	<b>TEST/REVIEW</b>	409
	<b>EXPANSION</b>	411

## Lesson 13

<b>Grammar</b>	<b>Passive Voice and Active Voice</b>	415
<b>Context</b>	<b>The Law</b>	415
	<b>13.1</b> The Passive Voice and the Active Voice—An Overview	416
	<b>READING</b> Jury Duty	416
	<b>13.2</b> The Passive Voice	417
	<b>13.3</b> The Passive Voice—Form and Uses	418
	<b>13.4</b> Negatives and Questions with the Passive Voice	422
	<b>READING</b> Unusual Lawsuits	424
	<b>13.5</b> Choosing Active Voice or Passive Voice	425



SUMMARY	430
EDITING ADVICE	431
EDITING QUIZ	432
TEST/REVIEW	433
EXPANSION	435

## Lesson 14

<b>Grammar Context</b>	Articles; <i>Other/Another</i> ; Indefinite Pronouns	437
	Money	437
	14.1 Articles—An Overview	438
	READING Kids and Money	438
	14.2 The Indefinite Article—Classifying or Identifying the Subject	439
	14.3 The Indefinite Article—Introducing a Noun	440
	14.4 The Definite Article	442
	14.5 Making Generalizations	445
	14.6 General or Specific with Quantity Words	448
	READING Bills, Bills, Bills	449
	14.7 <i>Another</i> and <i>Other</i>	451
	14.8 More About <i>Another</i> and <i>Other</i>	452
	READING The High Cost of a College Education	454
	14.9 Definite and Indefinite Pronouns	457
	SUMMARY	460
	EDITING ADVICE	461
	EDITING QUIZ	462
	TEST/REVIEW	463
	EXPANSION	465

## Appendices

A.	Spelling and Pronunciation of Verbs	AP1
B.	Irregular Noun Plurals	AP4
C.	Spelling Rules for Adverbs Ending in <i>-ly</i>	AP5
D.	Metric Conversion Chart	AP6
E.	The Verb <i>Get</i>	AP8
F.	<i>Make</i> and <i>Do</i>	AP10
G.	Prepositions of Time	AP11
H.	Verbs and Adjectives Followed by a Preposition	AP12
I.	Direct and Indirect Objects	AP13
J.	Capitalization Rules	AP14
K.	Glossary of Grammatical Terms	AP15
L.	Special Uses of Articles	AP20
M.	Alphabetical List of Irregular Verb Forms	AP22
N.	Map of the United States of America	AP24

## Index

Index	.I1
-------	-----



# Acknowledgments

Many thanks to Dennis Hogan, Sherrise Roehr, and Tom Jefferies from Heinle Cengage for their ongoing support of the *Grammar in Context* series. I would especially like to thank my development editor, Sarah Sandoski, for her patience, sensitivity, keen eye to detail, and invaluable suggestions.

And many thanks to my students at Truman College, who have increased my understanding of my own language and taught me to see life from another point of view. By sharing their observations, questions, and life stories, they have enriched my life enormously.

This new edition is dedicated to the millions of displaced people in the world. The U.S. is the new home to many refugees, who survived unspeakable hardships in Burundi, Rwanda, Sudan, Burma, Bhutan, and other countries. Their resiliency in starting a new life and learning a new language is a tribute to the human spirit.—*Sandra N. Elbaum*

Heinle would like to thank the following people for their contributions:

- |   |   |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|
| <b>Elizabeth A. Adler-Coleman</b><br>Sunrise Mountain High School<br>Las Vegas, NV    | <b>Antoinette B. d'Oronzio</b><br>Hillsborough Community College-Dale Mabry Campus<br>Tampa, FL | <b>Sandra Kawamura</b><br>Sacramento City College<br>Sacramento, CA                      | <b>Debbie Ockey</b><br>Fresno, CA  |
| <b>Dorothy Avondstondt</b><br>Miami Dade College<br>Miami, FL                         | <b>Rhonda J. Farley</b><br>Cosumnes River College<br>Sacramento, CA                             | <b>Bill Keniston</b><br>Normandale Community College<br>Bloomington, MN                  | <b>Lesa Perry</b><br>University of Nebraska at Omaha<br>Omaha, NE                |
| <b>Judith A. G. Benka</b><br>Normandale Community College<br>Bloomington, MN          | <b>Jennifer Farnell</b><br>University of Connecticut American Language Program<br>Stamford, CT  | <b>Michael Larsen</b><br>American River College<br>Sacramento, CA                        | <b>Herbert Pierson</b><br>St. John's University<br>New York City, NY             |
| <b>Carol Brutza</b><br>Gateway Community College<br>New Haven, CT                     | <b>Gail Fernandez</b><br>Bergen Community College<br>Paramus, NJ                                | <b>Bea C. Lawn</b><br>Gavilan College<br>Gilroy, CA                                      | <b>Dina Poggi</b><br>De Anza College<br>Cupertino, CA                            |
| <b>Lyn Buchheit</b><br>Community College of Philadelphia<br>Philadelphia, PA          | <b>Irasema Fernandez</b><br>Miami Dade College<br>Miami, FL                                     | <b>Rob Lee</b><br>Pasadena City College<br>Pasadena, CA                                  | <b>Steven Rashba</b><br>University of Bridgeport<br>Bridgeport, CT               |
| <b>Charlotte M. Calobrisi</b><br>Northern Virginia Community College<br>Annandale, VA | <b>Abigail-Marie Fiatarone</b><br>Mesa Community College<br>Mesa, AZ                            | <b>Oranit Limmaneeprasert</b><br>American River College<br>Sacramento, CA                | <b>Mark Rau</b><br>American River College<br>Sacramento, CA                      |
| <b>Gabriela Cambiasso</b><br>Harold Washington College<br>Chicago, IL                 | <b>John Gamber</b><br>American River College<br>Sacramento, CA                                  | <b>Linda Louie</b><br>Highline Community College<br>Des Moines, WA                       | <b>Maria Spelleri</b><br>State College of Florida Manatee-Sarasota<br>Venice, FL |
| <b>Jeanette Clement</b><br>Duquesne University<br>Pittsburgh, PA                      | <b>Marcia Gethin-Jones</b><br>University of Connecticut American Language Program<br>Storrs, CT | <b>Melanie A. Majeski</b><br>Naugatuck Valley Community College<br>Waterbury, CT         | <b>Eva Teagarden</b><br>Yuba College<br>Marysville, CA                           |
| <b>Allis Cole</b><br>Shoreline Community College<br>Shoreline, WA                     | <b>Kimlee Buttacavoli Grant</b><br>The Leona Group, LLC<br>Phoenix, AZ                          | <b>Maria Marin</b><br>De Anza College<br>Cupertino, CA                                   | <b>Colin S. Ward</b><br>Lone Star College-North Harris<br>Houston, TX            |
| <b>Fanshen DiGiovanni</b><br>Glendale Community College<br>Glendale, CA               | <b>Shelly Hedstrom</b><br>Palm Beach Community College<br>Lake Worth, FL                        | <b>Michael I. Massey</b><br>Hillsborough Community College-Ybor City Campus<br>Tampa, FL | <b>Nico Wiersema</b><br>Texas A&M International University<br>Laredo, TX         |
|   | <b>Linda Holden</b><br>College of Lake County<br>Grayslake, IL                                  | <b>Marlo McClurg-Mackinnon</b><br>Cosumnes River College<br>Sacramento, CA               | <b>Susan Wilson</b><br>San Jose City College<br>San Jose, CA                     |
|   |   | <b>Michelle Naumann</b><br>Elgin Community College<br>Elgin, IL                          |  |



# A word from the author

My parents immigrated to the U.S. from Poland and learned English as a second language. Born in the U.S., I often had the task as a child to explain the intricacies of the English language. It is no wonder that I became an English language teacher.



When I started teaching over forty years ago, grammar textbooks used a series of unrelated sentences with no context. I knew instinctively that there was something wrong with this technique.

It ignored the fact that language is a tool for communication, and it missed an opportunity to spark the student's curiosity. As I gained teaching experience, I noticed that when I used interesting stories that illustrated the grammar, students became more motivated, understood the grammar better, and used it more effectively.

In 1986, I published the first edition of *Grammar in Context* and have continued to search for topics that teach grammar in contexts that are relevant to students' lives. The contexts I've chosen each tell a story: practical ones about technology (social networking and e-books), interesting people (Tiger Woods), and events that made history (the election of President Barack Obama). Whether the task is a fill-in grammar exercise, a listening activity, an editing exercise, an interactive conversation activity, or free writing, the context is reinforced throughout the lesson.

I hope you enjoy the new edition of *Grammar in Context*!

Sandra N. Elbaum

In memory of  
Roberto Garrido Alfaro

# Welcome to Grammar in Context, Fifth Edition

Grammar in Context presents grammar in interesting contexts that are relevant to students' lives and then recycles the language and context throughout every activity. Learners gain knowledge and skills in both the grammar structures and topic areas.

The new fifth edition of *Grammar in Context* engages learners with updated readings, clear and manageable grammar explanations, and a new full-color design.

**New To This Edition!**

**Full-color design** makes grammar more visually contextualized and even easier to study and teach from.

**Equal Rights for All**

Before You Read

1. In your native country, does the government give equality to everyone?
2. Is there one group of people that has a harder life than other groups? Which group? What kinds of problems do these people have?

Read the following textbook article. Pay special attention to simple past tense verbs and used to + base form.

*Read this article after you have learned the simple past tense and used to + base form.*

Today all people in the United States have equal rights under the law. But this was not always the case, especially for African-Americans. Even though slavery in the U.S. ended in 1865, racism continued to make life difficult for African-Americans. Many businesses, hotels, schools, and restaurants were for whites only. Many businesses were not allowed to serve African-Americans. Many Black children used to go to separate, and often inferior, schools. Many Black children used to go to separate bus stops. Even in sports, Black children used to be separated from white children.

In many places in the South, there were major business districts where people of different races lived. One example is Downtown New York. Just across the street from the World Trade Center was the old bus stop. The bus driver refused to leave her seat. The bus driver and arrested Mr. Parris.

Martin Luther King Jr., a Black man, wanted to put an end to this. He was arrested, but he did not let this stop him. He called African-Americans to fight for their rights. People who decided to walk around. As a result of this, laws that discriminated against African-Americans were changed.

**Did You Know?** After the 9/11 attacks, many people were afraid to travel by air. This was especially true for people who were not from the United States.

### 3.1 Habitual Past with Used To

**EXPLANATION**  
Used to + base form shows a habit or custom over a past period of time. This custom no longer exists.

**EXAMPLES**  
Black children used to have separate schools. Many professions used to be for white people only. There used to be separate baseball teams for Black people.

**LANGUAGE NOTES**  
1. Used to is for past habits or customs. It is not for an action that happened once or a few times.  
Many restaurants used to serve white people only. (This happened over a period of time.)  
2. Used to + base form shows a habit or custom over a past period of time. This custom no longer exists.  
3. For regular, on-the-go use, use the verb *use*. (This happened one time.)  
Some restaurants didn't use to serve African-Americans.

**EXERCISE 1 ABOUT YOU** Tell which of the following you used to do when you were a child.

- EXAMPLE** I used to cry a lot.
1. cry a lot
  2. obey my parents
  3. attend religious school
  4. play with dolls
  5. play soccer
  6. fight with other children
  7. draw pictures
  8. have a pet
  9. tell lies
  10. read mystery stories
  11. live on a farm
  12. live with my grandparents
  13. watch a lot of TV
  14. read comic books

**EXERCISE 2 ABOUT YOU** Name something you used to do when you were in elementary school. I used to know the names of all the presidents (but I don't know them anymore).

1. Name something you used to do when you were a child.
2. Tell what kind of stories you used to enjoy when you were a child.

In 1964, about 100 years after the end of slavery, Congress passed the Civil Rights Act. This law made it illegal to discriminate in employment and education. (Legal, King.)

In 1968, a man named Martin Luther King Jr. was shot and killed. He was only 39 years old.

In 1983, Martin Luther King Jr. died (January 19, 1983).

**African-American Firsts**

- 1947 Jackie Robinson was the first African-American to play on a major league baseball team.
- 1983 Colin Powell was the first African-American to go into space.
- 1989 Oprah Winfrey became the first African-American to own her own television and production company.
- 1997 Thelma Houston was the first African-American woman to win the Grammy Award for Best Female R&B Artist.
- 2001 Halle Berry became the first African-American woman to win an Oscar for best actress.
- 2001 Condoleezza Rice became the first African-American secretary of state.
- 2005 Condoleezza Rice became the first female African-American secretary of state.
- 2009 Barack Obama became the first African-American president.

**Opaki Parris**

**John F. Kennedy and Constance A. Parris**

**Grammar charts** offer straightforward explanations and provide contextualized examples of the structure.

**'Language Notes'** refine students' understanding of the target structure by providing meaningful examples of the grammar in natural language.

**'About You' communicative activities** enhance learning by personalizing the grammar.



### 3.4 The Simple Past of Irregular Verbs<sup>12</sup>

Many past tense verbs are irregular. They do not have an *-ed* ending.

Verbs With No Change				Final <i>t</i> Changes to <i>d</i>	
beat	fit	put	spit	bind	send
bet	hit	quit	spit	build	sent
cost	hurt	set	spread	lend	spent
cut	let	shut			

Verbs with Vowel Changes			
feel—felt	mean—meant	dig—dug	sting—stung
keep—kept	sleep—slept	hang—hung	strike—struck
leave—left	weep—wept	spin—spun	swing—swung
lose—lost	weep—wept	stick—stuck	win—won
awake—awoke	speak—spoke	begin—began	ring—rang
break—broke	steal—stole	drink—drank	sink—sank
choose—chose	wake—woke	ring—rang	spring—sprang
freeze—froze		shrink—shrank	swim—swam
bring—brought	fight—fought	blow—blew	grow—grew
buy—bought	teach—taught	draw—drew	know—knew
catch—caught	think—thought	fly—flew	throw—threw
arise—arose	rise—rose	bleed—bled	read—read
drive—drove	shine—shone	feed—fed	speak—spoke
ride—rode	write—wrote	lead—led	spread—spread
sell—sold	tell—told	find—found	wind—wound
mistake—mistook	take—took	lay—laid	
shake—shook		pay—paid	
swear—swore	wear—wore	bite—bit	fight—fought
tear—tore		hide—hid	slide—slid
become—became	forgive—forgave	fall—fell	run—ran
come—came	give—gave	hold—held	
eat—ate	lie—lay		
forget—forgot			
get—got			

Miscellaneous  
be—was/were  
do—did

#### Barack Obama and *Dreams from My Father*

- Before You Read**
1. Where were you at the time of the 2008 election of Barack Obama?
  2. Are there or were there any unusual leaders in your native country?

Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the negative form of past-tense verbs.

On January 20, 2009, Barack Obama became the first African-American president. He was born in Hawaii in 1961, the son of a Kenyan father and an American mother. But Barack didn't know his father as he was growing up. When he was two years old, his parents separated and his father went back to Africa. Obama saw his father one more time in his life, when his father visited Hawaii. His father died in a car accident in 1992, when Barack was 21 years old. In 1995, he wrote about his life in *Dreams from My Father*. He realized that he didn't belong completely in a white world and



Barack Obama with his mother

to Hawaii when he was two years old, but she didn't stay for the rest of her life. She died in 1995. Why she didn't live to see the election.

From *The Simple Past Tense* 99

**EXERCISE 16** A student is interviewing her teacher about Martin Luther King Jr. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb and any other necessary words.

- St:** Do you remember Martin Luther King Jr.?  
**T:** Of course I do. I saw him on TV many times when I was young.  
**St:** Did you see him on TV when he was in Washington, D.C.?  
**T:** Yes, I did. I remember his famous speech in Washington in 1963.  
**St:** What was he about?  
**T:** He was about equality for everyone.  
**St:** How many to Washington?  
**T:** Oh, yes, 250,000 people went to Washington.  
**St:** Do you remember when he died?  
**T:** I was in high school when he died. The principal told us the news.  
**St:** What was he when you heard the news?  
**T:** At first we didn't know it. Then we all started to cry. We went home from school and watched the news on TV.  
**St:** Where was he when he died?  
**T:** He was on the balcony of a hotel in Memphis when a man shot him. It was terrible. But we should remember King for his life, not his death. We celebrate Martin Luther King Jr.'s birthday.  
**St:** Really? I didn't know that. When is it?  
**T:** He was born on January 15. The third Monday in January is a national holiday.  
**St:** Was it a holiday right after he died?  
**T:** No, it wasn't a holiday in 1963.  
**St:** How do you remember so much about King?  
**T:** I was a paper on him when I was in college.

104 Lesson 3

Grammar is presented in clear, manageable sections to make learning easier.

Updated For This Edition!

High-interest, informative readings present grammar in context, illustrating the grammatical structure in an informative and meaningful way.

Contextualized dialogues improve learners' listening skills and act as models for speaking (also included on the Audio CD).

Enhanced For  
This Edition!

Enhanced editing section guides students to first identify and then correct common grammatical errors in context.

Updated For  
This Edition!

Comprehensive 'Expansion' section for each lesson provides opportunities for students to interact with one another and further develop their speaking and writing skills.

### Editing Advice

1. Use *saw/were* with *from*.  
He born in Germany.
2. Don't use *saw/were* with *die*.  
He was died two years ago.

### Editing Quiz

8. Use the correct word order in a question.  
Why you didn't return?
9. Use *did* + the base form in a question.  
What kind of car you bought?
10. Use the base form after *didn't*.  
He didn't worked yesterday.
11. Don't forget the *d* in *used to*.  
She use to live in Miami.
12. Don't add the verb *be* before *used to* for habitual past.  
I was used to play soccer in my country.

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

- A: I didn't come to class last week. I missed two days. What we studied?  
B: Why you didn't come to class?  
A: I had to worked overtime, so I tired.  
B: We had a great lesson. We learn about racial progress in the U.S.  
We talked about Martin Luther King Jr., George Dawson, and Barack Obama.  
A: Who was George Dawson?  
B: He was an amazing man. He born at the end of the 1800s.  
He didn't learned to read when he was young. He learned to read when he was 98 years old.

### Expansion

#### Classroom

#### Activities

1 Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Find a partner and exchange books. Give each other more information about the things you checked. Ask each other questions about these activities.

- a. I bought a CD in the past week.
- b. I worked last Saturday.
- c. I rode a bike this past week.
- d. I went to a party last weekend.
- e. I got a driver's license in the past year.
- f. I took a trip in the past year.
- g. I got married in the last two years.
- h. I found a job this month.
- i. I spent more than \$50 today.
- j. I received some money this week.
- k. I ate pizza in the past month.

### Write

#### About It

Choose one of the following topics to write a short composition.

- 1 Write a paragraph or paragraphs telling about changes in your native country. Compare how life used to be with how it is now.
- 2 Write about an ordinary person who did something extraordinary (like George Dawson). It can be someone you read about or someone you know.
- 3 Write a paragraph or paragraphs telling about your childhood.

#### My Childhood

When I was a child, I lived in a big house with my parents, grandparents, sisters, brothers, aunts, and uncles. My parents went to work and my grandparents took care of me. I always had a good time with them. My grandmother used to tell me a lot of stories. My grandfather used to take me fishing...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.

More Writing Models  
In This Edition!

Writing models provide additional writing practice using the grammar structure for that lesson.



## Additional resources for each level

### FOR THE STUDENT:

*New To  
This Edition!*

- **Online Workbook** features additional exercises that learners can access in the classroom, language lab, or at home.
- **Audio CD** includes all readings and dialogues from the student book.
- Student Web site features additional practice: <http://elt.heinle.com/grammarincontext>.

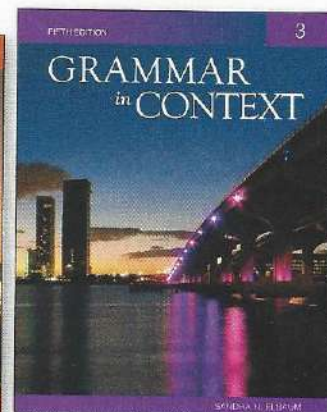
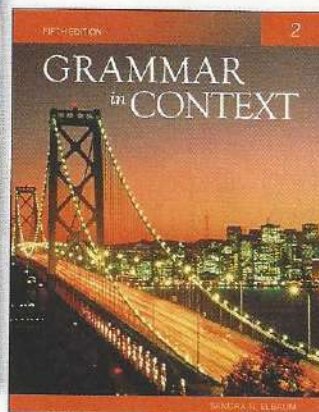
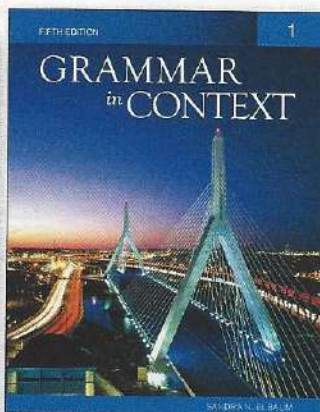
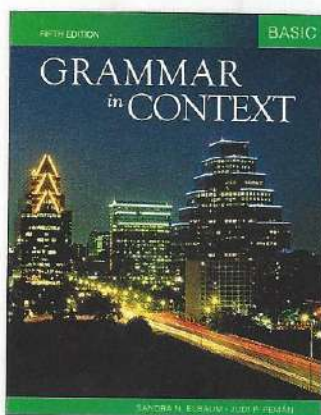
### FOR THE TEACHER:

*New To  
This Edition!*

- **Online Lesson Planner** is perfect for busy instructors, allowing them to create and customize lesson plans for their classes, then save and share them in a range of formats.

*Updated For  
This Edition!*

- **Assessment CD-ROM with ExamView®** lets teachers create and customize tests and quizzes easily and includes many new contextualized test items.
- **Teacher's Edition** offers comprehensive teaching notes including suggestions for more streamlined classroom options.
- Instructor Web site includes a printable Student Book answer key.





## Lesson

# 1

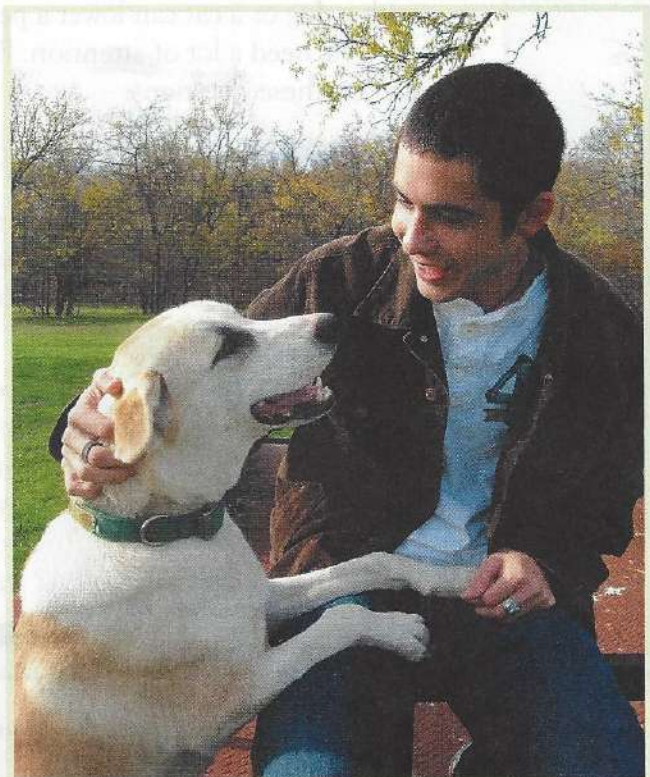
### Grammar

#### The Simple Present Tense

#### Frequency Words

### Context

#### Pets and Other Animals





# Americans and Their Pets

Before  
You Read

1. Do you like animals?
2. Do you have a pet?



Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the verb *be* and other verbs in the simple present tense.

## Did You Know?

The most common registered breed of dog in the United States is the Labrador retriever, as seen on page 9.

Most Americans **love** pets. About 63 percent of Americans **live** with one or more animals. About 39 percent of households **have** at least one dog. Thirty-four percent of households **own** at least one cat.

Americans **think** of their pets as part of the family. Americans spend approximately \$5 billion a year on holiday presents for their pets. Almost half of all pet owners **talk** to their pets on occasion. Many pet owners **sleep** with their dogs or cats. Many people **travel** with their pets. (It costs between \$25 and \$150 to fly with a pet.) Some hotels **allow** guests to bring their pets.

Americans **pay** a lot of money to keep pets. They **spend** about \$43.2 billion a year in vet<sup>1</sup> bills. There **are** schools, toys, hotels, restaurants, clothes, perfumes, and cemeteries for pets. There **are** magazines for pet owners. There **are** hundreds of Web sites for pet owners.

Pets **are** a lot of fun. They **are** affectionate<sup>2</sup> too. People who **are** lonely get a lot of love from their animals. Medical research **shows** that contact with a dog or a cat can lower a person's blood pressure.

Pets **need** a lot of attention. Before you **buy** a pet, it is important to answer these questions:

- **Are** you patient?
- **Are** you home a lot?
- If you **have** children, **are** they responsible?
- **Are** pets allowed where you live?
- Do you **have** money for medical bills for your pet?



Unfortunately, some people **don't** realize that pets **need** a lot of care. Some people **see** a cute puppy or kitten, **buy** it, and later **abandon**<sup>3</sup> it because they **don't** want to take care of it. It is important to understand that a pet is a long-term responsibility.

<sup>1</sup>Vet is short for veterinarian. This is an animal doctor.

<sup>2</sup>Affectionate means loving.

<sup>3</sup>To abandon means to leave something. When people abandon a pet, they leave it on the street.



# 1.1 Be—Forms and Uses

## Forms

EXAMPLES			EXPLANATION
Subject	Form of Be	Complement	
I	am	home a lot.	Use <i>am</i> with <i>I</i> .
My father	is	patient.	Use <i>is</i> with <i>he, she, it, this, that</i> , and singular subjects (for example, <i>cat</i> ).
He	is	intelligent.	
She	is	lonely.	
The cat	is	happy.	
That	is	a friendly cat.	
We	are	responsible.	Use <i>are</i> with <i>we, you, they, these, those</i> , and plural subjects ( <i>pets, cats</i> , etc.).
You	are	home a lot.	
Pets	are	fun.	
Those	are	cute kittens.	

## Uses

EXAMPLES	USES
I <b>am</b> patient. The pet shop <b>is</b> located on the corner. The children <b>are</b> excited about the puppy.	With a description (adjective) <b>Note:</b> Some words that end in <i>-ed</i> are adjectives: <i>tired, married, worried, interested, bored, excited, crowded, located</i> .
This <b>is</b> a Labrador. A Labrador <b>is</b> a big dog.	With a classification or definition of the subject
My dog <b>is</b> in the yard.	With a location
My husband <b>is</b> from Guatemala.	With a place of origin
It <b>is</b> cold outside. The dog <b>is</b> cold.	With weather and physical reaction to the weather ( <i>hot, cold, warm</i> )
My dog <b>is</b> three (years old).	With age
The cat <b>is</b> hungry. I <b>am</b> afraid of dogs.	With physical or emotional states: <i>hungry, thirsty, afraid</i>
There <b>are</b> toys for dogs. There <b>is</b> a dog restaurant near my house.	With <i>there</i>
It <b>is</b> ten o'clock now.	With time
It <b>is</b> warm today.	With weather
<b>Language Note:</b> <i>Be cold</i> means to feel a low temperature. <i>Have a cold</i> shows an illness. Please bring me my sweater. <i>I'm cold.</i> I'm sick. <i>I have a cold.</i>	



**EXERCISE 1** Fill in the blanks with the correct form of *be*.

**EXAMPLE** My dog is very small.


1. You take care of your dog. You \_\_\_\_\_ responsible.
2. Pet ownership \_\_\_\_\_ a big responsibility.
3. My cat \_\_\_\_\_ soft.
4. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ great pets because they \_\_\_\_\_ affectionate.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ also good protection for a house.
5. My dog \_\_\_\_\_ a member of my family.
6. Some cats \_\_\_\_\_ very affectionate. Other cats \_\_\_\_\_ very independent.
7. It \_\_\_\_\_ fun to own a pet.
8. Kittens and puppies \_\_\_\_\_ cute.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ ready to get a pet.
10. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ lonely.
11. My kitten \_\_\_\_\_ very sweet.
12. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ cold.





## 1.2 Contractions with *Be*

A *contraction* combines two words. We can make a contraction with *be*. We put an apostrophe (') in place of the missing letter.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I am <b>I'm</b> responsible. You are <b>You're</b> patient. She is <b>She's</b> happy. He is <b>He's</b> kind. It is <b>It's</b> necessary to walk a dog. We are <b>We're</b> busy. They are <b>They're</b> cute.	We can make a contraction with the subject pronoun ( <i>I, you, she, etc.</i> ) and <i>am, is, or are</i> .
There is <b>There's</b> a cat hotel near my house. That is <b>That's</b> a friendly cat.	We can make a contraction with <i>there is</i> . We can make a contraction with <i>that is</i> .
My <b>grandmother's</b> lonely. Your <b>dog's</b> cute.	We can make a contraction with most nouns and <i>is</i> .
A fox <b>is</b> a relative of a dog. A mouse <b>is</b> a small animal. This <b>is</b> a cute cat.	 We don't make a contraction with <i>is</i> if the noun ends in <i>s, se, ce, ge, ze, sh, ch, or x</i> .
Pet <b>products are</b> expensive. <b>Dogs are</b> popular pets. <b>There are</b> hotels for pets.	In writing, don't make a contraction with a plural noun and <i>are</i> or with <i>there are</i> .
The owner <b>is not</b> home now. She <b>isn't</b> home during the day. You <b>are not</b> ready for a pet. You <b>aren't</b> patient.	To make a negative with <i>be</i> , put <i>not</i> after a form of <i>be</i> . The negative contractions are <i>isn't</i> and <i>aren't</i> . There is no contraction for <i>am not</i> .

**EXERCISE 2** Which of the sentences in Exercise 1 can use a contraction?

**EXERCISE 3** Fill in the first blank with the correct form of *be*. Then fill in the second blank with a negative form. Use contractions wherever possible.

**EXAMPLE** Today's \_\_\_\_\_ my daughter's birthday. It **isn't** a holiday.

- My daughter and I \_\_\_\_\_ at the pet shop. We \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
- My husband \_\_\_\_\_ at work now. He \_\_\_\_\_ with me.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ patient. My husband \_\_\_\_\_ patient.
- This puppy \_\_\_\_\_ for my daughter. It \_\_\_\_\_ for my son.
- My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ responsible. My son \_\_\_\_\_ responsible.



6. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ good for protection. Cats \_\_\_\_\_ good for protection.
7. My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ excited. She \_\_\_\_\_ bored.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ afraid of big dogs. I \_\_\_\_\_ afraid of small dogs.
9. This \_\_\_\_\_ a Chihuahua. It \_\_\_\_\_ a big dog.



**EXERCISE 4** Fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** My dog <sup>s</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ hungry. He wants to eat.

1. My cat \_\_\_\_\_ near the window.
2. My aunt \_\_\_\_\_ married. Her dog \_\_\_\_\_ her favorite companion.  
(not)
3. In the U.S., there \_\_\_\_\_ cemeteries for pets.
4. Some cats \_\_\_\_\_ very affectionate.
5. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ thirsty. Put water in his dish.
6. This \_\_\_\_\_ a kitten. It \_\_\_\_\_ only two weeks \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Don't leave your dog in the car. \_\_\_\_\_ hot today.
8. My dog \_\_\_\_\_ cold in the winter. She needs a sweater.
9. My vet's office \_\_\_\_\_ located about two miles from my house.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is a picture of my dog.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ worried about my dog because she \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
12. Your son \_\_\_\_\_ responsible because he \_\_\_\_\_ only four years \_\_\_\_\_.  
(not)



# Dog Walkers

Before

You Read

1. Do working people have problems taking care of their pets?
2. Are some animals easier to take care of than others?



CD 1, TR 02

**Read the following conversation. Pay special attention to questions with the verb *be*.**

**A:** Your dog is beautiful. What kind of a dog **is it**?

**B:** It's a Dalmatian.

**A:** How old **is he**?

**B:** It's a *she*. She's two years old.

**A:** What's her name?

**B:** Her name is Missy.

**A:** **Are we neighbors? Are you new** in the neighborhood?

**B:** I don't live here. Missy isn't my dog. I'm a dog walker.

**A:** A dog walker? What's **that**?

**B:** I walk other people's dogs when they're at work or on vacation.

**A:** **Are you** a friend of the family?

**B:** No. I'm from an agency.

**A:** What agency **are you** from?

**B:** It's a professional dog-walking service.

**A:** **Are you** serious?

**B:** Of course I'm serious.

**A:** **Is the pay** good?

**B:** It's OK. But I love my job for other reasons. My "customers" are always happy to see me. Also, I'm outside all day.

**A:** Cool! **Are the owners** happy too?



(continued)



**B:** Yes, they are. When they go to work, they're worried that their dogs can be lonely or bored. Some people even leave the TV on for their pets. But when they use a dog-walking service, they are happy because their dogs are happy too.

**A:** Are there jobs at your agency?

**B:** Yes, there are. Are you interested in becoming a dog walker too?

**A:** Yes. It sounds like fun.

**B:** Here's my card. The agency's phone number is on the card.

**A:** Thanks!

## 1.3 Questions with *Be*

Compare statement word order and word order in *yes/no* questions.

STATEMENT WORD ORDER	YES/NO QUESTION	SHORT ANSWER	EXPLANATION
I am responsible.	Am I responsible with pets?	Yes, you are.	In a <i>yes/no</i> question, we put <i>am, is, are</i> before the subject.
You are a dog walker.	Are you a friend of the family?	No, I'm not.	
The owner is busy.	Is the owner at home?	No, she isn't.	We usually answer a <i>yes/no</i> question with a short answer. A short answer contains a pronoun ( <i>he, it, we, they, etc.</i> ).
The pay is important.	Is the pay good?	No, it isn't.	
The dog is a female.	Is the dog young?	Yes, she is.	
It is a big dog.	Is it a Labrador?	No, it isn't.	
We are new here.	Are we neighbors?	No, we aren't.	
The owners are at work.	Are the owners happy?	Yes, they are.	
They are out.	Are they at work?	Yes, they are.	We don't use a contraction for a short <i>yes</i> answer. We usually use a contraction for a short <i>no</i> answer.
There are interesting jobs.	Are there jobs at your agency?	Yes, there are.	
That is a cute dog.	Is that your dog?	No, it isn't.	
It isn't a big dog.	Isn't it a puppy?	No, it isn't.	

**Pronunciation Note:** We usually end a *yes/no* question with rising intonation. Listen to your teacher pronounce the questions above.



## Compare statement word order and word order in *wh*- questions.

STATEMENT WORD ORDER	<i>Wh</i> - QUESTION	EXPLANATION
<b>I am</b> lost. <b>You are</b> from an agency. <b>That is</b> a nice dog. <b>The dog is</b> old. <b>That is</b> a strange pet. <b>Her name is</b> long. <b>You are</b> here. <b>There are</b> a lot of dog walkers.	Where <b>am I</b> ? What agency <b>are you</b> from? What kind of dog <b>is that</b> ? How old <b>is the dog</b> ? What <b>is that</b> ? What <b>is her name</b> ? Why <b>are you</b> here? How many dog walkers <b>are there</b> ?	We put <i>am</i> , <i>is</i> , and <i>are</i> before the subject.
<b>The owner isn't</b> home. The dogs <b>aren't</b> bored. <b>You aren't</b> at work.	Why <b>isn't the owner</b> at home? Why <b>aren't the dogs</b> bored? Why <b>aren't you</b> at work?	Notice the word order in negative <i>wh</i> - questions.

### Language Notes:

- Most question words can contract with *is*.  
(Exceptions: *which is*; *how much is*)  
**Who's** that?  
**What's** a Dalmatian?  
**Where's** your cat?  
**Which is** bigger, a collie or a Labrador?
- Study these common questions and answers with *be*.  
**What's** your name? My name is Linda.  
**What time** is it? It's 4:32.  
**What color** is the dog? It's tan.  
**What kind** of dog is this? It's a Labrador.  
**What's** a Dalmatian? It's a dog.  
**What's** this? It's a leash.  
**How** are you? I'm fine.  
**How's** the weather? It's sunny and warm.  
**How old** is your daughter? She's 10 (years old).<sup>4</sup>  
**How tall** are you? I'm five feet, three inches tall (or 5'3").<sup>5</sup>  
**Where** are you from? I'm from Mexico.  
**What's** wrong? I'm sick.



## EXERCISE 5 ABOUT YOU Interview another student.

**EXAMPLE** **A:** Are you interested in a pet?  
**B:** Yes, I am.

- Are you home a lot?
- Are there children in your house?
- Are they responsible?
- Are pets allowed where you live?
- Are you allergic to cats?

<sup>4</sup>It is not polite to ask an American adult about his or her age.

<sup>5</sup>For conversion to the metric system, see Appendix D.



**EXERCISE 6** **ABOUT YOU** Interview another student.

**EXAMPLE** A: Is this class hard for you?

B: No, it isn't.

1. Are you an immigrant?
2. Is the teacher from your native country?
3. Is your country in North America?
4. Is your hometown cold at this time of year?
5. Are we from the same country?
6. Are there other students from your country in this class?
7. Is the school located near your house?

**EXERCISE 7** One student reads a question. Another student answers.

1. What pets are good for children?
2. What kind of pets are popular in your native country (or with people in your native culture)?
3. What's your favorite animal in the zoo?
4. What's a popular name for dogs in your native culture?
5. When's a good time to get a pet?
6. What's a better pet—a dog or a cat?

**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks to complete this conversation. Use contractions wherever possible.



A: Is this your dog?  
(example)

B: Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_.  
(1)

A: He \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful.  
(2)

B: Thanks. But it's a "she."

A: \_\_\_\_\_ friendly?  
(3)

B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
(4)

A: What kind of dog \_\_\_\_\_?  
(5)

B: She \_\_\_\_\_ a collie.  
(6)

A: What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(7)

B: Her name is Samantha.



A collie



A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
(8)

B: She \_\_\_\_\_ three years old now.  
(9)

A: \_\_\_\_\_ hard to take care of a dog?  
(10)

B: Not for me. I \_\_\_\_\_ home a lot. And when  
(11)

I \_\_\_\_\_ home, my brother or parents  
(12 not)

\_\_\_\_\_ home.  
(13)

A: I love dogs, but I \_\_\_\_\_ home very much, so that's  
(14 not)  
a problem.

B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ a lot?  
(15)

A: Because I'm a nurse. I work eight hours a day. I want to get a dog for  
my grandmother.

B: Why?

A: Because \_\_\_\_\_ lonely.  
(16)

B: Why \_\_\_\_\_ lonely?  
(17)

A: Because nobody \_\_\_\_\_ home all day.  
(18)

We \_\_\_\_\_ all at work.  
(19)

B: I think it \_\_\_\_\_ a good idea for your grandmother  
(20)  
to have a dog.

**EXERCISE 9** Fill in the blanks in the following cell phone conversation.



CD 1, TR 04

A: Hello?

B: Hi. This \_\_\_\_\_ is Betty.  
(example)

A: Hi, Betty. How \_\_\_\_\_?  
(1)

B: I'm fine. How \_\_\_\_\_?  
(2)

A: I'm fine. But the cat \_\_\_\_\_ sick.  
(3)

I \_\_\_\_\_ home now.  
(4 not)

I \_\_\_\_\_ at the animal hospital.  
(5)

B: \_\_\_\_\_ wrong?  
(6)

(continued)





- A:** Fluffy \_\_\_\_\_ hungry or thirsty.  
(7 not)
- He \_\_\_\_\_ tired all the time.  
(8)
- B:** \_\_\_\_\_ so hot today. Maybe the heat  
(9)
- \_\_\_\_\_ the problem.  
(10)
- A:** I don't think so. The house \_\_\_\_\_ air-conditioned.  
(11)
- B:** \_\_\_\_\_?  
(12)
- A:** He \_\_\_\_\_ only four years \_\_\_\_\_.  
(13) (14)
- B:** \_\_\_\_\_ alone?  
(15)
- A:** No, I'm not.
- B:** \_\_\_\_\_ with you?  
(16)
- A:** My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ with me.  
(17)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ in the waiting room.  
(18)
- B:** Why \_\_\_\_\_ at school?  
(19)
- A:** She \_\_\_\_\_ on spring break now. I think  
(20)
- the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ ready to see us now.  
(21)

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks in the following conversation.



- A:** Look at the dog. What kind of dog is it?  
(example)
- B:** I think it \_\_\_\_\_ a mutt.  
(1)
- A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ a mutt?  
(2)
- B:** It \_\_\_\_\_ a mixed breed dog. Look, it \_\_\_\_\_  
(3) (4)
- so friendly with those children.
- A:** My daughter's birthday is next week. She wants a dog. But dogs  
\_\_\_\_\_ so expensive.  
(5)
- B:** A purebred<sup>6</sup> dog, like a Labrador, is expensive, but a mutt  
\_\_\_\_\_ so expensive. In fact, there \_\_\_\_\_ animal shelters  
(6 not) (7)
- that can give you a dog for free or for a very low price.
- A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ an animal shelter?  
(8)

<sup>6</sup>A purebred dog is one breed only. It is not mixed with other breeds.

**B:** It's an organization that takes unwanted pets and tries to find homes for them.

**A:** But \_\_\_\_\_ healthy?  
(9)

**B:** Yes, they are. The shelter's doctors check an animal's health before giving it to a family.

**A:** Why \_\_\_\_\_ so many unwanted pets?  
(10)

**B:** There are unwanted pets because some people get a pet and then realize it \_\_\_\_\_ too much trouble to take care of it.  
(11)

**A:** That \_\_\_\_\_ terrible.  
(12)

**B:** Yes, it is. What about your daughter? \_\_\_\_\_ responsible?  
(13)

**A:** Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.  
(14)

**B:** How old \_\_\_\_\_?  
(15)

**A:** She \_\_\_\_\_ ten years old.  
(16)

**B:** My son has a dog. But he \_\_\_\_\_ responsible. He says it's *his* dog, but I \_\_\_\_\_ the one who feeds it and takes it out three times a day.  
(17 not)  
(18)

**A:** Why \_\_\_\_\_ responsible?  
(19)

**B:** He says he \_\_\_\_\_ too busy with school and sports.  
(20)

I \_\_\_\_\_ busy too. But I find time to take care of the dog.  
(21)  
What about you? \_\_\_\_\_ home a lot?  
(22)

**A:** No, I \_\_\_\_\_. My work day \_\_\_\_\_ very long. And my daughter \_\_\_\_\_ at school all day.  
(23)  
(24)  
(25)

**B:** Then you should find a dog-walking service.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ expensive?  
(26)

**B:** Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_. But \_\_\_\_\_ the only way to have a happy dog.  
(27)  
(28)

**A:** Maybe a fish would be a better pet!





# Guide Dogs

## Before You Read

1. Do you think most dogs are intelligent? Are some dogs more intelligent than others?
2. Do you ever see blind<sup>7</sup> people walking with dogs?



CD 1, TR 06

Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to simple present tense verbs.

Most dogs **have** an easy life in the U.S. They eat, play, get attention from their owners, and **sleep**. But some dogs **work** hard. They are called guide dogs. Guide dogs **help** blind people move from place to place safely.

Guide dogs and their owners are a team. Guide dogs **don't lead** the owners, and their owners **don't completely control** the guide dogs. They **work** together. The guide dogs **don't know** where the owners **want** to go, so they **follow** the owner's instructions. The owners can't see the obstacles<sup>8</sup> along the way, so the dogs **make** decisions for the safety of the owners. Guide dogs **stop** at all curbs and intersections before crossing a street. They **don't see** color, so they **don't know** if the light is red or green. The owners **decide** if it is time to cross the street by listening to the sound of traffic. The dogs **help** the owners get on a bus or train. They **learn** to obey many verbal commands.

Most guide dogs **are** golden retrievers, Labrador retrievers, or German shepherds. These three breeds **are** very intelligent, obedient,<sup>9</sup> and friendly. A guide dog **needs** to work without distraction in noisy places, bad weather, crowds of people, and difficult situations. When you **see** a guide dog, it is important that you recognize that the dog **needs** to concentrate on its job. Don't pet or talk to the dog. Guiding **is** very complicated, and it **requires** a dog's full attention.

Guide dog training **lasts** about five months. Only about 72 percent of dogs that **enter** the training program "**graduate**." Those that **graduate bring** their owners valuable help and love. In other dog training programs, trainers **use** food as a reward. In guide dog training, the trainer **does not use** food. He or she **uses** physical and verbal affection. This is because a guide dog sometimes **takes** the owner to a restaurant. It must **lie** patiently at the owner's feet without wanting to eat.



Guide dogs **like** to play too, but only after the work is finished. How **do** dogs **know** when their work is finished? When the harness **is** on, they **know** they **have** to work. When it **is** off, they can play. Like all dogs, they **love** to play.

<sup>7</sup>A blind person cannot see.

<sup>8</sup>An obstacle is something that blocks your way. An obstacle creates an unsafe situation.

<sup>9</sup>An obedient animal is one that obeys.



# 1.4 The Simple Present Tense—Affirmative Statements

## Form

A simple present tense verb has two forms: the base form and the -s form.<sup>10</sup>

EXAMPLES			EXPLANATION
<b>Subject</b> I You We They Guide dogs	<b>Base Form</b>  <b>work</b>	<b>Complement</b>  hard.	We use the base form when the subject is <i>I, you, we, they,</i> or a plural noun.
<b>Subject</b> He She It The dog	<b>-s Form</b>  <b>works</b>	<b>Complement</b>  hard.	We use the -s form when the subject is <i>he, she, it,</i> or a singular noun.
My family <b>has</b> three cats. Everyone in the shelter <b>likes</b> animals. No one <b>wants</b> the new kittens.			We use the -s form with <i>family, everyone, everybody, no one, nobody,</i> and <i>nothing.</i>
I <b>have</b> a pet dog. My friend <b>has</b> a guide dog.			<i>Have</i> is an irregular verb. have → has

## Use

EXAMPLES	USES
Dogs <b>give</b> people love. Guide dogs <b>help</b> people. Most dogs <b>have</b> an easy life. Americans <b>love</b> pets.	With general truths, to show that something is consistently true
Many pet owners <b>sleep</b> with their dogs or cats. Some pet owners <b>buy</b> presents for their pets. Owners <b>walk</b> dogs on a leash.	With customs
He <b>walks</b> his dog three times a day. He <b>feeds</b> his cat every morning and every night.	To show regular activity (a habit) or repeated action
I <b>come</b> from Bosnia. He <b>comes</b> from Pakistan.	To show place of origin

<sup>10</sup>For the spelling of the -s form, see Appendix A.



**EXERCISE 11** Fill in the blanks with the base form or the -s form.

**EXAMPLES** Americans love pets.  
(love)

My son loves his new kitten.  
(love)

1. Most dogs \_\_\_\_\_ an easy life.  
(have)
2. My dog \_\_\_\_\_ all day.  
(sleep)
3. Guide dogs \_\_\_\_\_ to obey many commands.  
(learn)
4. A guide dog \_\_\_\_\_ safety decisions.  
(make)
5. Trainers \_\_\_\_\_ with a dog for five months.  
(work)
6. Most guide dogs \_\_\_\_\_ from the training program.  
(graduate)
7. My girlfriend \_\_\_\_\_ her dog a present on his birthday.  
(give)
8. People \_\_\_\_\_ affection from animals.  
(get)
9. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ affection.  
(need)
10. It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money to have a pet.  
(cost)
11. Some pet owners \_\_\_\_\_ to their pets on the phone.  
(talk)
12. My daughter \_\_\_\_\_ a puppy for her birthday.  
(want)
13. My neighbor's dog \_\_\_\_\_ all the time.  
(bark)
14. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ with their dogs.  
(travel)
15. Thirty-nine percent of Americans \_\_\_\_\_ at least one dog.  
(have)
16. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ three dogs.  
(have)
17. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ their owners.  
(protect)
18. My family \_\_\_\_\_ animals.  
(love)
19. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ the dog's age.  
(know)
20. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ that puppies and kittens are cute.  
(think)

# 1.5 Negative Statements with the Simple Present Tense

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
The owner <b>knows</b> the destination. The dog <b>doesn't know</b> the destination. The dog <b>stops</b> at a curb. It <b>doesn't stop</b> because of a red light.	Use <i>doesn't</i> + the base form with <i>he, she, it</i> , or a singular noun. <b>Compare:</b> knows → doesn't <b>know</b> stops → doesn't <b>stop</b> <i>Doesn't</i> is the contraction for <i>does not</i> .
Some trainers <b>use</b> food to reward a dog. Guide dog trainers <b>don't use</b> food. Guide dogs <b>work</b> when the harness is on. They <b>don't work</b> when the harness is off. You <b>have</b> a cat. You <b>don't have</b> a dog.	Use <i>don't</i> + the base form with <i>I, you, we, they</i> , or a plural noun. <b>Compare:</b> use → don't <b>use</b> work → don't <b>work</b> <i>Don't</i> is the contraction for <i>do not</i> .
<p><b>Usage Note:</b> American English and British English use different grammar to form the negative of <i>have</i>.</p> <p><b>Compare:</b>                      American: He <i>doesn't have</i> a dog.                      British: He <i>hasn't</i> a dog. OR He <i>hasn't got</i> a dog.</p>	

## EXERCISE 12 Fill in the blanks with the negative form of the underlined verb.

**EXAMPLE** A guide dog needs a lot of training. A pet dog doesn't need a lot of training.

1. Most dogs play a lot. Guide dogs \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.
2. Obedience trainers use food to teach dogs. Guide dog trainers \_\_\_\_\_ food.
3. A guide dog works hard. A pet dog \_\_\_\_\_ hard.
4. People see colors. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ colors.
5. A guide dog goes on public transportation. A pet dog \_\_\_\_\_ on public transportation.
6. My cats eat special food. They \_\_\_\_\_ food from our table.
7. My cats like fish. They \_\_\_\_\_ chicken.
8. One cat sleeps on my bed. She \_\_\_\_\_ alone.
9. My landlord allows cats. He \_\_\_\_\_ dogs.
10. My cats need attention. They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of my time.
11. We have cats. We \_\_\_\_\_ fish.
12. I like cats. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ cats.



# Search and Rescue Dogs

Before

You Read

1. Besides helping blind people, do you know of any other ways that dogs work?
2. Do dogs have some qualities that humans don't have?



CD 1, TR 07

Read the following conversation. Pay special attention to questions with the simple present tense.

- A:** There's a program on TV tonight about search and rescue dogs. Do you want to watch it with me?
- B:** I know about guide dogs. But I don't know anything about search and rescue dogs. What does "search" mean? What does "rescue" mean?
- A:** Search means "look for." Rescue means "to help someone in a dangerous situation." These dogs are called SAR dogs.
- B:** What do these dogs do?
- A:** When there is a disaster, like an earthquake or a flood, they help the workers find missing people. They save people's lives.
- B:** How do they do that?
- A:** They have a great sense of smell. They can find things that people can't.
- B:** Do they need a lot of training?
- A:** I think they need at least one year of training.
- B:** What kind of dogs do they use as SAR dogs?
- A:** They usually use large, strong dogs. Labrador retrievers or golden retrievers are often SAR dogs. Let's watch the program together tonight.
- B:** What time does it begin?
- A:** At 9 P.M.
- B:** Does your dog want to watch the program with us?
- A:** My dog is a lazy, spoiled Chihuahua. She just wants to eat, play, and sleep.



## 1.6 Questions with the Simple Present Tense

Compare statements and *yes/no* questions.

<i>Do</i>	Subject	Verb	Complement	Short Answer	Explanation
Do	Guide dogs rescue dogs	need need	training. training?	Yes, they do.	For <i>yes/no</i> questions with <i>I, we, you, they</i> , or a plural noun, use: <i>Do</i> + subject + base form + complement
Do	You you	like like	dogs. cats?	No, I don't.	
<i>Does</i>	Subject	Verb	Complement	Short Answer	Explanation
Does	Jamie Jamie	trains train	rescue dogs. guide dogs?	No, she doesn't.	For <i>yes/no</i> questions with <i>he, she, it</i> , or a singular subject, use: <i>Does</i> + subject + base form + complement
Does	My dog a rescue dog	plays play	a lot. a lot?	No, it doesn't.	

Compare statements and *wh-* questions.

<i>Wh-</i> Word	<i>do</i>	Subject	Verb	Complement	Explanation
How much training	do	Rescue dogs they	need need?	training.	For <i>wh-</i> questions with <i>I, we, you, they</i> , or a plural noun, use: <i>Wh-</i> word + <i>do</i> + subject + base form + complement
Why	do	You you	prefer prefer	cats. cats?	
<i>Wh-</i> Word	<i>does</i>	Subject	Verb	Complement	Explanation
What time	does	The program the program	begins begin?	soon.	For <i>wh-</i> questions with <i>he, she, it</i> , or a singular noun, use: <i>Wh-</i> word + <i>does</i> + subject + base form + complement
Where	does	My dog your dog	sleeps sleep?	a lot.	

Compare negative statements and questions.

<i>Why</i>	<i>don't/doesn't</i>	Subject	Verb	Complement
Why	don't	I you	don't like like	cats. cats?
Why	doesn't	My dog he	doesn't sleep sleep	in his bed. in his bed?
<b>Language Note:</b> Compare questions with <i>be</i> to other simple present tense questions: Is the dog cold? Yes, it <b>is</b> . Does the dog <b>have</b> a sweater? Yes, it <b>does</b> . Where <b>is</b> your dog? What kind of dog <b>do</b> you <b>have</b> ?				



**EXERCISE 13** Fill in the blanks to complete this conversation.



**A:** Do you like animals?  
(example)

**B:** Yes, I                     . In fact, I love animals very much. I especially like dogs.  
(1)

**A:**                      you have a dog?  
(2)

**B:** No, I                     .  
(3)

**A:** If you love dogs, why                      a dog?  
(4 not/have)

**B:** Because my landlord                      dogs.  
(5 not/permit)

**A:**                      he permit cats?  
(6)

**B:** Yes, he                     .  
(7)

**A:**                      a cat?  
(8 have)

**B:** Yes, I do. But I                      to find a new home for my cat.  
(9 need)

                     you know anyone who wants a cat?  
(10)

**A:** Why                      your cat?  
(11 not/want)

**B:** I'm getting married in three months, and my girlfriend

                     to live with cats.  
(12 not/want)

**A:** Why                      to live with cats? Doesn't she

                     them?  
(14 like)

**B:** She                      them, but she's allergic to them. When she

                     over, she                      and                     .  
(16 come) (17 sneeze) (18 cough)

She                      to come over any more.  
(19 not/want)

**A:** That's a big problem.



**EXERCISE 14** Part 1: Use the words below to interview a student with a dog.

**EXAMPLES** your dog/big

**A:** Is your dog big?

**B:** Yes, she is.

your dog/sleep a lot (how many hours)

**A:** Does your dog sleep a lot?

**B:** Yes, she does.

**A:** How many hours does she sleep?

**B:** She sleeps about 15 hours a day.

1. how old/your dog
2. what/your dog's name
3. it/a male or a female
4. what/your dog/eat
5. how often/you/take your dog out
6. your dog/do tricks (what kind)
7. your dog/have toys (what kind)
8. your dog/friendly
9. your dog/bark a lot
10. why/you/like dogs

**Part 2: Use the words below to interview a student with a cat.**

1. how old/your cat
2. what/your cat's name
3. it/a male or a female
4. your cat/catch mice
5. your cat/friendly
6. your cat/sit on your lap a lot
7. your cat/have toys (what kind)
8. why/you/like cats

## 1.7 Wh- Questions with a Preposition

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
What does she talk <b>about</b> ? She talks about her cats. What does your cat sleep <b>on</b> ? She sleeps on a pillow.	In conversation, most people put the preposition at the end of the <i>wh-</i> question.
<b>Formal:</b> With whom does the dog sleep? <b>Informal:</b> Who does the dog sleep with?	Putting the preposition before a question word is very formal. When the preposition comes at the beginning, we use <i>whom</i> , not <i>who</i> .
Where do you <b>come from</b> ? I come from Mexico. Where <b>are</b> you <b>from</b> ? I'm from Mexico.	For place of origin, you can use <i>be from</i> or <i>come from</i> .
What time does the program begin? It begins <b>at</b> 9 P.M.	Omit <i>at</i> in a question about time.



**EXERCISE 15**

**ABOUT YOU** Ask a *yes/no* question using the words given. Then use the words in parentheses ( ) to ask a *wh-* question whenever possible. Another student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** you/eat in the cafeteria (with whom) OR (who . . . with)

**A:** Do you eat in the cafeteria?

**B:** Yes, I do.

**A:** Who do you eat with? OR With whom do you eat?

**B:** I eat with my friends.

1. you/live alone (with whom) OR (who . . . with)
2. you/go to bed early (what time)
3. your teacher/come to class on time (what time)
4. your teacher/come from this city (where . . . from)
5. you/practice English outside of class (with whom) OR (who . . . with)
6. you/think about your future (what else)
7. you/complain about English grammar (what else)
8. you/listen to the radio (what station)
9. your teacher/talk about spelling (what else)
10. you/interested in animals (what animals)
11. you/come from Mexico (where)
12. you/go to sleep before midnight (what time)

**EXERCISE 16**

Circle the correct words to complete this conversation.



CD 1, TR 09

**A:** We're late. Hurry. The train is ready to leave.

**B:** Let's go . . . (on the train) . . . Why (that dog is/is that dog) on the train?  
(example)

(Are/Do) they allow dogs on trains?  
(1)

**A:** That's not an ordinary dog. That's a guide dog.

**B:** What's a guide dog?

**A:** It's a dog that helps people with disabilities.

**B:** How (do they help/they help) people?  
(2)

**A:** They (help/helps) blind people move from place to place, on foot and by public transportation.  
(3)

**B:** (Are/Do) they need special training?  
(4)



- A:** Yes, they *(are/do)*<sup>(5)</sup>.
- B:** Where *(do/are)*<sup>(6)</sup> they get their training?
- A:** They get their training at special schools.
- B:** Are they only for blind people?
- A:** No. Guide dogs help people with other disabilities too. There are guide dogs for the deaf<sup>11</sup> and for people in wheelchairs.
- B:** Why *(are you/you are)*<sup>(7)</sup> such an expert on guide dogs?
- A:** My cousin is blind. He has a guide dog.
- B:** Let's play with the dog.
- A:** No. *(It's not/It doesn't)*<sup>(8)</sup> good to distract a guide dog. A guide dog *(need/needs)*<sup>(9)</sup> to concentrate.
- B:** When *(are/do)*<sup>(10)</sup> they play?
- A:** They *(play/plays)*<sup>(11)</sup> when the owner *(takes/take)*<sup>(12)</sup> off the dog's harness.
- B:** What *(do/does)*<sup>(13)</sup> they eat?
- A:** They eat the same thing other dogs eat.
- B:** It's amazing what a dog can do.

## 1.8 Questions About Meaning, Spelling, Cost, and Time

Wh- Word	Do/ Does	Subject	Verb (Base Form)	Complement	Explanation
What	does	"kitten"	mean?		<i>Mean, spell, say,</i> and <i>cost</i> are verbs and should be in the verb position of a question. Use the base form in the question.
How	do	you	spell	"kitten"?	
How	do	you	say	"kitten" in Spanish?	
How much	does	a kitten	cost?		We use the verb <i>take</i> with time. The subject is <i>it</i> .
How long	does	it	take	to train a dog?	

<sup>11</sup>A deaf person cannot hear.



**EXERCISE 17** Fill in the blanks to complete the conversation.

CD 1, TR 10



**A:** Do you have a pet?  
(example)

**B:** Yes. I have a new kitten.

**A:** I don't know the word "kitten." What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(1)

**B:** Kitten means baby cat.

**A:** Oh. What's his name?

**B:** Romeo.

**A:** How \_\_\_\_\_?  
(2)

**B:** R-O-M-E-O.

**A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
(3)

**B:** He sleeps with me, of course. \_\_\_\_\_ any pets?  
(4)

**A:** Yes, I do.

**B:** What kind of pet \_\_\_\_\_?  
(5)

**A:** I have a bird that talks. I don't know the word in English.

How \_\_\_\_\_ "loro" in English?  
(6)

**B:** Parrot. So you have a parrot. What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(7)

**A:** His name is Chico.

**B:** How old \_\_\_\_\_?  
(8)

**A:** He's almost 20 years old.

**B:** Wow! How long \_\_\_\_\_?  
(9)

**A:** They live a long time. Some live up to 80 years.

**B:** Are parrots expensive? How much \_\_\_\_\_?  
(10)

**A:** It depends on what kind you get. But they usually cost between \$175 and \$1,000.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ parrots affectionate?  
(11)

**A:** Oh, yes. They're very affectionate. Chico sits on my shoulder all the time.

**B:** What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(12)

**A:** He eats fruit, vegetables, rice, nuts, and seeds.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_?  
(13)



A: Yes. He talks a lot.

B: What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(14)

A: He says, "Good-bye," "Hello," "I love you," and many more things.  
He speaks Spanish and English.

B: Maybe he speaks English better than we do!

**EXERCISE 18** Fill in the blanks to complete the conversation.



CD 1, TR 11

A: I know you love dogs. Do you have a dog now?  
(example)

B: No, I \_\_\_\_\_. But I have two cats. I don't have time  
for a dog.  
(1)

A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ time for a dog?  
(2)

B: Because I'm not at home very much.

A: Why \_\_\_\_\_?  
(3)

B: Because I work eight hours a day, and at night, I take classes. Dogs  
need a lot of attention. I \_\_\_\_\_ have enough time  
right now.  
(4)

A: What about your cats? \_\_\_\_\_ need attention too?  
(5)

B: Not as much as dogs. What about you? \_\_\_\_\_ any pets?  
(6)

A: I have several tropical fish.<sup>12</sup>

B: \_\_\_\_\_ expensive?  
(7)

A: Some of them are very expensive.

B: How much \_\_\_\_\_?  
(8)

A: Some of them cost more than \$100.

B: Wow! That's a lot of money for a boring pet.

A: Fish \_\_\_\_\_ boring. It \_\_\_\_\_ fun to  
look at them. And when I go to work, they \_\_\_\_\_ get  
lonely, like dogs and cats.  
(9) (10) (11)

B: Yes, but they \_\_\_\_\_ affectionate like dogs and cats.  
(12)



<sup>12</sup>Fish can be singular or plural. In this case, fish is plural.

(continued)



A: They \_\_\_\_\_ make noise like dogs do, so neighbors never complain about fish. (13)

B: How many fish \_\_\_\_\_? (14)

A: I have about 14 or 15. My favorite is my Oranda.

B: How \_\_\_\_\_ “Oranda”? (15)

A: O-R-A-N-D-A. It’s a kind of a goldfish. When you have time, come and see my fish tank.

## Marianne and Sparky

### Before You Read

1. Do people in your native culture treat pets the same way Americans do?
2. What kinds of animals or pets do people prefer in your native culture?



CD 1, TR 12

Read the following e-mail from Elena in the U.S. to her friend Sofia in Russia. Pay special attention to frequency words.



Dear Sofia,

I want to tell you about one aspect of American life that seems strange to me—how Americans treat their pets. I have a new American friend, Marianne. She lives alone, but she has a dog, Sparky. Marianne treats him like a child. She **always** carries a picture of Sparky in her wallet. She **often** buys toys for him, especially on his birthday. She **often** calls him on the telephone when she’s not home and talks into the answering machine. Sparky **always** sleeps in bed with her.

When she goes to work, she uses a dog-walking service. **Twice a day**, someone comes to her house to play with Sparky and take him for a walk. She says that he gets lonely if he’s home alone all day. She **always** leaves the TV on when she goes to work to keep Sparky entertained.



**Once a month**, she takes him to a dog groomer. The groomer gives him a bath and cuts and paints his nails. When she travels, she **usually** takes him with her, but **sometimes** she puts him in a kennel<sup>13</sup> or pet hotel. All of these dog services cost a lot of money. But Marianne doesn't care. Nothing is too expensive when it comes to Sparky.

There's a small beach near her house that is just for dogs and their owners. She takes Sparky there **whenever** the weather is nice so that he can play with other dogs. While the dogs play together, the dog owners talk to each other. She **always** cleans up after her dog.

In winter, she **always** puts a coat on Sparky. In fact, Sparky has about four different winter coats. **Whenever** it rains, Sparky wears his bright yellow raincoat.

**Sometimes** I think American dogs live better than most people in the world.

Your good friend,

Elena

## 1.9 Simple Present Tense with Frequency Words

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Marianne <b>often</b> calls her dog on the phone. Sparky <b>always</b> sleeps in bed with her. When she travels, she <b>usually</b> takes Sparky with her.	We use the simple present tense with frequency words to show a regular activity. Frequency words are: <i>always, usually, often, sometimes, rarely, seldom, hardly ever, and never.</i>
<b>Whenever</b> the weather is nice, she takes her dog to the beach. Sparky wears a raincoat <b>whenever</b> it rains.	<i>Whenever</i> shows a regular activity. It means "any time."
<b>Once a month</b> , she takes her dog to a groomer. Someone comes to her house to walk the dog <b>twice a day</b> .	Expressions that show frequency are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• every day (week, month, year)</li> <li>• every other day (week, month, year)</li> <li>• once (twice, etc.) a day (week, month, year)</li> <li>• from time to time</li> <li>• once in a while</li> </ul>
Frequency Words	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center; justify-content: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 20px;"> <p>always</p> <p>usually/generally</p> <p>often/frequently</p> <p>sometimes/occasionally</p> <p>rarely/seldom/hardly ever</p> <p>never/not ever</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>100%</p> <p>↑</p> <p>↓</p> <p>0%</p> </div> </div>

<sup>13</sup>A *kennel* is a place where pets are kept while their owners are away.



**EXERCISE 19** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate verb. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** Marianne always puts a coat on Sparky when the weather is cold.

1. Elena sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ a letter to her friend Sofia.
2. Marianne \_\_\_\_\_ always worried about her dog.
3. The dog \_\_\_\_\_ always happy to see Marianne when she comes home.
4. Marianne often \_\_\_\_\_ toys for her dog.
5. The TV \_\_\_\_\_ always on when Marianne is at work.
6. Sparky always \_\_\_\_\_ in bed with Marianne.
7. Marianne usually \_\_\_\_\_ with her dog when she goes on vacation.

**EXERCISE 20** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate frequency word.

**EXAMPLE** I rarely use a public telephone.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ say, "How are you?" when I meet a friend.
2. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ confused about American customs.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ smile when I pass someone I know.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ shake hands when I get together with a friend.
5. Americans \_\_\_\_\_ ask me, "What country are you from?"
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ celebrate my birthday in a restaurant.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ buy birthday presents for my good friends.
8. If I invite a friend to a restaurant, I \_\_\_\_\_ pay for both of us.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ take my cell phone with me.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ eat in fast-food restaurants.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ leave my computer on overnight.

**EXERCISE 21** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate frequency word. You may find a partner and compare your answers.

**EXAMPLE** People in my native culture rarely have cats in the house.

1. Dogs in my native culture \_\_\_\_\_ sleep with their owners.
2. Dogs in my native culture are \_\_\_\_\_ part of the family.
3. Cats in my native culture are \_\_\_\_\_ part of the family.
4. People in my native culture \_\_\_\_\_ feed pet food to cats and dogs.
5. People in my native culture \_\_\_\_\_ travel with their pets.

**EXERCISE 22** In the sentences in Exercise 21, notice if the frequency word comes before or after the verb. Write *B* for *before* or *A* for *after*.

**EXAMPLE** People in my native culture rarely have cats in the house. *B*

## 1.10 Position of Frequency Words and Expressions

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Verb</b> Sparky <i>is</i> <b>always</b> happy to see Marianne.</p> <p><b>Verb</b> The TV <i>is</i> <b>always</b> on in the day.</p> <p><b>Verb</b> Marianne <i>is</i> <b>rarely</b> home during the day.</p>	<p>The frequency word comes <b>after</b> the verb <i>be</i>.</p>
<p><b>Verb</b> Marianne <b>often</b> <i>calls</i> Sparky on the phone.</p> <p><b>Verb</b> She <b>usually</b> <i>travels</i> with Sparky.</p> <p><b>Verb</b> She <b>always</b> <i>carries</i> a picture of Sparky.</p>	<p>The frequency word comes <b>before</b> other verbs.</p>
<p><b>Sometimes</b> she puts Sparky in a kennel. <b>Usually</b> she feeds Sparky dog food. <b>Often</b> Elena writes to her friend about American customs.</p>	<p><i>Sometimes, usually, and often</i> can come at the beginning of the sentence too. Do not put <i>always, never, rarely, and seldom</i> before the subject. <i>Wrong: Always she carries a picture of her dog.</i></p>
<p><b>Once a month</b>, she travels. She travels <b>once a month</b>.</p> <p><b>Every week</b>, she goes to the beach. She goes to the beach <b>every week</b>.</p>	<p>A frequency expression can come at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. When it comes at the beginning of the sentence, we sometimes separate it from the sentence with a comma.</p>

**EXERCISE 23** Rewrite the sentence, adding the word in ( ).

**EXAMPLE** Marianne carries a picture of Sparky. (always)

Marianne always carries a picture of Sparky.

1. She talks to Sparky on the telephone. (often)

2. She puts Sparky in a pet hotel. (sometimes)



3. She takes her dog on vacation. (usually)

4. She's with her dog. (always)

5. Sparky goes out in the rain without a coat. (never)

**EXERCISE 24** **ABOUT YOU** Add a frequency word to each sentence to make a true statement about yourself.

**EXAMPLE** I drink coffee at night.  
I never drink coffee at night.

1. I talk to my neighbors.
2. I study in the public library.
3. I'm busy on Saturdays.
4. I receive e-mail from my friends.
5. I call my family in my native country.
6. I travel in the summer.
7. I speak English at home with my family.
8. I eat meat for dinner.
9. I go out of town.
10. I study in the library.
11. I eat cereal for breakfast.
12. I bring my dictionary to class.

**EXERCISE 25** **ABOUT YOU** Add a verb (phrase) to make a true statement about yourself.

**EXAMPLE** I/usually

I usually drink coffee in the morning. OR

I'm usually afraid to go out at night.

1. I/rarely/on Sunday

2. I/usually/on the weekend

3. I/hardly ever

4. I/sometimes/at night

5. my family/sometimes

6. my family/rarely

## 1.11 Questions with *Ever*

We use *ever* in a question when we want an answer that has a frequency word.

<i>Do/Does</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Ever</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Complement</i>	<i>Short Answer</i>
Do	you	<b>ever</b>	sleep	with your cat?	Yes, I <b>sometimes</b> do.
Does	the teacher	<b>ever</b>	bring	her dog to school?	No, she <b>never</b> does.
<i>Be</i>	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Ever</i>		<i>Complement</i>	<i>Short Answer</i>
Are	dogs	<b>ever</b>		unhappy?	Yes, they <b>sometimes</b> are.
Is	Marianne	<b>ever</b>		home during the day?	No, she <b>never</b> is.

### Language Notes:

1. In a short answer, the frequency word comes between the subject and the verb.

2. The verb after *never* is affirmative.

Does your cat ever drink milk?

No, she never **does**.

**EXERCISE 26** Answer the questions with a short answer and the frequency word in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** Do dogs ever bark? (sometimes)

Yes, they sometimes do.

1. Does Marianne ever sleep with her dog? (always)
2. Does Marianne ever travel? (often)
3. Do fish ever make noise? (never)
4. Do birds ever make noise? (always)
5. Do parrots ever live for more than 20 years? (usually)
6. Do dogs ever live for more than 20 years? (rarely)
7. Are parrots ever affectionate? (sometimes)
8. Are cats ever lazy? (usually)



**EXERCISE 27**

**ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with a frequency word to make a true statement about yourself. Then ask a question with *ever*. Another student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** I rarely eat breakfast in a restaurant.

**A:** Do you ever eat breakfast in a restaurant?

**B:** No, I never do.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ sleep with the light on.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ watch TV in the morning.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ cry during a sad movie.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ dream in English.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ take off my shoes when I enter my house.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ wear a watch.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ use cologne or perfume.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ fall asleep with the TV on.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ carry an MP3 player.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ discuss politics with my friends.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ wear sandals in warm weather.
12. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ friendly with my neighbors.

## 1.12 Questions with *How Often* and Answers with Frequency Expressions

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>How often</b> do you take your dog out? I take her out <b>three times a day</b>.</p> <p><b>How often</b> does Marianne travel? She travels <b>every other month</b>.</p> <p><b>How often</b> do you take your cat to the doctor? I take my cat to the doctor <b>twice a year</b>.</p>	<p>We use <i>how often</i> when we want to know about the frequency of an activity.</p>

**EXERCISE 28**

**ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with "How often do you . . . ?" and the words given. Another student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** eat in a restaurant

**A:** How often do you eat in a restaurant?

**B:** I eat in a restaurant once a week.

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. check your e-mail   | 6. use public transportation   |
| 2. shop for groceries  | 7. use the Internet            |
| 3. exercise            | 8. go to the dentist           |
| 4. get a haircut       | 9. watch the news on TV        |
| 5. use your dictionary | 10. go to the teacher's office |

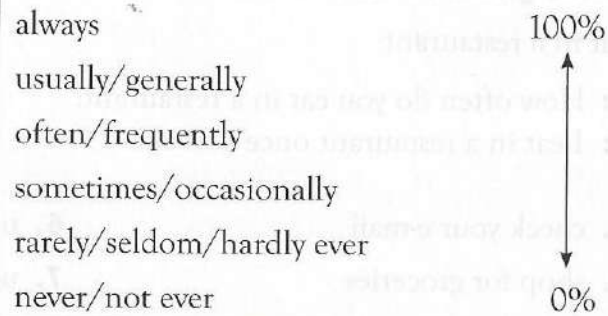
## Summary of Lesson 1

- Observe the simple present tense with the verb *be*.  
Your dog **is** beautiful.  
It **isn't** big.  
Is it a collie? No, it **isn't**.  
What kind of dog is it?  
  
You **are** young.  
You **aren't** ready for a dog.  
Are you responsible? Yes, I **am**.  
Why **aren't** you ready for a dog?
- Observe the simple present tense with other verbs.

Base Form	-s Form
My friends <b>have</b> a dog.	She <b>likes</b> birds.
They <b>don't have</b> a cat.	She <b>doesn't like</b> cats.
Do they <b>have</b> a bird?	Does she <b>like</b> small birds?
No, they <b>don't</b> .	Yes, she <b>does</b> .
What kind of dog do they <b>have</b> ?	Why does she <b>like</b> birds?
Why <b>don't</b> they <b>have</b> a cat?	Why <b>doesn't</b> she <b>like</b> cats?



3. Frequency words:



4. Questions with frequency words:

Does he **ever** take his dog to the park? Yes, he often does.

How **often** does he feed his dog? Twice a day.

## Editing Advice

1. Don't use *have* with age. Don't use *years* without *old*.

My daughter <sup>is</sup> 10 <sup>old</sup> years.

2. Don't use *have* with *hungry*, *thirsty*, *hot*, *cold*, or *afraid*.

Please open the window. I <sup>am</sup> ~~have~~ hot.

3. Don't forget the verb *be*. Remember that some words that end in *-ed* are adjectives, not verbs.

The college <sup>is</sup> ~~am~~ located downtown.

I <sup>am</sup> ~~am~~ very tired.

4. Use the correct word order in questions.

Why <sup>are you</sup> ~~you are~~ late?

Why <sup>doesn't your sister</sup> ~~your sister doesn't~~ drive?

5. Don't use *be* with another present tense verb.

I ~~am~~ come from Poland.

We ~~are~~ have a new computer.

6. Use the -s form when the subject is *he, she, it, everyone, or family*.

My father <sup>s</sup>live in New York.

Everyone <sup>s</sup>know the answer.

My family <sup>s</sup>live in Egypt.

7. Use *doesn't* when the subject is *he, she, it, or family*.

He <sup>doesn't</sup>don't have a car.

My family <sup>doesn't</sup>don't live here.

8. Use the base form after *does*.

He doesn't ~~speaks~~ English.

Where does he ~~lives~~?

9. Don't forget to use *do* or *does* and the base form in the question.

Where <sup>does</sup>your father works?

10. Use normal question formation for *spell, mean, cost, and take*.

What <sup>does "custom" mean</sup>means "custom"?

How <sup>do you</sup>spell "responsible"?

How much <sup>does</sup>~~costs~~ the newspaper? <sup>cost</sup>

How long <sup>does</sup>it takes to do the exercise?

11. Use the correct word order with frequency words.

He <sup>sometimes goes</sup>~~goes-sometimes~~ to the zoo.

I <sup>never</sup>~~Never-I~~ eat in a restaurant.

I <sup>am never</sup>~~never-am~~ late to class.

12. Don't put a frequency phrase between the subject and the verb.

She ~~all the time~~ talks on the phone. <sup>all the time</sup>



## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

C

A: Is that your dog?  
(example)

B: Yes. His name is Buddy.

A: How you spell "Buddy"?  
(example)

B: B-U-D-D-Y. He's a therapy dog.

A: What a therapy dog does?  
(1)

B: He make sick people feel better. We're often go to hospitals to visit sick people. He's sits on their laps and they pet him.  
(2) (3) (4) (5)

A: How that makes sick people feel better?  
(6)

B: They feel happy when they're with a nice dog. Everyone love Buddy—the patients, the nurses, the doctors. He's very popular.  
(7) (8)

Patients smile usually when they're with Buddy.  
(9)

A: How does a dog becomes a therapy dog?  
(10)

B: Not every dog is good for this job. First we has to answer a few questions like these:  
(11)

- Does he like people? (Buddy loves people)  
(12) (13)
- Does he has a calm personality? (Buddy doesn't barks.)  
(14) (15)
- Is the dog at least one year old? (Buddy has six years.)  
(16)

Then the dog needs training. And he have to pass a test.  
(17) (18)

A: What kind of test does he have to pass?  
(19)

B: He has to come when I call him. He has to follow commands, like "sit" and "stay." And a lot of other things too.

A: How much cost the training?  
(20)

B: It costs \$10 to register the dog. Then he gets a certificate.  
(21) (22)

A: How long it takes to train the dog?  
(23)

B: That depend on the dog.  
(24)

A: Are the dog owners make money?  
(25)

B: No. We work as volunteers.  
(26)

A: How often do you visit the hospital with Buddy?  
(27)

B: We once a week go to the hospital. The hospital located a few blocks  
(28) from my house. Always I bathe him and brush him before we go.  
(29)  
(30)  
If you want more information, go to [www.tdi-dog.org](http://www.tdi-dog.org).

A: What means TDI?  
(31)

B: It means Therapy Dogs International. I have to go now. Buddy needs  
(32) water. He has thirsty.  
(34)

A: How you know that?  
(35)

B: His tongue is out. That's dog talk for "I thirsty."  
(36)

## Lesson 1 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with the affirmative form of the verb in parentheses ( ). Then write the negative form of the verb.

**EXAMPLES** Elena wants to write about strange American customs.  
(want)

She doesn't want to write about the weather.

1. Marianne \_\_\_\_\_ Elena.  
(know)

She \_\_\_\_\_ Sofia.

2. Marianne \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.  
(have)

Elena \_\_\_\_\_ a dog.

3. Elena \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S.  
(live)

Sofia \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S.

4. Marianne \_\_\_\_\_ American.  
(be)

Elena \_\_\_\_\_ American.



5. You \_\_\_\_\_ some American customs.  
(understand)

You \_\_\_\_\_ all American customs.

6. American customs \_\_\_\_\_ strange for Elena.  
(be)

American customs \_\_\_\_\_ strange for Marianne.

7. I \_\_\_\_\_ cats.  
(like)

I \_\_\_\_\_ dogs.

8. Dogs \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of attention.  
(need)

Cats \_\_\_\_\_ as much attention.

9. Almost everyone \_\_\_\_\_ kittens and puppies.  
(love)

Most people \_\_\_\_\_ snakes.



**PART 2** Read each statement. Then write a *yes/no* question about the words in parentheses ( ). Write a short answer.

**EXAMPLE** Elena lives in the U.S. (Marianne) (yes)

Does Marianne live in the U.S.? Yes, she does.

1. Marianne has a dog. (Elena) (no)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Elena and Marianne live in the U.S. (Sofia) (no)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Elena has an American friend. (Sofia) (no)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Elena often writes letters. (you/ever) [Give a true answer about yourself.]

\_\_\_\_\_

5. You like animals. (you/ever/go to the zoo) [Give a true answer about yourself.]

\_\_\_\_\_

6. American customs are strange for Elena. (for Marianne) (no)

\_\_\_\_\_

**PART 3** Fill in the blanks to complete the question.

**EXAMPLE** Dogs like people.

Why do dogs like people?

1. Marianne sometimes travels with her dog.

How \_\_\_\_\_ with her dog?

2. Sofia doesn't understand American customs.

Why \_\_\_\_\_ American customs?

3. Elena writes to Sofia once a week.

How often \_\_\_\_\_ to Elena?

4. A dog-walking service costs a lot of money.

How much \_\_\_\_\_?

5. Elena doesn't have a dog.

Why \_\_\_\_\_ a dog?

6. Marianne carries a picture of Sparky in her wallet.

Why \_\_\_\_\_ in her wallet?

7. Marianne walks her dog every day.

How often \_\_\_\_\_?

8. She takes her dog to the animal hospital.

How often \_\_\_\_\_ to the animal hospital?

9. Guide dogs need a lot of training.

Why \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of training?

10. Rescue dogs save people's lives.

How \_\_\_\_\_ people's lives?

11. A purebred dog costs a lot of money.

How much \_\_\_\_\_?

**PART 4** Write a question with the words given.

**EXAMPLE** What/a dog/eat

What does a dog eat?

1. How/spell/"kitten"

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What/"puppy"/mean

\_\_\_\_\_



3. How/say/“cat” in Spanish

\_\_\_\_\_

4. How much/cost/a parrot

\_\_\_\_\_

5. How long/take/to train a dog

\_\_\_\_\_

## Expansion

### Classroom

#### Activities

① Put a check (✓) to indicate which of the following customs are typical customs in the U.S. and which are typical customs in your native culture. Discuss your answers in a small group or with the entire class.

Customs	In the U.S.	In my native culture
People walk their dogs on a leash.	✓	
Dogs have jackets and other clothes.		
Supermarkets sell a lot of pet food.		
Students wear jeans to class.		
Students write in their textbooks.		
People talk a lot about politics.		
Children watch TV a lot.		
Friends get together in coffee houses.		
People eat some foods with their hands.		
People are friendly with their neighbors.		
People say, “How are you?”		
Teenagers text a lot.		
People wear gym shoes.		
People take off their shoes when they enter a house.		
Young adults live separately from their parents.		
People usually leave a tip in a restaurant.		
Students study a foreign language.		

**2** Work with a partner or in a small group. Tell if you think each animal is a good pet. Why or why not?

a. a snake

e. a turtle



b. a parakeet



f. a hamster



c. a rabbit



g. a cat

d. a lizard



h. a dog

i. a tropical fish

## Talk

### About It

**1** Do you or any of your friends or family members have a pet? Is the pet like a member of the family?

**2** The following proverbs mention animals. Discuss the meaning of each proverb. Do you have a similar proverb in your native language?

- You can't teach an old dog new tricks.
- When the cat's away, the mice will play.
- Man's best friend is his dog.
- Curiosity killed the cat.
- The dog's bark is worse than his bite.

**3** Why do you think pets can improve the lives of sick or elderly people?

**4** Do you think some dogs are more intelligent than others? Do you think some dogs have a better temperament than others?



## Write

### About It

- 1 Write about differences in how people treat pets in the U.S. and in another country you know about.
- 2 Write about American customs that seem strange to you. Compare these customs to how people behave in your country or native culture.

#### A Strange American Custom

There is one American custom that seems strange to me. Americans always seem so cheerful. When they meet you, they always smile. When they leave you, they often say "Have a nice day." In my country, Ukraine, people say hello but don't usually smile...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.

## Lesson

# 2

### Grammar

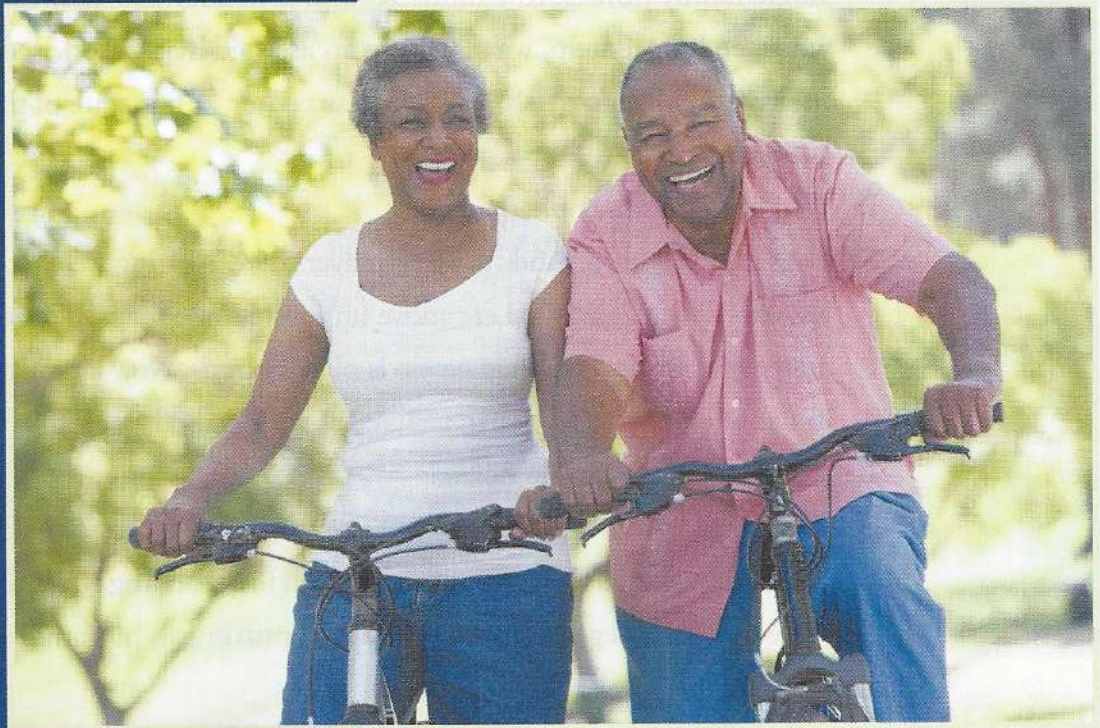
The Present Continuous Tense<sup>1</sup>

Action and Nonaction Verbs

The Future Tense

### Context

Getting Older



<sup>1</sup>Some textbooks refer to this tense as the *present progressive* tense.



# Retirement Living

Before

You Read

1. What observations do you make about older people in the U.S.?
2. What is the retirement age in other countries? Do older people usually have a good life?



CD 1, TR 13

As the U.S. population ages, many building developers are building homes for people over 55. Read the following conversation between a 62-year-old man, Jack (J), who is taking a tour of a retirement village, and the manager of the retirement village (M). Pay special attention to present continuous tense verbs.

**J:** I'm thinking about moving to this retirement village. Can you give me some information?

**M:** This is a village for people over 55 years old. The people here are retired, but most are very active. There are different types of housing: single family homes, townhouses,<sup>2</sup> and apartments. For those who need more help, we also have an assisted-living section. Let me give you a tour. This is our fitness center. It has state-of-the-art equipment.<sup>3</sup>

**J:** What are these people doing?

**M:** They're doing yoga. And that group over there is lifting weights. Another group is doing aerobics. Let's move on to the game room. Those people are playing chess. And that group is playing cards. Now let me take you to the pool area. In this area, people are swimming laps.<sup>4</sup>

**J:** What are those people doing?

**M:** Those people are taking a water aerobics class. Let's go to the computer room now. That's the computer teacher. He's teaching that group how to design Web pages. Jerry, over there, is putting all his family pictures

<sup>2</sup>A townhouse is one of a series of houses attached to each other in a row.

<sup>3</sup>State-of-the-art equipment is the latest equipment.

<sup>4</sup>Swimming laps means swimming from one end of the pool to the other and back again, over and over.

on his Web site. Marge, in the corner, **is designing** a Web site with her vacation pictures and stories about her interesting trips. She likes to travel all over the world. Now let's look at the dance area.

**J:** The band **is playing** a great song, and many of the people **are dancing**. This place is beautiful and certainly offers a lot of activities. But I don't know if it's right for me. I don't know how to dance, play chess, or design Web pages.

**M:** Don't worry. There are instructors here who will help you.

**J:** Is everybody **doing** something?

**M:** No. My wife is at home now. I think she's **reading** or **watching** TV. Or maybe she's **playing** with our grandchildren.

**J:** I notice that there are more women than men here.

**M:** Well, as you know, women live longer than men.

**J:** I'm a widower, you know. Maybe I can meet a woman here.

**M:** That's entirely possible. We have a singles group that meets once a week in the game room. Mary Dodge can give you information about the singles group. She's **standing** over there. She's **wearing** blue jeans and a red T-shirt.

**J:** How much does it cost to live here?

**M:** That depends on what kind of a house you choose. Come to my office and we'll look at the costs.





## 2.1 Present Continuous Tense

To form the present continuous tense, use a form of *be* (*is, am, are*) + verb *-ing*.<sup>5</sup>

### Forms

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Subj. Be Verb + -ing Complement</b></p> <p>I <b>am putting</b> my pictures on a Web site.            Jack <b>is visiting</b> a retirement village.            She <b>is teaching</b> Web design.            They <b>are doing</b> yoga.</p>	<p>I → am            He/She/It → is            Singular Subject → is            We/You/They → are            Plural Subject → are</p> <p>} + verb <i>-ing</i></p>
<p><b>They're</b> playing cards.  <b>Jack's</b> taking a tour of the retirement village.  <b>He's</b> asking questions.            The <b>manager's</b> answering his questions.</p>	<p>We can make a contraction with the subject pronoun and a form of <i>be</i>. Most nouns can also contract with <i>is</i>.<sup>6</sup></p>
<p>Jack <b>isn't</b> doing yoga.            Most people <b>aren't</b> watching TV.  <b>I'm not</b> playing tennis.</p>	<p>To form the negative, put <i>not</i> after the verb <i>am/is/are</i>.            Negative contractions:                is not = isn't                are not = aren't            There is no contraction for <i>am not</i>.</p>
<p>Jerry <b>is designing</b> a Web site <i>and</i> <b>putting</b> his family pictures on it.            They <b>are playing</b> cards <i>and</i> <b>laughing</b>.            She's <b>reading</b> <i>or</i> <b>watching</b> TV.</p>	<p>Do not repeat the <i>be</i> verb after these connectors:                <i>and</i>                <i>or</i></p>

### Use

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>a. Some people <b>are dancing</b> now.            b. My wife <b>is reading</b> now.</p>	<p>In sentences (a) and (b), we use the present continuous tense to describe an action in progress at this moment.</p>
<p>c. Mary Dodge <b>is standing</b> over there.            d. She <b>is wearing</b> jeans.            e. A man <b>is sitting</b> in front of a computer.</p>	<p>In sentences (c), (d), and (e), we use the present continuous tense to describe a state or condition, using the following verbs: <i>sit, stand, wear, and sleep</i>.            We can observe these things now.</p>

<sup>5</sup>For a review of the spelling of the *-ing* form of the verb, see Appendix A.

<sup>6</sup>See Lesson 1, page 5 for exceptions.

**EXERCISE 1** Fill in the blanks with the present continuous form of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use correct spelling.

**EXAMPLE** Jack 's visiting a retirement village.  
(visit)

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ a tour.  
(take)
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ at the different activities.  
(look)
3. The manager of the village \_\_\_\_\_ him information.  
(give)
4. Some people \_\_\_\_\_.  
(dance)
5. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ the exercise equipment.  
(use)
6. One woman \_\_\_\_\_ weights.  
(lift)
7. Those people \_\_\_\_\_ chess.  
(play)
8. Some people \_\_\_\_\_.  
(swim)
9. Jerry \_\_\_\_\_ . He \_\_\_\_\_  
(not/read) (put)  
his family pictures on his Web site.
10. The manager's wife is at home. She \_\_\_\_\_ or  
(read)  
\_\_\_\_\_ TV. She \_\_\_\_\_ an  
(watch) (not/take)  
aerobics class.
11. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ anything.  
(not/do)



**EXERCISE 2** Fill in the blanks with an affirmative or negative verb to make a true statement about what is happening now.

**EXAMPLES** I 'm wearing jeans now.  
(wear)

The teacher isn't writing on the blackboard now.  
(write)

1. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
(shine)
2. It \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
(rain)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ my answers in my book.  
(write)



4. I \_\_\_\_\_ a pencil to write this exercise.  
(use)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ this exercise together.  
(do)
6. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the students with this exercise.  
(help)
7. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ a watch.  
(wear)
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ my dictionary now.  
(use)
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ possessive forms now.  
(practice)
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ jeans.  
(wear)
11. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_.  
(stand)
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ near the door.  
(sit)

## Life After Retirement

### Before You Read

1. Is anyone in your family retired? How does that person keep busy?
2. At what age do you think people should retire?



CD 1, TR 14

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to present continuous tense verbs.**

The U.S. population **is aging**. More and more Americans are **thinking** about retirement. But today, many people **are retiring** younger and healthier than ever before. People **are living** longer. But they **are not leaving** their jobs to spend their days at the beach or to babysit for their grandchildren. Most older people prefer to keep busy. Many healthy seniors **are starting** new careers. They want to explore new avenues in their lives.

Judy Pearlman is a 62-year-old retired school teacher from Chicago. After 35 years in education, she **is starting** a new career—making dolls. “Now I have time to do what I always dreamed about,” she says. “I’m **having** more fun than ever before. I’m **meeting** new people, **traveling** in my new job, and **earning** money all at the same time. And I’m still **getting** my teacher pension. I’m **enjoying** every minute of it. I think this is the best time of my life.”



“After 33 years as an accountant, I’m now **taking** art classes,” says Charles Haskell of Cleveland. “I’m **discovering** a new talent.”

Some senior citizens decide not to retire at all. Frank Babbit of Milwaukee is a carpenter. He has his own business and works 50 hours a week. And he’s almost 88 years old.



Many older women are **returning** to work after raising their children. “My kids are grown and don’t need me now,” says Miriam Orland of San Francisco. “So I have time for myself now. I’m **taking** courses at a community college. I’m **thinking** about a career in Web design.”

Some retirees are **using** their free time to volunteer. “I retired as an accountant six months ago, and now I volunteer as a math tutor in a public library near my house. I go to the library twice a week to help students who are **having** trouble with math,” says Ron Meyers of Miami. “I work in a food pantry and feed the homeless three times a week,” says Linda Carlson of Washington, D.C. “It gives me a lot of satisfaction.”

Today healthy retirees are **exploring** many options, from relaxing to starting a new business or making a hobby into a new career. How do you see yourself as a retiree?

## 2.2 Using the Present Continuous for Longer Actions

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>Judy <b>is meeting</b> new people.            She <b>is getting</b> her pension and <b>earning</b> money from her new job.            She <b>is enjoying</b> her new career.            My grandfather <b>is planning</b> to retire soon.</p>	<p>We use the present continuous tense to show a long-term action that is in progress. It may not be happening at this exact moment.</p>
<p>More and more retired Americans <b>are looking</b> for a second career.            Some older people <b>are working</b> because of economic necessity.            Americans <b>are living</b> longer.            Many older women <b>are returning</b> to work after their children are grown.</p>	<p>We use the present continuous tense to describe a <i>trend</i>. A trend is a behavior that many people in society are doing at this time. It describes a change in behavior from an earlier time.</p>



**EXERCISE 3** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate present continuous tense verb. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** More and more older people are working these days.

1. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ at a younger age.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ (not) their time at the beach or babysitting for their grandchildren.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ new careers.
4. People \_\_\_\_\_ longer and healthier lives.
5. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ new talents and abilities.
6. Some older women \_\_\_\_\_ to work after raising a family.

**EXERCISE 4** **ABOUT YOU** Write three sentences about being a student. Tell what is happening in your life as a student. You may share your sentences with the class.

**EXAMPLES** I'm taking five courses this semester.

I'm staying with my sister this semester.

I'm majoring in math.

You may use these verbs:

learn	study
stay	live
plan	take courses
major	improve

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 5**

**ABOUT YOU** Write three sentences to tell about current changes in your life. Then find a partner and compare your sentences to your partner's.

**EXAMPLES**

*I'm gaining weight.*

*I'm planning to buy a house.*

*My English pronunciation is improving.*

You may use the following verbs:

<i>plan</i>	<i>get (become)</i>
<i>grow</i>	<i>learn</i>
<i>gain</i>	<i>improve</i>
<i>lose</i>	<i>think about</i>
<i>start</i>	<i>change</i>

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 6**

Tell if these things are happening at this point in time in the U.S., in the world, or in another country you know about. Discuss your answers.

1. Older people are getting more respect than before.
2. People are living healthier lives.
3. People are living longer.
4. The world is becoming a more dangerous place.
5. The economy is getting better.
6. Medical science is advancing quickly.
7. A lot of people are losing their jobs.
8. People are working harder than before.
9. People are doing more and enjoying less.
10. The cost of a college education is going down.
11. The cost of computers is going down.
12. More and more people are using cell phones.
13. Cars are getting bigger.
14. Kids are growing up faster than before.



## 2.3 Questions with the Present Continuous Tense

Compare affirmative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	Be	Subject	Be	Verb + -ing	Complement	Short Answer
What	Is	Jerry	is	designing	something.	No, he <b>isn't</b> . A Web site.
		he		designing	a house?	
		he		designing?		
What courses	Are	They	are	taking	courses at college.	No, they <b>aren't</b> . Computer courses.
		they		taking	biology?	
		they		taking?		
	Is	He	is	thinking	about a new career.	No, he <b>isn't</b> .
		he		thinking	about a career	
		he		thinking	in computers?	

### Language Notes:

- We can leave a preposition at the end of a question.  
What kind of career is he thinking **about**?
- When the question is "What . . . doing?" we usually answer with a different verb.  
What are they **doing**? They're **taking** an aerobics class.  
What are those people **doing**? They're **playing** chess.

Compare negative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	Be + n't	Subject	Be + n't	Verb + -ing	Complement
Why	isn't	Mary	isn't	dancing.	
		she		dancing?	
Why	aren't	You	aren't	using	the computer.
		you		using	the computer?

**EXERCISE 7** Fill in the blanks to make *yes/no* questions about the readings in this lesson.

**EXAMPLE** \_\_\_\_\_ Are those men playing \_\_\_\_\_ checkers?

No, they aren't. Those men are playing chess.

- \_\_\_\_\_ this retirement home?  
Yes, I am. I'm considering it now that my wife is gone.
- \_\_\_\_\_ a Web site? Yes, she is.  
Marge is designing a Web site with pictures of her vacations.
- \_\_\_\_\_ pictures now? No, she isn't taking pictures. She's putting her pictures on her Web site.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ something? No, not everyone is doing something. Some people are just relaxing.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ art classes? Yes, they are. Judy and Charles love art, so they're taking a lot of classes.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ too many questions? No, you're not. You can ask as many questions as you want.

**EXERCISE 8** Read each statement. Then write a question using the word(s) in parentheses ( ). An answer is not necessary.

**EXAMPLE** Some retirees are discovering new interests. (how)

*How are they discovering new interests?*

---

1. Judy is having more fun now. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Judy is traveling to many new places. (where)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm starting a new career. (what kind of career)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Some seniors are studying new things. (what)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. My father is thinking about retirement. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. My mother is looking for a new career. (what kind)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. We're not planning to retire. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. People are living longer nowadays. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. I'm doing things that interest me. (what kinds of things)  
\_\_\_\_\_



**EXERCISE 9** Fill in the blanks to form *yes/no* questions about the reading on pages 44–45. Use the present continuous tense.



CD 1, TR 15



Jack (J) is talking to his neighbor Alan (A).

**A:** What are you doing, Jack?  
(example: you/do)

**J:** I am looking at some brochures.  
(1 look)

**A:** What kind of brochures are you looking at?  
(2 you/look at)

**J:** They're from a retirement village.

**A:** So are you thinking about moving?  
(3 you/think)

**J:** Yes. I'm thinking about moving into a retirement village.

**A:** Why?

**J:** Now that Rose is gone, I feel lonely.

**A:** But you have a lot of good neighbors here.

**J:** Most of the people here are young. My neighbors to the north are never home. Right now they are working. And my neighbors across the street are never home.  
(4 work)

**A:** They're older people. Are they working too?  
(5 work)

**J:** No. They are traveling now. Right now they are taking a cruise<sup>7</sup> to Alaska.  
(6 travel) (7 take)

**A:** But I'm here. I am watering my lawn, as usual. And my wife is inside. She is talking on the phone, as usual.  
(8 water) (9 talk)

**J:** I'm sorry I'm complaining so much.

**A:** You are not complaining. You are just looking for something to do.  
(10 not/complain) (11 just/look)

**J:** There's a lot to do. I just don't want to do things alone.

**A:** But your daughter lives with you.

**J:** She's in her 20s. She doesn't want to do things with her dad. Right now she is watching a movie with her friends.  
(12 watch)

**A:** What movie are they watching?  
(13 they/watch)

**J:** Who knows? Something for young people. Her movies don't interest me.

<sup>7</sup>A cruise is a pleasure trip on a large passenger boat.

A: What retirement village \_\_\_\_\_ to go to?  
(14 you/plan)

J: Sun Valley Senior Village seems nice.

A: What about your daughter?

J: She \_\_\_\_\_ to move in with a friend of hers.  
(15 plan)

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks to complete the questions. Use the present continuous tense. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** A: Why is your sister wearing sunglasses? It's not sunny.



CD 1, TR 16

B: My sister's wearing sunglasses because she wants to look like a movie star.

1. A: What \_\_\_\_\_?

B: I'm reading an article about older Americans.

A: \_\_\_\_\_ the article?

B: Oh, yes. I'm enjoying it very much.

2. A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ now?

B: She's going to the park. Grandma always goes to the park on Sundays to jog.

A: (not) \_\_\_\_\_ now?

B: Yes, it's raining. But that doesn't matter. The park has an indoor track.

3. A: Martha is on her cell phone. Who \_\_\_\_\_?

B: She's talking to her grandfather.

A: Why \_\_\_\_\_ on her cell phone?

Why \_\_\_\_\_ her home phone?

B: Because her sister is using the home phone.

4. **Student:** \_\_\_\_\_?

**Teacher:** Yes. Your accent is improving a lot.

**Student:** How \_\_\_\_\_ with my grammar?

**Teacher:** You're doing very well.

5. **Wife:** Something smells good. What \_\_\_\_\_?

**Husband:** I'm cooking your favorite dinner—steak and potatoes.

(A few minutes later)

**Wife:** \_\_\_\_\_ something \_\_\_\_\_?

**Husband:** Uh-oh. The steaks are burning.



6. **A:** The kids are watching TV. What \_\_\_\_\_?  
**B:** They're watching cartoons.  
**A:** Why \_\_\_\_\_ their homework?  
**B:** They're not doing their homework because they don't have homework today.
7. **A:** I'm leaving.  
**B:** Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
**A:** I'm going to Grandma's house.  
**B:** Why \_\_\_\_\_?  
**A:** Because you're making too much noise. I have to study. It's quieter at Grandma's house.
8. **Dad:** I'm planning to retire next year.  
**Son:** You're so young. Why \_\_\_\_\_?  
**Dad:** First of all, I'm not so young. I'm almost 60. I'm planning to travel.  
**Son:** \_\_\_\_\_ alone?  
**Dad:** No, of course not. I \_\_\_\_\_ with Mom.  
**Son:** But she's still \_\_\_\_\_.  
**Dad:** She is now. But she's thinking about retiring too. She loves her work, but enough's enough. It's time to have fun.

## Technology and the Generation Gap

Before  
You Read

1. Is it hard for older people to learn about new technology?
2. Do you text a lot?



**A teenager, Marco (M), is visiting his grandmother (G). Read their conversation. Pay special attention to the present continuous tense and the simple present tense.**

### Did You Know?

According to a 2008 study, kids 13-17 text more than any other age group. They prefer texting over e-mailing. They send an average of 357 text messages a month.

**G:** Listen, Marco, I'm **thinking** about getting a new computer. Can you help me pick one out?

**M:** Sure, Grandma. How about on Saturday?

**G:** Saturday's good. What's that sound? It **sounds** like rock music **is coming** from your pocket.

**M:** It's my cell phone. It's my new ring tone. I'm **receiving** a text message now.

**G:** Is it important?

**M:** It's a message from Dad. See?

**G:** It **looks** like Greek to me. What does it **say**?

**M:** He's **reminding** me to come home early. He **wants** to give me another driving lesson. I'm **learning** to drive, you know.

**G:** When I **have** something to say, I **use** the phone. **Don't** you ever **use** your phone anymore?

**M:** Of course I **do**. But I also text at least 20 times a day. It **saves** time. You can text me too, Grandma.

**G:** OK. It **looks** hard. Teach me.

**M:** Try it. Grandma, you're **writing** so slowly. And you're **using** whole words. Use abbreviations. And forget about punctuation. You **need** to write fast.

**G:** You know I'm an English teacher, and I **don't** like to write without punctuation.

**M:** Everyone **writes** without punctuation.

**G:** I **don't** think I can do it.

**M:** But you **send** e-mail.

**G:** That's different. I **write** slowly and **check** my spelling before I **send**.

**M:** You're so old-fashioned!

**G:** No, I'm not. I'm still **learning** new things. I'm **studying** photo editing at the senior center. I'm **making** a digital family album. I **love** it!

**M:** I'm proud of you, Grandma.

**G:** Thanks. Life is different today. But one thing **is** the same: 16-year-olds **want** to get their driver's license.





## 2.4 Contrasting the Simple Present and the Present Continuous

### Forms

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE	PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE
Grandma <b>uses</b> e-mail. She <b>doesn't use</b> text messages. <b>Does</b> she <b>use</b> the Internet? Yes, she <b>does</b> . When <b>does</b> she <b>use</b> the Internet? Why <b>doesn't</b> she <b>use</b> text messages?	Marco <b>is receiving</b> a message. He <b>isn't receiving</b> a phone call. <b>Is</b> he <b>receiving</b> a message from his friend? No, he <b>isn't</b> . How <b>is</b> he <b>receiving</b> a message? Why <b>isn't</b> he <b>receiving</b> a message from his friend?

### Use

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATIONS
a. Most people <b>have</b> a computer. a. Young people <b>like</b> to send text messages.  b. Grandma often <b>e-mails</b> her friends. b. Marco sometimes <b>visits</b> his grandmother.  c. Many people <b>text</b> without punctuation. c. People <b>use</b> abbreviations in text messages.	Use the <b>simple present tense</b> to talk about: a. a general truth  b. a habitual activity  c. a custom
a. Dad <b>is reminding</b> me to put gas in the tank. a. You're <b>writing</b> so slowly.  b. Marco <b>is learning</b> to drive. b. I'm <b>making</b> a family album.  c. People <b>are living</b> longer these days. c. People <b>are retiring</b> earlier these days.	Use the <b>present continuous tense</b> for: a. an action that is in progress now  b. a longer action that is in progress at this general time  c. recent trends in society
<b>Compare:</b> a. My grandparents <b>live</b> in a retirement village. b. My sister <b>is living</b> in a dorm this semester.	a. <i>Live</i> in the simple present shows a person's home. b. <i>Live</i> in the present continuous shows a temporary, short-term residence.
<b>Compare:</b> a. <b>What does she do (for a living)?</b> She's an English teacher. b. <b>What is she doing now?</b> She's talking to her grandson.	Sentence (a) asks about a job or profession. It uses the simple present tense.  Sentence (b) asks about an activity now. It uses the present continuous tense.

**EXERCISE 11** Fill in the blanks with the simple present or the present continuous tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

1. **A:** What are you eating? Is it a hamburger?  
(example: you/eat)

**B:** No, it isn't. It's a veggie burger. I never \_\_\_\_\_ meat.  
(1 eat)  
Where's your lunch?

**A:** I don't want to eat lunch. I \_\_\_\_\_ too much weight.  
(2 gain)  
I \_\_\_\_\_ to lose weight. I \_\_\_\_\_  
(3 try) (4 eat)  
only twice a day—breakfast and dinner.

**B:** But you \_\_\_\_\_ a soda now.  
(5 drink)

**A:** It's a diet cola.

2. **A:** What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(6 you/do)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ in the answers.  
(7 fill)

**A:** Why \_\_\_\_\_ a pen? A pencil is better. What if  
(8 you/use)  
you make a mistake?

**B:** I never \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes. My grammar is perfect!  
(9 make)

**A:** That's not true. We all \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes. That's  
(10 make)  
why we're in this class.

**B:** I'm just kidding. Of course I \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes all  
(11 make)  
the time.

3. **A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ for a living?  
(12 your father/do)

**B:** He's a commercial artist. He \_\_\_\_\_ for a big  
(13 work)  
company downtown. But this week he's on vacation.

**A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ this week?  
(14 he/do)

**B:** He \_\_\_\_\_ golf with his friends.  
(15 play)

(continued)



**A:** Is your mom on vacation too?

**B:** No. She \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation every December.  
(16 take)

4. **A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
(17 the teacher/go)

**B:** She \_\_\_\_\_ to her office.  
(18 go)

**A:** She \_\_\_\_\_ heavy books. Let's help her.  
(19 carry)

**B:** I'm late for my next class. My math teacher always

\_\_\_\_\_ on time. He \_\_\_\_\_ angry  
(20 start) (21 get)

if someone is late.

5. **A:** You \_\_\_\_\_, Daniel. Wake up.  
(22 sleep)

**B:** I'm so tired. I never \_\_\_\_\_ enough sleep.  
(23 get)

**A:** How many hours \_\_\_\_\_ a night?  
(24 you/sleep)

**B:** Only about 4 or 5.

**A:** That's not enough. You always \_\_\_\_\_ asleep in class.  
(25 fall)

**B:** I know. But I \_\_\_\_\_ 18 credit hours this semester.  
(26 take)

**A:** That's too much. I never \_\_\_\_\_ more than 12.  
(27 take)

## 2.5 Action and Nonaction Verbs

Some verbs are action verbs. These verbs show physical or mental activity (*run, play, study, drive, eat, etc.*). Some verbs are nonaction verbs. These verbs describe a state, condition, or feeling, not an action.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION																									
<p>Marco <b>wants</b> to get a driver's license. Grandma <b>loves</b> her class.</p>	<p>With nonaction verbs, we use the simple present tense, even when we talk about now. We do not usually use a continuous form with these verbs.</p>																									
<p>Marco is <b>looking</b> at his cell phone. He <b>sees</b> a message from his father.</p> <p>Grandma <b>is listening</b> to her grandson. She <b>hears</b> his ring tone.</p> <p>Judy <b>is meeting</b> new people. She <b>knows</b> a lot of people.</p>	<p><i>Look</i> is an action verb. <i>See</i> is a nonaction verb.</p> <p><i>Listen</i> is an action verb. <i>Hear</i> is a nonaction verb.</p> <p><i>Meet</i> is an action verb. <i>Know</i> is a nonaction verb.</p>																									
<p>Grandma <b>is thinking</b> about getting a new computer.</p> <p>She <b>thinks</b> that using the phone is better than texting.</p>	<p>When you think <i>about</i> or <i>of</i> something, <i>think</i> is an action verb.</p> <p><i>Think that</i> shows an opinion about something. It is a nonaction verb.</p>																									
<p>Grandma <b>is having</b> a good time in her photo class. She's <b>having</b> lunch now.</p> <p>Grandma <b>has</b> free time now. She <b>has</b> five grandchildren. Marco <b>has</b> a cold now.</p>	<p>When <i>have</i> means to experience something or to eat or drink something, it is an action verb.</p> <p>When <i>have</i> shows possession, relationship, or illness, it is a nonaction verb.</p>																									
<p>She's <b>looking</b> at her photo album. She's <b>smelling</b> the coffee.</p> <p>I want to learn to text, but it <b>looks</b> hard. Your ring tone <b>sounds</b> loud.</p>	<p>When the sense-perception verbs describe an action, they are action verbs.</p> <p>When the sense-perception verbs describe a state, they are nonaction verbs.</p>																									
<p><b>Nonaction Verbs:</b></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>like</td> <td>remember</td> <td>see</td> <td>seem</td> </tr> <tr> <td>love</td> <td>believe</td> <td>cost</td> <td>prefer</td> </tr> <tr> <td>hate</td> <td>think (that)</td> <td>own</td> <td>know</td> </tr> <tr> <td>want</td> <td>care (about)</td> <td>have</td> <td>mean</td> </tr> <tr> <td>need</td> <td>understand</td> <td>matter</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p><b>Sense-Perception Verbs:</b></p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td>smell</td> <td>taste</td> <td>feel</td> <td>look</td> <td>sound</td> </tr> </table>		like	remember	see	seem	love	believe	cost	prefer	hate	think (that)	own	know	want	care (about)	have	mean	need	understand	matter		smell	taste	feel	look	sound
like	remember	see	seem																							
love	believe	cost	prefer																							
hate	think (that)	own	know																							
want	care (about)	have	mean																							
need	understand	matter																								
smell	taste	feel	look	sound																						



**EXERCISE 12**

Fill in the blanks with the simple present or the present continuous tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

CD 1, TR 18



1. **A:** Grandpa volunteers his time. Twice a week he reads (example: read) for blind people.

**B:** My grandmother works (1 work) part-time in a bookstore. She loves (2 love) books. She usually rides (3 ride) her bike to work. She likes (4 like) the exercise.

**A:** Where is she now? She is working (5 she/work) now?

**B:** Now she's on vacation. She sails (6 sail) in Florida.

2. **A:** Can I borrow your dictionary?

**B:** I'm sorry. I use (7 use) it now. Where's your dictionary?

**A:** I never bring (8 bring) it to class. It's too heavy.

**B:** I expect (9 expect) to use my dictionary all the time?

You need (10 need) an electronic dictionary. It's very light.

3. **A:** What does the teacher say (11 the teacher/say)?

She talks (12 talk) too fast, so I don't understand (13 not/understand) her now.

**B:** I don't know. I don't listen (14 not/listen). I think (15 think) about my grandparents.

**A:** I think (16 think) you are a very good grandson.

**B:** Yes. I am thinking (17 think) about visiting them next weekend.

4. **A:** What are you writing (18 you/write)?

**B:** I write (19 write) a composition about my grandparents. I love (20 love) them very much.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ with you?  
(21 they/live)

**B:** No, they don't. They live in Pakistan. They  
\_\_\_\_\_ us once a year.  
(22 visit)

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ them e-mail?  
(23 you/ever/send)

**B:** Sometimes I do. But right now their computer \_\_\_\_\_  
(24 not/work)  
Anyway, they \_\_\_\_\_ handwritten letters.  
(25 prefer)

**5. A:** Look at that girl. Who is she?

**B:** She's in my math class. I \_\_\_\_\_ her pretty well.  
(26 know)

**A:** What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(27 she/wear)

**B:** She \_\_\_\_\_ a dress and army boots.  
(28 wear)

**A:** She \_\_\_\_\_ strange. \_\_\_\_\_  
(29 look) (30 she/always/wear)  
a dress and army boots?

**B:** No, not always. Sometimes she \_\_\_\_\_ sandals.  
(31 wear)  
And sometimes she \_\_\_\_\_ any shoes at all.  
(32 not/wear)

**6. A:** \_\_\_\_\_ that guy over there? Who is he?  
(33 you/see)

**B:** That's my English teacher.

**A:** He \_\_\_\_\_ jeans and gym shoes. And he  
(34 wear)  
\_\_\_\_\_ an earring in his ear.  
(35 have)

He \_\_\_\_\_ like a student.  
(36 look)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ . Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ he's a student.  
(37 know) (38 think)

But he's a very professional teacher.

**A:** What level \_\_\_\_\_?  
(39 he/teach)

(continued)



**B:** He teaches level four. But now he \_\_\_\_\_ for  
(40 look)  
another job because he \_\_\_\_\_ a full-time job  
(41 not/have)  
here. He \_\_\_\_\_ to work full-time.  
(42 want)

**7. A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ this semester?  
(43 you/study)

**B:** English, math, and biology.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ well in all your courses?  
(44 you/do)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ well in English and math. But biology  
(45 do)  
is hard for me. I \_\_\_\_\_ to drop it.  
(46 need)

I \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher very well.  
(47 not/understand)

He \_\_\_\_\_ too fast for me.  
(48 talk)

**8. A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ for a living?  
(49 your mother/do)

**B:** She's retired now.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ old?  
(50 she/be)

**B:** No, she's only 58.

**A:** What \_\_\_\_\_ with her free time?  
(51 she/do)

**B:** She does a lot of things. In fact, she \_\_\_\_\_ any  
(52 not/have)  
free time at all. She \_\_\_\_\_ two art courses at the  
(53 take)  
art center this semester. Right now she \_\_\_\_\_ a  
(54 paint)  
beautiful picture of me. She also \_\_\_\_\_ at a  
(55 volunteer)  
hospital twice a week.

**A:** That's wonderful. A lot of retired people \_\_\_\_\_  
(56 volunteer)  
these days.

**EXERCISE 13**

This is a phone conversation between two friends, Patty (P) and Linda (L). Fill in the blanks with the missing words. Use the simple present or the present continuous tense.



CD 1, TR 19

**P:** Hello?

**L:** Hi, Patty. This is Linda.

**P:** Hi, Linda. What are you doing now?  
(example: you/do)

**L:** Not much. \_\_\_\_\_ to meet for coffee?  
(1 you/want)

**P:** I can't. I \_\_\_\_\_ . I \_\_\_\_\_  
(2 cook) (3 have)  
dinner in the oven now, and I \_\_\_\_\_ for it to be  
finished. What \_\_\_\_\_?  
(4 wait) (5 you/do)

**L:** I \_\_\_\_\_ for a test. But I \_\_\_\_\_  
(6 study) (7 want)  
to take a break now. Besides, I \_\_\_\_\_ to talk to  
someone. I usually \_\_\_\_\_ to my roommate when  
I \_\_\_\_\_ a problem, but  
(8 need) (9 talk) (10 have)  
she \_\_\_\_\_ some friends in New York now.  
(11 visit)

**P:** We can talk while I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.  
(12 prepare)  
It \_\_\_\_\_ serious.  
(13 sound)

**L:** My parents \_\_\_\_\_ to put Grandma in a nursing home.  
(14 plan)

**P:** But why?

**L:** My mom \_\_\_\_\_ she'll receive better care there.  
(15 think)

**P:** I \_\_\_\_\_ that's such a good idea. In my family,  
(16 not/think)  
we \_\_\_\_\_ our parents and grandparents in a nursing  
(17 never/put)  
home. We \_\_\_\_\_ of them at home.  
(18 always/take care)

**L:** My mom \_\_\_\_\_ what else to do. Grandma  
(19 not/know)  
\_\_\_\_\_ all the time.  
(20 fall)

**P:** Maybe she \_\_\_\_\_ a cane or a walker.  
(21 need)

**L:** Her memory is terrible too. She \_\_\_\_\_ where she  
(22 never/remember)  
puts things.

**P:** I \_\_\_\_\_ my husband coming in the door, and  
(23 hear)  
dinner is almost ready. I'll call you later when we can talk more about it.

**L:** Thanks for listening. Talk to you later.





# The Graying of America

## Before You Read

1. In your native culture, who takes care of people when they get old?
2. Do old people in your native culture get a lot of respect?



CD 1, TR 20

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to future tense verbs.**

The overall population of the U.S. is growing slowly. In the year 2009, the American population was 303 million. By the middle of this century, it is going to be 404 million. Even though this is not a big growth, one group is growing very fast—the elderly (65 years old and over). By 2030, 20 percent of the American population will be 65 or over. Today there are three million people 85 or older. In 2050, 28 million will be 85 or older.



There are two reasons for this sudden rise in the number of older Americans. First, life expectancy is increasing. In 1900, when the life expectancy was 47, 1 in 25 Americans was elderly. In 2000, with a life expectancy of 79.5 years for women and 74 for men, 1 in 8 was elderly. By 2050, 1 in 5 will be elderly.

The second reason for this growth is the aging of the “baby boomers.” In the 18 years after World War II, from 1946 to 1964, a large number of babies were born—75 million. The people born during this period, known as the baby boomers, are now middle-aged and will soon be elderly. The average age of the population is increasing as the baby boomers get older and live longer. The median age of Americans in 1970 was 28; in 2000 it was 35.3. By 2050, it will be 41.1.

What does this mean for America? First, there will be a labor shortage as the baby boomers retire. There are fewer younger people to take their place at work. For taxpayers, the aging of Americans means that they are going to pay more taxes as one-fifth of the population uses one-half of the resources. Also, the country will see an increase in the number of nursing homes and the need for people to work in them.

The housing market will have to respond to the needs of the baby boomers too. As their children grow up and move out, many baby boomers will sell their bigger houses and move to smaller ones. Others will convert extra bedrooms to offices and home gyms. Also, we will see more and more retirement villages for active seniors. Some seniors will move from the



suburbs to the city. "We live in a suburb of Chicago now," says Paula Hoffman, 52, "because the schools for our teenage children are good. But when they go away to college, we are going to move back into the city. There's much more activity for us there."



Susan Brecht, a housing consultant in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, says, "Baby boomers do not view retirement the way their parents and grandparents did. For starters, they're much more active. My 55 is not my mother's 55," Brecht stated. "I think there is a change in how different generations respond to the aging process. And that's what we're seeing now and will see in a dramatic way for the next 10 to 20 years."

It will be interesting to see how the baby boomers are going to continue to influence the future of America.

## 2.6 The Future Tense with *Will*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
We <b>will move</b> back to the city. You <b>will see</b> a big change in the next 10 to 20 years.	We use <i>will</i> + the base form for the future tense.
I <b>will always</b> help my parents. My parents <b>will never</b> go to a nursing home.	We can put a frequency word between <i>will</i> and the main verb.
<b>I'll</b> be 72 in 2050. <b>You'll</b> take care of your elderly parents.	We can contract <i>will</i> with the subject pronouns. The contractions are <i>I'll</i> , <i>you'll</i> , <i>he'll</i> , <i>she'll</i> , <i>it'll</i> , <i>we'll</i> , and <i>they'll</i> .
The population <b>will not</b> go down. I <b>won't</b> live with my grown children.	To form the negative, put <i>not</i> after <i>will</i> . The contraction for <i>will not</i> is <i>won't</i> .

### Compare affirmative statements and questions with *will*.

Wh- Word	Will	Subject	Will	Verb (Base Form)	Complement	Short Answer
		She	<b>will</b>	live	with her daughter.	
	<b>Will</b>	she		live	with her son?	No, she <b>won't</b> .
When	<b>will</b>	she		live	with her daughter?	Soon.

(continued)



Compare negative statements and questions with *will*.

Wh- Word	Won't	Subject	Won't	Verb (Base Form)	Complement
Why	won't	They they	won't	need need	a large house. a large house?

**EXERCISE 14** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate verb in the future tense. Use *will*. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** In the future, people will live longer.

- The population of old people \_\_\_\_\_.
- There \_\_\_\_\_ more older people by 2050.
- Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ when you are old?
- \_\_\_\_\_ your children \_\_\_\_\_ care of you?
- How old \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ in 2050?
- Many baby boomers are middle-aged now. They \_\_\_\_\_ soon \_\_\_\_\_ elderly.

**EXERCISE 15** A 30-year-old woman is saying good-bye to her 60-year-old parents. They are leaving on a trip in their recreational vehicle (RV). Fill in the blanks to complete this conversation. Use the future tense with *will*. Answers may vary.



**A:** I'm worried about you. You *'ll be* \_\_\_\_\_ gone for a long time.  
(example)

**B:** Don't worry. We \_\_\_\_\_ only \_\_\_\_\_ gone for the summer months.  
(1) (2)

**A:** You \_\_\_\_\_ alone on the road.  
(3)

**B:** We \_\_\_\_\_ on the road all the time.  
(4)

We \_\_\_\_\_ at campsites with lots of other RVs and campers.  
(5)

**A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ your clothes?  
(6)

**B:** The RV has a washing machine.

**A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_ your food?  
(7)

**B:** We'll buy food at a supermarket on the way and cook it in the RV. The RV has everything—a stove, a microwave, a dishwasher. Sometimes we \_\_\_\_\_ a fire and cook on the grill.

(8)

Other times we \_\_\_\_\_ out in restaurants.

(9)

**A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_ first?

(10)

**B:** First, we'll go to the Grand Canyon.

**A:** That's fabulous! \_\_\_\_\_ me a postcard from there?

(11)

**B:** Of course we \_\_\_\_\_ . And we \_\_\_\_\_

(12)

(13)

send you e-mail too.

**A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ e-mail?

(14)

**B:** From our computer, of course. We \_\_\_\_\_ it with us.

(15)

**A:** Where \_\_\_\_\_ electricity for all these things?

(16)

**B:** At the campsites. There are electrical hookups.

**A:** You \_\_\_\_\_ all the comforts of home. Why, then,

(17)

are you leaving?

**B:** We can't see the Grand Canyon from our home.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ pictures?

(18)

**B:** Yes, we'll take a lot of pictures. We'll have our digital camera with us.

There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of beautiful things to take

(19)

pictures of. We \_\_\_\_\_ them to you by e-mail.

(20)

**A:** Have a good time. I \_\_\_\_\_ you.

(21)

**B:** We'll miss you too.





## 2.7 The Future Tense with *Be Going To*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
People <b>are going to live</b> longer. They <b>are going to need</b> help from their children. There <b>are going to be</b> more elderly people in 50 years.	We use a form of <i>be + going to</i> + the base form to form the future tense.
I'm <b>not</b> going to live with my grown children. He <b>isn't</b> going to retire.	To form the negative, put <i>not</i> after <i>am</i> , <i>is</i> , or <i>are</i> .
We're <b>going to go</b> on a long trip in the RV. We're <b>going</b> on a long trip in the RV.	We often shorten <i>going to go</i> to <i>going</i> .
We're going to return <b>in</b> two months. I'm going to retire <b>in</b> ten years.	We use the preposition <i>in</i> with the future tense to mean <i>after</i> .
<b>Pronunciation Notes:</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In informal speech, <i>going to</i> before another verb often sounds like "gonna." In formal English, we don't write "gonna." Listen to your teacher's pronunciation of <i>going to</i> in the following sentences.                          Where's he going to live? (Where's he "gonna" live?)                          He's going to live in a dorm. (He's "gonna" live in a dorm.)</li> <li>Only <i>going to</i> before another verb sounds like "gonna." We don't pronounce "gonna" before a noun.                          Where is he going?                          He's going to the bookstore.</li> </ol>	

Compare affirmative statements and questions with *be going to*.

Wh- Word	Be	Subject	Be	Going to + Verb (Base Form)	Complement	Short Answer
		They	are	going to sell	their house.	
	Are	they		going to sell	it soon?	Yes, they are.
Why	are	they		going to sell	it?	Because it's too big.

Compare negative statements and questions with *be going to*.

Wh- Word	Be + n't	Subject	Be + n't	Going to + Verb (Base Form)	Complement
		She	isn't	going to retire	from her job.
Why	isn't	she		going to retire	



**EXERCISE 16** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate verb in the future tense. Use *be going to*. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** Are your children going to take care of you?

- The cost of health care \_\_\_\_\_.
- People \_\_\_\_\_ higher taxes.
- How old \_\_\_\_\_ your daughter \_\_\_\_\_ in 2050?
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ care of your elderly parents?
- A lot of people \_\_\_\_\_ over 100 years old in 2050.

**EXERCISE 17** Two co-workers are talking. Fill in the blanks with the future using *be going to*.



**A:** I'm so excited. I 'm going to retire at the end of this year.  
(example: retire)

**B:** That's wonderful news. What \_\_\_\_\_ next?  
(1 you/do)

**A:** I don't really know yet. I \_\_\_\_\_ new things.  
(2 explore)

**B:** For example, what \_\_\_\_\_?  
(3 you/explore)

**A:** I think I have a talent for art. I \_\_\_\_\_ art classes.  
(4 take)

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ part-time?  
(5 you/work)

**A:** No way! I \_\_\_\_\_ exactly what I want to do, when I want to do it.  
(6 do)

**B:** Is your husband happy about your retirement?

**A:** Yes. He \_\_\_\_\_ too.  
(7 retire)

**B:** But you're not that old.

**A:** I'm 58 and he's 56. Our children aren't going to need us much anymore.

**B:** Why \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
(8 not/need)

**A:** Our youngest son \_\_\_\_\_ from college in June. And the other two are already on their own. The oldest \_\_\_\_\_ married next year, and the middle one has her own apartment and a job.  
(9 graduate) (10 get)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ you at work.  
(11 miss)

**A:** I \_\_\_\_\_ you too. But I \_\_\_\_\_ the boss and the long hours.  
(12 miss) (13 not/miss)





**EXERCISE 18** Do you have questions for the teacher about this semester, next semester, or his or her life in general? Write three questions to ask the teacher about the near or distant future.

**EXAMPLES** What time are you going to leave today?

When are you going to give us a test?

Are you going to retire soon?

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2.8 Choosing *Will* or *Be Going To*

In many cases, you can use either *will* or *be going to*. But in a few cases, one is preferred over the other.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>A: When is Grandpa going to move into the retirement home?</p> <p>B: He's <b>going to move</b> next summer. He needs help. I'm <b>going to rent</b> a moving truck and help him.</p>	<p>If the decision or plan was made before this conversation takes place, use <i>be going to</i>.</p>
<p>A: What are you going to do when you retire?</p> <p>B: I don't know. I'll <b>cross</b> that bridge when I come to it.<sup>8</sup></p>	<p>Speaker B is thinking about the future at the time of talking. There is no previous plan. If there is no previous plan, use <i>will</i>.</p>
<p>Grandma: I don't know how to send a text message.</p> <p>Grandson: No problem. I'll <b>teach</b> you.</p>	<p>The grandson is making an offer to help at the time of talking. He had no previous plan. If there is an offer to help, use <i>will</i>.</p>
<p>Grandma: I need to buy a cell phone. What should I buy?</p> <p>Grandson: Don't worry. I'll <b>help</b> you.</p>	
<p>Grandma: I'm lonely.</p> <p>Grandson: I'll <b>visit</b> you on the weekend.</p> <p>Grandma: You always say that. But you never have time.</p> <p>Grandson: I'll <b>make time</b>. I promise.</p>	<p>The grandson is making a promise. If there is a promise, use <i>will</i>.</p>

### Language Notes:

- For predictions, facts about the future, or scheduled events, you can use either *will* or *be going to*.  
 The movie **will begin** at 8 PM. = The movie **is going to begin** at 8 PM.  
 Technology **will improve** in the future. = Technology **is going to improve** in the future.
- We sometimes use the present continuous tense with a future meaning. We can do this with planned events in the near future. We do this especially with verbs of motion.  
 My grandmother **is moving** into a retirement home on Friday.  
 I'm **helping** her move on Friday.

<sup>8</sup>This is an expression that means: I'll worry about it when the time comes, not before.

**EXERCISE 19** Choose *be going to* or *will* to fill in the blanks. In some cases, both are possible.

1. **A:** Where are you going?

**B:** I'm going to the park this afternoon. I 'm going to meet \_\_\_\_\_  
(example: meet)

my friend and play tennis with her. I have to return some videos to the video store, but I don't have time.

**A:** Give them to me. I \_\_\_\_\_ that way.  
(1 pass)

I \_\_\_\_\_ them for you.  
(2 return)

2. **A:** I have to go to the airport. My sister's plane

\_\_\_\_\_ at four o'clock this afternoon.  
(3 arrive)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ with you. I \_\_\_\_\_  
(4 go) (5 stay)

in the car while you go into the airport. That way, you

\_\_\_\_\_ pay for parking.  
(6 not/have to)

3. **A:** My sister's birthday is next week.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ her a birthday present?  
(7 you/give)

**A:** Of course I \_\_\_\_\_.  
(8)

**B:** What \_\_\_\_\_ her?  
(9 you/give)

**A:** She loves the theater. I \_\_\_\_\_ her tickets to a play.  
(10 buy)

**B:** How old \_\_\_\_\_?  
(11 be)

**A:** She \_\_\_\_\_ 21 years old.  
(12 be)

4. **Teacher:** Next week we \_\_\_\_\_ our midterm test.  
(13 have)

**Student:** \_\_\_\_\_ hard?  
(14 it/be)

**Teacher:** Yes, but I \_\_\_\_\_ you prepare for it.  
(15 help)

(continued)



5. **Wife:** I won't have time to pick up the children this afternoon. I have to work late.

**Husband:** Don't worry. I \_\_\_\_\_ them up.  
(16 pick)

**Wife:** I won't have time to cook either.

**Husband:** Just relax. I \_\_\_\_\_ dinner tonight.  
(17 prepare)

6. **Man:** I want to marry you.

**Woman:** But we're only 19. We're too young.

**Man:** I \_\_\_\_\_ 20 in April.  
(18 be)

**Woman:** But you don't even have a job.

**Man:** I \_\_\_\_\_ a job.  
(19 find)

**Woman:** Let's wait a few years.

**Man:** I \_\_\_\_\_ for you forever. I \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
(20 wait) (21 always/love)

7. **A:** Do you want to watch the football game with me on Saturday?

**B:** I can't. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ . I \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
(22 move) (23 help)

**A:** Do you need any help?

**B:** We need boxes. Do you have any?

**A:** No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ for boxes. I \_\_\_\_\_  
(24 look) (25 go)

to the supermarket this afternoon. I \_\_\_\_\_  
(26 get)

boxes there. I \_\_\_\_\_ them to your house.  
(27 bring)

**B:** Thanks.

8. **A:** I'm so excited! I \_\_\_\_\_ a puppy.  
(28 get)

**B:** That's a big responsibility. You're never home. How  
\_\_\_\_\_ care of it?  
(29 take)

**A:** My cousin lives with me now. She doesn't have a job.

She \_\_\_\_\_ me take care of the dog.  
(30 help)

**B:** What about your landlord? Is it OK with him?

**A:** I \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
(31 not/tell)

**B:** You have to tell him. He \_\_\_\_\_ if you have a  
(32 know)

dog. You \_\_\_\_\_ take the dog out  
(33 have to)

three times a day. And the dog \_\_\_\_\_  
(34 bark)

## 2.9 Future Tense + Time/If Clause<sup>9</sup>

Some future sentences have two clauses: a main clause and a time or *if* clause.

Time or <i>If</i> Clause (Simple Present Tense)	Main Clause (Future Tense)	Explanation
When the children <b>grow</b> up, If I <b>am</b> healthy,	we <b>will move</b> back to the city. I <b>will continue</b> to work for the rest of my life.	We use the <i>future</i> only in the main clause; we use the <i>simple present tense</i> in the time/ <i>if</i> clause.
Main Clause (Future Tense)	Time or <i>If</i> Clause (Simple Present Tense)	We can put the time/ <i>if</i> clause before the main clause. Or we can put the main clause before the time/ <i>if</i> clause.
He <b>will move</b> to a warm climate	as soon as he <b>retires</b> .	
My parents <b>are going to travel</b>	if they <b>take</b> an early retirement.	

**Punctuation Note:** If the time/*if* clause comes before the main clause, we use a comma to separate the two parts of the sentence. If the main clause comes first, we don't use a comma.

**EXERCISE 20** Connect the sentences using the word in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** I will retire. I will play golf. (when)

When I retire, I will play golf. OR I will play golf when I retire.

1. I will retire. I'm not going to live with my children. (when)

2. I will be old. I will take care of myself. (when)

<sup>9</sup>A clause is a group of words that has a subject and a verb. Some sentences have more than one clause.



3. I won't be healthy. I'll live with my children. (if)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. I won't have money. I will get help from the government. (if)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. My parents will die. I'll move to another city. (after)

\_\_\_\_\_

6. I will get a pension. I won't need to depend on my children. (if)

\_\_\_\_\_

7. I'll retire. I'm going to save my money. (before)

\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 21**

**ABOUT YOU** Think about a specific time in your future (when you graduate, when you get married, when you have children, when you find a job, when you return to your native country, when you are old, etc.). Write three sentences to tell what will happen at that time. Find a partner who is close to your age. Compare your answers to your partner's answers.

**EXAMPLES**

When I have children, I won't have as much free time as I do now.

When I have children, I'm going to have a lot more responsibilities.

When I have children, my parents will be very happy.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 22**

A Korean student (K) is talking to an American (A) about getting old. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb to complete this conversation. In many cases, you can use either *be going to* or *will*.



CD 1, TR 23

**K:** How's your grandfather?

**A:** He's OK. I am going to visit him this afternoon.  
(example: visit)

**K:** How's he doing?

**A:** He's in great health. Next week he \_\_\_\_\_  
(I go)  
to Hawaii to play golf.

**K:** How old is he?

**A:** He \_\_\_\_\_ 78 next month. Did I tell you?

(2 be)

In June, he \_\_\_\_\_ married to

(3 get)

a widow he met in the retirement home.



**K:** That seems so strange to me.

Why \_\_\_\_\_ that?

(4 he/do)

**A:** Why not? They like each other, and they want to be together.

**K:** What \_\_\_\_\_ when he's no longer

(5 you/do)

able to take care of himself?

**A:** We never think about it. He's in such great shape that we think

he \_\_\_\_\_ healthy forever. I think

(6 be)

he \_\_\_\_\_ us all.

(7 outlive)

**K:** But he \_\_\_\_\_ help as he gets older.

(8 probably/need)

**A:** We \_\_\_\_\_ that bridge when we come

(9 cross)

to it. Do you have plans for your parents as they get older?

**K:** They're in their 50s now. But when they \_\_\_\_\_

(10 be)

older, they \_\_\_\_\_ with me and my wife.

(11 live)

In our country, it's an honor to take care of our parents.

**A:** That sounds like a great custom. But I think older people should

be independent. I'm glad that Grandpa doesn't depend on us.

And when I \_\_\_\_\_ old, I \_\_\_\_\_

(12 be)

(13 take)

care of myself. I don't want to depend on anyone.

**K:** You \_\_\_\_\_ your mind when

(14 change)

you \_\_\_\_\_ old.

(15 be)

**A:** Maybe. I have to catch my bus now. Grandpa is waiting for me.

I \_\_\_\_\_ you later.

(16 see)

**K:** Wait. I have my car. I \_\_\_\_\_ you to your

(17 drive)

grandfather's place.

**A:** Thanks.



**EXERCISE 23**

This is a conversation between two co-workers. They are talking about retirement. Fill in the blanks with the correct form and tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

CD 1, TR 24



- A:** I hear you're going to retire this year.
- B:** Yes. Isn't it wonderful? I will be (example: be) 65 in September.
- A:** What do you do (1 you/do) after you retire (2 retire)?
- B:** I'm trying to sell my house now. When I sell (3 sell) it, I move (4 move) to Florida and buy a condo.
- A:** What do you do (5 you/do) in Florida?
- B:** I buy (6 buy) a sailboat and spend most of my time on the water.
- A:** But a sailboat is expensive.
- B:** When I am (7 be) 65, I start (8 start) to use my savings. Also, I get (9 get) a lot of money when I sell (10 sell) my house.
- What do you do (11 you/do) when you retire (12 retire)?
- A:** I'm only 45 years old. I have another 20 years until I retire (13 retire).
- B:** Now is the time to start thinking about retirement. If you save (14 save) your money for the next 20 years, you have (15 have) a comfortable retirement.
- But if you do not think (16 not/think) about it until the time comes (17 come), you do not have (18 not/have) enough money to live on.
- A:** I worry (19 worry) about it when the time comes (20 come). I'm too young to worry about it now.
- B:** If you wait (21 wait) until you are (22 be) 65 to think about it, you are (23 be) a poor old man.
- On Monday morning when we are (24 be) at work, I introduce (25 introduce) you to a woman who can explain the company's savings plan to you. After you talk (26 talk) to her, I'm sure you change (27 change) your mind about when to worry about retirement.

# Summary of Lesson 2

## Use of Tense

Simple Present Tense	
General truths, facts	Many people <b>retire</b> in their sixties. Retirees <b>get</b> Social Security.
Regular activities, habits, customs	Jack <b>plays</b> golf twice a week. I <b>always</b> visit my grandparents on the weekend.
Place of origin	My grandfather <b>comes</b> from Mexico. My grandmother <b>comes</b> from Peru.
In a time clause or in an <i>if</i> clause of a future statement	When she <b>retires</b> , she will enjoy life. If Grandma <b>needs</b> help, she will live with her daughter.
With nonaction verbs	I <b>care</b> about my grandparents. Your grandfather <b>needs</b> help now. My grandfather <b>prefers</b> to live alone now.

Present Continuous Tense (with action verbs only)	
Now	We're <b>comparing</b> verb tenses now. I'm <b>looking</b> at page 79 now.
A long-term action in progress at this general time	Judy <b>is earning</b> money by making dolls. Jack is retired now. He <b>is starting</b> a new career.
A trend in society	The population of the U.S. <b>is getting</b> older. Americans <b>are living</b> longer.
A plan in the near future	She <b>is retiring</b> next month. She <b>is going</b> on a long trip soon.
A descriptive state	Mary <b>is standing</b> over there. She <b>is wearing</b> jeans and a T-shirt.



## Future Tense

	<i>will</i>	<i>be going to</i>
A plan		He <b>is going to retire</b> in two years.
A fact	The number of old people <b>will increase</b> .	The number of old people <b>is going to increase</b> .
A prediction	I think you <b>will enjoy</b> retirement.	I think you <b>are going to enjoy</b> retirement.
A promise	I <b>will</b> take care of you when you're old.	
An offer to help	Grandma, I'll <b>carry</b> your grocery bags for you.	
A scheduled event	Dance instruction <b>will begin</b> at 8 PM on Saturday.	Dance instruction <b>is going to begin</b> at 8 PM on Saturday.

## Editing Advice

1. Always include *be* in a present continuous tense verb.

<sup>is</sup>  
She ~~working~~ now.

2. Don't use the present continuous tense with a nonaction verb.

<sup>e</sup>  
I ~~am liking~~ your new car.

3. Don't use *be* with another verb for the future.

I will ~~be go~~ back to my native country in five years.

4. Include *be* in a future sentence that has no other verb.

<sup>be</sup>  
He will ~~angry~~.

<sup>be</sup>  
There will ~~a~~ party soon.

5. Don't combine *will* and *be going to*.

He will ~~going to~~ leave. *OR He's going to leave.*

6. Don't use the future tense after a time word or *if*.

When they ~~will~~ go home, they are going to watch TV.

If I ~~will be~~ late, I'll call you.

7. Use a form of *be* with *going to*.

He ~~is~~ going to help me.

8. Use the correct word order in questions.

When ~~you will~~ go back to your native country?

Why ~~she isn't~~ going to buy a new car?

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

My grandfather is retired now and he's not happy. He wakes up every day and says, "What ~~I will~~ do today?" On the other hand, my grandmother is very busy. My grandparents ~~live~~ in a retirement village and Grandma is ~~learning~~ how to draw. She's also ~~take~~ singing lessons, and she ~~studying~~ photography. Next month, she ~~going to~~ take a trip to India with a group of older people. When Grandma ~~will get~~ back from India, she's ~~going to make~~ a photo slideshow of her trip.

Grandpa doesn't want to travel. He says, "What ~~I'm going to~~ do in India?" I'm ~~thinking~~ that Grandpa is ~~needing~~ to find a hobby. Grandma always tells him, "You ~~will happy~~ if you find something to do." ~~Will I going to have~~ a hard time like Grandpa when I ~~will retire~~? I'll ~~be cross~~ that bridge when I ~~come~~ to it.



## Lesson 2 Test/Review

**PART 1** Mary (M) is talking to her friend Sue (S) on the phone. Fill in the blanks with the correct tense and form of the words in parentheses ( ). Use the simple present, present continuous, or future tense. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**S:** Hi, Mary.

**M:** Hi, Sue. How are you?

**S:** Fine. What are you doing?

**M:** I **'m packing** \_\_\_\_\_ now. We \_\_\_\_\_  
(example: pack) (1 move)  
next Saturday.

**S:** Oh, really? Why? You \_\_\_\_\_ such a lovely  
(2 have)  
apartment now.

**M:** Yes, I know we do. But my father \_\_\_\_\_  
(3 come)  
soon, so we \_\_\_\_\_ a bigger apartment.  
(4 need)

**S:** When \_\_\_\_\_?  
(5 come)

**M:** He \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_  
(6 come) (7 get)  
his visa. That'll probably be in about four months.

**S:** But your present apartment \_\_\_\_\_ an extra bedroom.  
(8 have)

**M:** Yes. But my husband \_\_\_\_\_ to have an extra room  
(9 always/like)  
for an office. He usually \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of work home.  
(10 bring)  
He \_\_\_\_\_ a place where he can work without noise.  
(11 need)

**S:** \_\_\_\_\_ his own apartment after he  
(12 your father/get)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a job?  
(13 find)

**M:** He's retired now. He \_\_\_\_\_ with us.  
(14 live)  
He \_\_\_\_\_ to live alone.  
(15 not/like)

**S:** Do you need help with your packing?

**M:** No, thank you. Bill and I \_\_\_\_\_ home this week to  
(16 stay)  
finish the packing. And my sister \_\_\_\_\_ me now too.  
(17 help)

**S:** I \_\_\_\_\_ over next Saturday to help you move.  
(18 come)

**M:** We \_\_\_\_\_ professional movers on Saturday. We don't want to bother our friends.  
(19 use)

**S:** It's no bother. I \_\_\_\_\_ to help.  
(20 want)

**M:** Thanks. There probably \_\_\_\_\_ a few things you can help me with on Saturday. I have to go now. I

\_\_\_\_\_ Bill. He \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
(22 hear) (23 call)

He \_\_\_\_\_ me to help him in the basement.  
(24 want)

I \_\_\_\_\_ you back later.  
(25 call)

**S:** You don't have to call me back. I \_\_\_\_\_ you on Saturday. Bye.  
(26 see)

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with the negative form of the underlined verb.

**EXAMPLE** Mary is busy. Sue \_\_\_\_\_ isn't \_\_\_\_\_ busy.

1. Sue is talking to Mary. She \_\_\_\_\_ to her husband.
2. Mary is going to move to a bigger apartment. She \_\_\_\_\_ to a house.
3. Mary's husband needs an extra room. He \_\_\_\_\_ a big room.
4. Sue will go to Mary's house on Saturday. She \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
5. Mary will move the small things. She \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture.
6. Her new apartment has an extra room for her father. Her old apartment \_\_\_\_\_ an extra room.
7. Her father likes to live with family. He \_\_\_\_\_ to live alone.



**PART 3** Write a *yes/no* question about the words in parentheses ( ). Then write a short answer based on the conversation in Part 1 on pages 82–83:

**EXAMPLE** Mary is busy. (her husband)  
*Is her husband busy? Yes, he is.*

---

1. Mary's husband is helping her pack. (her sister)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Her husband works in an office. (at home)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Her present apartment has an extra room for an office. (for her father)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Professional movers will move the furniture. (her friends)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Mary is staying home this week. (her husband)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Mary's going to move. (Sue)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART 4** Write a *wh-* question about the words in parentheses ( ). An answer is not necessary.

**EXAMPLE** Mary's packing now. (why)  
*Why is she packing?*

---

1. They're going to move to a bigger apartment. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Her husband needs an extra room. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. She doesn't need her friends to help her move. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Her father is going to come soon. (when)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Bill is calling Mary now. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. They'll use professional movers. (when)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# Expansion

## Classroom

### Activities

**1** Check (✓) your predictions about the future. Form a small group and discuss your predictions with your group. Give reasons for your beliefs.

- a. \_\_\_ People are going to have fewer children than they do today.
- b. \_\_\_ People will live longer.
- c. \_\_\_ People will have healthier lives.
- d. \_\_\_ People are going to be happier.
- e. \_\_\_ People will be lonelier.
- f. \_\_\_ People will be more educated.
- g. \_\_\_ Everyone is going to have a computer.
- h. \_\_\_ There will be a cure for cancer and other serious illnesses.
- i. \_\_\_ There will be a cure for the common cold.

**2** Check (✓) the activities that you plan to do soon. Form a group of between five and seven students. Ask questions about the items another student checked.

**EXAMPLE**

✓ move

When are you going to move?  
Why are you moving?  
Are your friends going to help you?  
Are you going to rent a truck?  
Where are you going to move to?

- a. \_\_\_ send e-mail
- b. \_\_\_ visit a friend
- c. \_\_\_ invite guests to my house
- d. \_\_\_ buy something new
- e. \_\_\_ take a vacation
- f. \_\_\_ celebrate a birthday or holiday
- g. \_\_\_ go to a concert or sporting event
- h. \_\_\_ transfer to another school
- i. \_\_\_ move
- j. \_\_\_ take the citizenship test
- k. \_\_\_ start a new job
- l. \_\_\_ have an out-of-town visitor
- m. \_\_\_ get married



## Talk

### About It

- 1 What is the attitude toward older people in your native country or culture? Do they get a lot of respect?
- 2 Is it hard for older people to keep up with all the changes in technology?
- 3 How can retired people use their time? Do you know anyone who is retired? How does this person use his/her time?

## Write

### About It

- 1 Write a short composition telling how you think your life will be when you are 10 years older than you are now.

*Sample beginning:* I'm 25 years old now. When I'm 35 years old, I think I will . . .

- 2 Write a short composition describing the life of an old person you know—a family member, a friend, a neighbor, etc.

#### My Great-Uncle

My great-uncle is 85 years old now and he lives alone, but I think he's going to need help soon. He sometimes falls. Also his memory is not good. My aunt thinks she'll have to put him in a nursing home . . .



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.



## Lesson

# 3

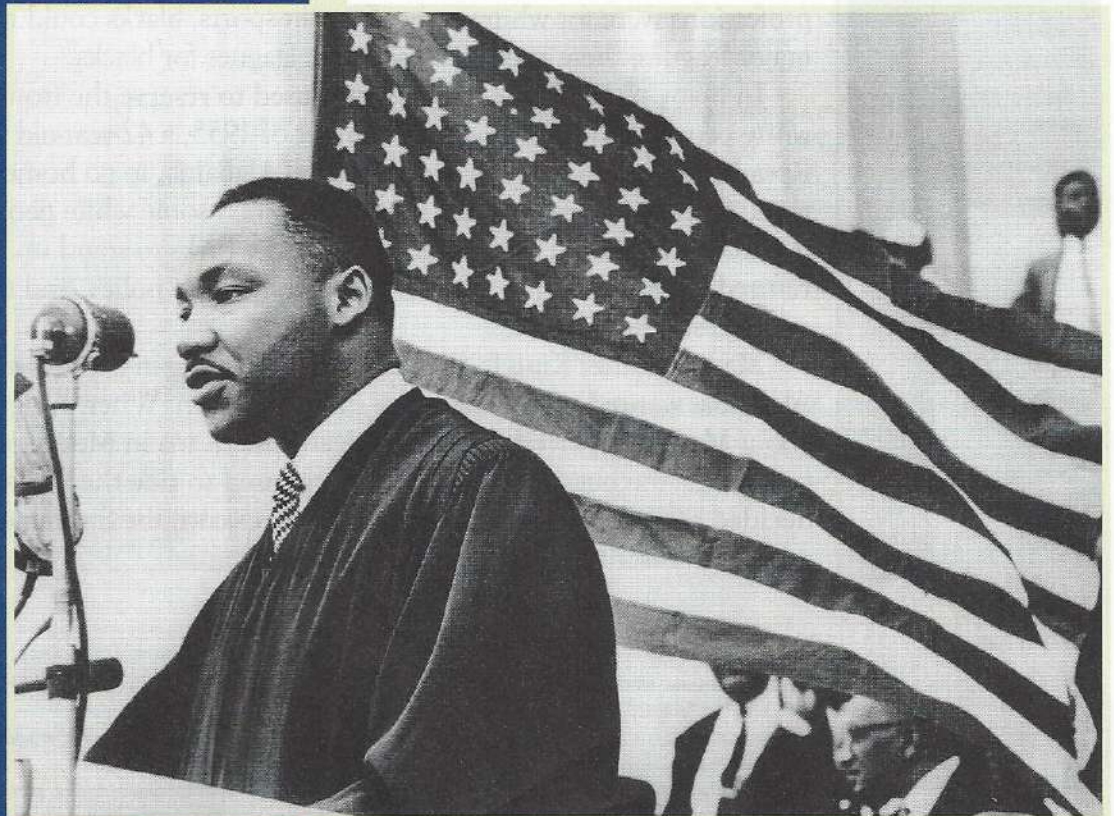
### Grammar

Habitual Past with *Used To*

The Simple Past Tense

### Context

Working Toward Equality



Martin Luther King Jr., 1929–1968



# Equal Rights for All

## Before You Read

1. In your native country, does the government give equality to everyone?
2. Is there one group of people that has a harder life than other groups? Which group? What kinds of problems do these people have?



**Read the following textbook article. Pay special attention to simple past tense verbs and *used to* + base form.**



Rosa Parks

### Did You Know?

Martin Luther King Jr. was interested in the ideas of Mahatma Gandhi of India. He studied and used Gandhi's technique of nonviolent protest.

Today all people in the United States have equal rights under the law. But this **was** not always the case, especially for African-Americans.<sup>1</sup> Even though slavery in the U.S. **ended** in 1865, blacks **continued** to suffer discrimination<sup>2</sup> and segregation,<sup>3</sup> especially in the South. Many hotels, schools, and restaurants **were** for whites only. Many businesses there **used to have** signs in their windows that **said** "Blacks Not Allowed." Black children **used to go** to separate, and often inferior, schools. Many professions **were** for whites only. Even in sports, blacks could not join the major leagues; there **used to be** separate leagues for blacks.

In many places in the South, buses **used to reserve** the front seats for white people. One evening in December of 1955, a 42-year-old woman, Rosa Parks, **got** on a bus in Montgomery, Alabama, to go home from work. She **was** tired when she **sat** down. When some white people **got** on the crowded bus, the bus driver **ordered** Ms. Parks to stand up. Ms. Parks **refused** to leave her seat. The bus driver **called** the police, and they **came** and **arrested** Ms. Parks.

Martin Luther King Jr.,<sup>4</sup> a black minister living in Montgomery, Alabama, **wanted** to put an end to discrimination. When King **heard** about Ms. Parks's arrest, he **told** African-Americans in Montgomery to **boycott**<sup>5</sup> the bus company. People who **used to ride** the bus to work **decided** to walk instead. As a result of the boycott, the Supreme Court **outlawed**<sup>6</sup> discrimination on public transportation.

<sup>1</sup>African-Americans, whose ancestors came from Africa as slaves, are sometimes called "blacks." They used to be called "negroes" or "colored."

<sup>2</sup>Discrimination means giving some people unfair treatment, especially because of race, age, religion, etc.

<sup>3</sup>Segregation means separation of the races.

<sup>4</sup>When a father and son have the same name, the father uses *senior* (Sr.) after his name; the son puts *junior* (Jr.) after his name.

<sup>5</sup>To *boycott* is to refuse to do business with a company.

<sup>6</sup>To *outlaw* means to make an action illegal or against the law.



In 1964, about 100 years after the end of slavery, Congress passed a new law that officially gave equality to all Americans. This law made discrimination in employment and education illegal. King won the Nobel Peace Prize<sup>7</sup> for his work in creating a better world.

In 1968, a great tragedy occurred. Someone shot and killed King when he was only 39 years old.

In 1983, Martin Luther King's birthday (January 15) became a national holiday.

### African-American Firsts

- 1947 Jackie Robinson was the first African-American to play on a major-league baseball team.
- 1983 Guion Bluford was the first African-American to go into space.
- 1989 Oprah Winfrey became the first African-American to own her own television and film production company.
- 1997 Tiger Woods, whose father is African-American and whose mother is Thai, became both the first African-American and the first Asian-American to win the Masters golf tournament.
- 2001 Halle Berry became the first African-American woman to win an Oscar for best actress.
- 2001 General Colin Powell became the first African-American secretary of state.
- 2005 Condoleezza Rice became the first female African-American secretary of state.
- 2009 Barack Obama became the first African-American president.



Oprah Winfrey



Colin Powell and Condoleezza Rice

<sup>7</sup>The Nobel Peace Prize is one of six international prizes given once a year for great work in literature, science, economics, and world peace.



## 3.1 Habitual Past with *Used To*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Black children <b>used to</b> have separate schools. Many professions <b>used to</b> be for white people only. There <b>used to</b> be separate baseball teams for black people.	<i>Used to</i> + a base form shows a habit or custom over a past period of time. This custom no longer exists.
<b>Language Notes:</b> 1. <i>Used to</i> is for past habits or customs. It is not for an action that happened once or a few times. Many restaurants <b>used to</b> serve white people only. (This happened over a period of time.) Rosa Parks <b>used to</b> ride the bus to work. (This happened over a period of time.) In 1955, Rosa Parks <b>got</b> on the bus and <b>refused</b> to stand. (This happened one time.) The bus driver <b>called</b> the police. (This happened one time.) 2. For negatives, omit the <i>d</i> in <i>used to</i> . Some restaurants <b>didn't use</b> to serve African-Americans.	

**EXERCISE 1** **ABOUT YOU** Tell which of the following you used to do when you were a child.

**EXAMPLE** cry a lot  
I used to cry a lot.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. enjoy school              | 8. have a pet                 |
| 2. obey my parents           | 9. tell lies                  |
| 3. attend religious school   | 10. read mystery stories      |
| 4. play with dolls           | 11. live on a farm            |
| 5. play soccer               | 12. live with my grandparents |
| 6. fight with other children | 13. watch a lot of TV         |
| 7. draw pictures             | 14. read comic books          |

**EXERCISE 2** **ABOUT YOU** Name something. Practice *used to*.

**EXAMPLE** Name something you used to know when you were in elementary school.  
I used to know the names of all the presidents (but I don't know them anymore).

1. Name something you used to do when you were a child.
2. Tell what kind of stories you used to enjoy when you were a child.

3. Name something you used to believe when you were a child.
4. Name something you used to like to eat when you were a child.
5. Tell about some things your parents, grandparents, or teachers used to tell you when you were a child.
6. Tell about some things you used to do when you were younger.

**EXERCISE 3** **ABOUT YOU** Write sentences comparing the way you used to live with the way you live now. Share your sentences with a partner or with the entire class.

**EXAMPLES** I used to live with my whole family. Now I live alone.

I used to work in a restaurant. Now I'm a full-time student.

I didn't use to speak English at all. Now I speak English pretty well.

Ideas for sentences:

school job hobbies apartment/house family life friends

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 4** A young man is comparing how his life used to be five years ago and how his life is now. Complete his statements. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** I used to be lazy. Now I work hard.

1. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I save my money.
2. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I'm a serious student.
3. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I live alone.
4. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I almost never watch TV.
5. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I come home after work and study.
6. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I have short hair.
7. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I have a car and drive everywhere.
8. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I'm on a diet and I'm losing weight.



9. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I make my own decisions.
10. I used to \_\_\_\_\_. Now I use my credit card for most of my purchases.

## George Dawson—Life Is So Good

### Before You Read

1. Is it necessary to know how to read in order to have a good life?
2. Is it hard for old people to learn new things?



**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the simple past tense.**

George Dawson **lived** in three centuries—the end of the nineteenth, all through the twentieth, and the start of the twenty-first. He **was** born in 1898 in Texas, the grandson of slaves. He **was** the oldest of five children. His family **was** very poor, so George **had** to go to work to help his family. He **started** working full-time for his father when he **was** four years old. As a result, he **didn't** attend school. He **worked** at many jobs during his lifetime: he **chopped** wood, **swept** floors, **helped** build the railroad, and **cleaned** houses.



George Dawson (1898–2001)

For most of his adult life, he **ran** farm machinery at a dairy farm.<sup>8</sup>

In his lifetime, great technological changes **occurred**: cars, television, airplanes, spaceships, and computers **came** into being. He **saw** several wars and political changes in the U.S. He **outlived**<sup>9</sup> four wives and two of his seven children.

He **lived** at a time when African-Americans **had** fewer opportunities than they do today. And he **lived** in the South, where there **was** a lot of discrimination against African-Americans; African-Americans **were** segregated from others, and job possibilities **were** limited. By the end of his life, he **saw** others have the opportunities that he **didn't** have when he **was** young. He **witnessed** the success of many African-Americans.

Because he **didn't** know how to read or write, he **signed** his name with an X. Then, when he **was** 98 years old, Dawson **started** attending school. He **went** to adult literacy classes in Dallas County. The teacher **asked** him, "Do you know the alphabet?" He **answered**, "No." Over the next few years,

<sup>8</sup>On a dairy farm, cows are used to produce milk and milk products.

<sup>9</sup>To outlive means to live longer than others.



his teacher, Carl Henry, **taught** Dawson to read and write. Dawson said, “Every morning I get up and I wonder what I might learn that day.”

In 1998, an elementary school teacher, Richard Glaubman, **read** an article about Dawson in the newspaper. He **wanted** to meet Dawson. Together Glaubman and Dawson **wrote** a book about Dawson’s life, called *Life Is So Good*. In this book, Dawson tells about what makes a person happy. Dawson **had** a close family and never **felt** lonely. He **learned** from his father to see the good things in life. His father **told** him, “We **were** born to die. You **didn’t** come here to stay, and life is something to enjoy.” He **taught** his children to see the richness in life. Dawson says in the book, “We make our own way. Trouble is out there, but a person can leave it alone and just do the right thing. Then, if trouble still finds you, you’ve done the best you can. . . . People worry too much. Life is good, just the way it is.”

**Excerpt from Dawson’s book:**

“My first day of school **was** January 4, 1996. I **was** ninety-eight years old and I’m still going. . . . I’m up by five-thirty to make my lunch, pack my books, and go over my schoolwork. Books **was**<sup>10</sup> something missing from my life for so long. . . . I **learned** to read my ABC’s in two days—I **was** in a hurry. . . . Now I am a man that can read.”

## 3.2 Past Tense of *Be*

The past tense of *be* has two forms: *was* and *were*.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Life <b>was</b> hard for George Dawson. He <b>was</b> poor. His grandparents <b>were</b> slaves.	The past tense of the verb <i>be</i> has two forms: <i>was</i> and <i>were</i> . I, he, she, it → <i>was</i> we, you, they → <i>were</i>
There <b>was</b> discrimination in the South. There <b>were</b> many changes in the twentieth century.	After <i>there</i> , use <i>was</i> or <i>were</i> depending on the noun that follows. Use <i>was</i> with a singular noun. Use <i>were</i> with a plural noun.
Dawson’s life <b>wasn’t</b> easy. Education and books <b>weren’t</b> available to Dawson as a child.	To make a negative statement, put <i>not</i> after <i>was</i> or <i>were</i> . The contraction for <i>was not</i> is <i>wasn’t</i> . The contraction for <i>were not</i> is <i>weren’t</i> .
Dawson <b>was born</b> in 1898.	Use a form of <i>be</i> with <i>born</i> .
Dawson <b>was</b> married four times. He <b>was</b> never bored.	Use <i>be</i> with adjectives that end in <i>-ed</i> : <i>crowded</i> , <i>tired</i> , <i>bored</i> , <i>interested</i> , <i>worried</i> , <i>married</i> , <i>divorced</i> , <i>allowed</i> , and <i>permitted</i> .

<sup>10</sup>These are Dawson’s exact words. However, this sentence is not grammatically correct. The correct way is: Books *were* . . .

(continued)



## Compare affirmative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	Was/Were	Subject	Was/Were	Complement	Short Answer
		Dawson	was	poor.	
	Was	he		a slave?	No, he wasn't.
Where	was	he		from?	

## Compare negative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	Wasn't/Weren't	Subject	Wasn't/Weren't	Complement
		Dawson	wasn't	in school.
Why	wasn't	he		in school?
		There	weren't	many opportunities.
Why	weren't	there		many opportunities?

### EXERCISE 5 Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word. Some answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** George Dawson was poor.

- Dawson was \_\_\_\_\_ in 1898.
- At that time, there \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of discrimination.
- His parents \_\_\_\_\_ poor.
- Life for most African-Americans in the South was \_\_\_\_\_.
- Job possibilities for African-Americans \_\_\_\_\_ limited.
- When he was \_\_\_\_\_, he learned how to read.
- Dawson's father used to tell him, "We \_\_\_\_\_ born to die."
- He was poor, but he wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 6** Fill in the blanks with the correct word(s).

**EXAMPLE** Martin Luther King Jr. was a great American.

1. Martin Luther King Jr. \_\_\_\_\_ born in Georgia.
2. He (not) \_\_\_\_\_ born in Alabama.
3. He and his father \_\_\_\_\_ ministers.
4. There \_\_\_\_\_ discrimination on public transportation.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ discrimination in employment? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Rosa Parks was a citizen of Montgomery, Alabama. \_\_\_\_\_ an African-American? Yes, she was.
7. She was tired and took a seat on the bus. Why \_\_\_\_\_ tired?
8. African-Americans weren't allowed to sit down on a crowded bus in Montgomery. Why \_\_\_\_\_ allowed to sit down?
9. George Dawson wasn't able to write his name. Why \_\_\_\_\_ able to write his name?
10. George Dawson (not) \_\_\_\_\_ lonely.
11. How old \_\_\_\_\_ when he learned to read? He was 98 years old.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ slavery when Dawson was born? No, there wasn't.

### 3.3 The Simple Past Tense of Regular Verbs

To form the simple past tense of regular verbs, add *-ed* to the base form.<sup>11</sup>

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION	
Dawson <b>signed</b> his name with an X. Dawson <b>learned</b> a lot from his father. African-Americans <b>suffered</b> discrimination. Dawson <b>lived</b> to be 103 years old.	<b>Base Form</b> sign learn suffer live	<b>Past Form</b> signed learned suffered lived
Dawson <b>learned</b> to read and write. A teacher <b>wanted</b> to meet Dawson.	If the verb ends in an <i>e</i> , add only <i>-d</i> . The past forms are the same for all persons.  The verb after <i>to</i> does not use the past form.	

<sup>11</sup>For a review of the spelling and pronunciation of the *-ed* past form, see Appendix A.



**EXERCISE 7** Fill in the blanks with the past tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

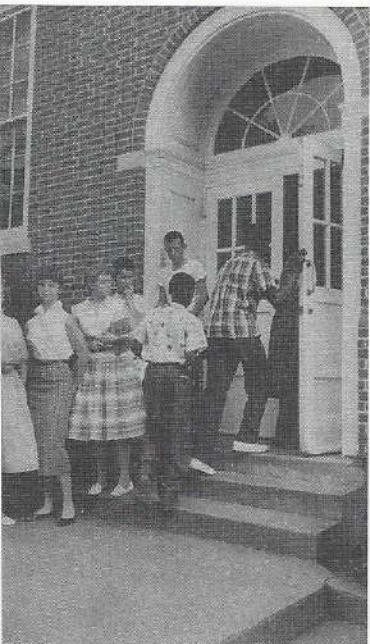
**EXAMPLE** Dawson learned to read when he was 98.  
(learn)

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ for many, many years.  
(live)
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his name with an X.  
(sign)
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ all his wives.  
(outlive)
4. Many changes \_\_\_\_\_ during his long life.  
(occur)
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ school when he was 98.  
(attend)
6. His teacher \_\_\_\_\_, "Do you know the alphabet?"  
(ask)
7. Dawson \_\_\_\_\_ from his father to enjoy life.  
(learn)
8. Richard Glaubman \_\_\_\_\_ to meet Dawson.  
(want)

**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks with the simple past tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** King lived in the South.  
(live)

1. Slavery \_\_\_\_\_ in 1865, but discrimination \_\_\_\_\_.  
(end) (continue)
2. King \_\_\_\_\_ equality for all people.  
(want)
3. King \_\_\_\_\_ as a minister.  
(work)
4. In many places, the law \_\_\_\_\_ whites from blacks.  
(separate)
5. Black children \_\_\_\_\_ separate schools.  
(attend)
6. A bus driver \_\_\_\_\_ Rosa Parks to stand up, but she \_\_\_\_\_.  
(order) (refuse)
7. The bus driver \_\_\_\_\_ the police.  
(call)
8. The police \_\_\_\_\_ Ms. Parks.  
(arrest)
9. King \_\_\_\_\_ a peaceful protest.  
(organize)
10. In 1964, Congress \_\_\_\_\_ the law.  
(change)
11. In 1968, a great tragedy \_\_\_\_\_. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ King.  
(occur) (kill)



Black students entering a school in Clinton, Tennessee, in 1956

## 3.4 The Simple Past of Irregular Verbs<sup>12</sup>

Many past tense verbs are irregular. They do not have an *-ed* ending.

Verbs With No Change				Final <i>d</i> Changes to <i>t</i>	
beat	fit	put	spit	bend—bent	send—sent
bet	hit	quit	split	build—built	spend—spent
cost	hurt	set	spread	lend—lent	
cut	let	shut			

Verbs with Vowel Changes			
feel—felt	mean—meant <sup>13</sup>	dig—dug	sting—stung
keep—kept	sleep—slept	hang—hung	strike—struck
leave—left	sweep—swept	spin—spun	swing—swung
lose—lost	weep—wept	stick—stuck	win—won
awake—awoke	speak—spoke	begin—began	sing—sang
break—broke	steal—stole	drink—drank	sink—sank
choose—chose	wake—woke	ring—rang	spring—sprang
freeze—froze		shrink—shrank	swim—swam
bring—brought	fight—fought	blow—blew	grow—grew
buy—bought	teach—taught	draw—drew	know—knew
catch—caught	think—thought	fly—flew	throw—threw
arise—arose	rise—rose	bleed—bled	meet—met
drive—drove	shine—shone	feed—fed	read—read <sup>14</sup>
ride—rode	write—wrote	flee—fled	speed—sped
		lead—led	
sell—sold	tell—told	find—found	wind—wound
mistake—mistook	take—took	lay—laid	say—said <sup>15</sup>
shake—shook		pay—paid	
swear—swore	wear—wore	bite—bit	light—lit
tear—tore		hide—hid	slide—slid
become—became	forgive—forgave	fall—fell	run—ran
come—came	give—gave	hold—held	sit—sat
eat—ate	lie—lay		see—saw
forget—forgot	shoot—shot	stand—stood	
get—got		understand—understood	

Miscellaneous Changes		
be—was/were	go—went	hear—heard
do—did	have—had	make—made

<sup>12</sup>For an alphabetical list of irregular verbs, see Appendix M.

<sup>13</sup>There is a change in the vowel sound. *Meant* rhymes with *sent*.

<sup>14</sup>The past form of *read* is pronounced like the color *red*.

<sup>15</sup>*Said* rhymes with *bed*.



**EXERCISE 9** Fill in the blanks with the past tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** Dawson had a hard life.  
(have)

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ to work for his father when he was four years old.  
(begin)
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ many changes in his lifetime.  
(see)
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ interested in reading when he was 98.  
(become)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ to the adult literacy program in Dallas County.  
(go)
5. His teacher \_\_\_\_\_ him the alphabet.  
(teach)
6. Dawson \_\_\_\_\_, "I wonder what I might learn today."  
(say)
7. Dawson \_\_\_\_\_ a book.  
(write)

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks with the past tense of the verb in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** King fought for the rights of all people.  
(fight)

1. King \_\_\_\_\_ born in 1929.  
(be)
2. King \_\_\_\_\_ a minister.  
(become)
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ married in 1953.  
(get)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ a job in a church in Montgomery, Alabama.  
(find)
5. Rosa Parks was tired and \_\_\_\_\_ down on the bus.  
(sit)
6. Some white people \_\_\_\_\_ on the bus.  
(get)
7. The bus driver \_\_\_\_\_ Parks to stand up.  
(tell)
8. Police \_\_\_\_\_ and arrested Parks.  
(come)
9. King \_\_\_\_\_ about her arrest.  
(hear)
10. In 1963, he \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful speech in Washington, D.C.  
(give)
11. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ to see King in Washington in 1963.  
(go)
12. King \_\_\_\_\_ an important prize for his work.  
(win)
13. A man \_\_\_\_\_ King in 1968.  
(shoot)

# Barack Obama and *Dreams from My Father*

Before

You Read

1. Where were you at the time of the 2008 election of Barack Obama?
2. Are there or were there any unusual leaders in your native country?



CD 1, TR 27

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the negative form of past-tense verbs.**

On January 20, 2009, Barack Obama became the first African-American president.

He was born in Hawaii in 1961, the son of a Kenyan father and an American mother. But Barack **didn't know** his father as he was growing up. When he was two years old, his parents separated and his father went back to Africa.

Obama saw his father one more time in his life, when his father visited Hawaii. His father died in a car accident in 1982 when Barack was 21 years old. In 1995, he wrote about his life in *Dreams from My Father*. He realized that he **didn't belong** completely to a white world and he **didn't belong** completely to a black world. When he was young, he **didn't have** a clear racial identity.

His mother married again, this time to an Indonesian man, and for a while Barack lived with her in Indonesia. But he returned to Hawaii when he was ten to live with his grandparents. His mother returned too, but she **didn't stay** for long. She went back to Indonesia, where she stayed for the rest of her life. For many years he **didn't live** with his mother. She died in 1995.

Barack Obama adored his grandmother but, sadly, she **didn't live** to see him become president. She died one day before the election.



Barack Obama with his mother



## 3.5 Negative Statements

Compare affirmative and negative statements with past tense verbs.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Obama <b>lived</b> with his mother's parents. He <b>didn't live</b> with his father's parents.	For the negative past tense, we use <i>didn't</i> + base form for ALL verbs (except <i>be</i> ), regular and irregular. <b>Compare:</b> lived—didn't live grew—didn't grow knew—didn't know
Obama <b>grew</b> up in Hawaii. He <b>didn't grow</b> up in Africa.	
Obama <b>knew</b> his mother. He <b>didn't know</b> his father well.	

**EXERCISE 11** Fill in the blanks with the negative form of the underlined word.

**EXAMPLE** Obama spent many years in Hawaii. He didn't spend many years in Kenya.

1. Obama wrote about his life. He \_\_\_\_\_ a novel.
2. He was born in Hawaii. He \_\_\_\_\_ born in Illinois.
3. He lived in the U.S. He \_\_\_\_\_ in Kenya.
4. He knew his mother. He \_\_\_\_\_ his father very well.
5. His mother went to Indonesia. His grandparents \_\_\_\_\_ to Indonesia.
6. He saw his grandparents a lot. He \_\_\_\_\_ his father a lot.
7. He grew up with his grandparents. He \_\_\_\_\_ up with his father.
8. He studied law. He \_\_\_\_\_ engineering.
9. He became a senator of Illinois. He \_\_\_\_\_ a senator of Hawaii.
10. His grandmother died before the election. She \_\_\_\_\_ after the election.

# Questions and Answers about Barack Obama

## Before You Read

1. What facts do you know about Barack Obama?
2. What facts do you know about the president/prime minister of your native country?



CD 1, TR 28

**Read the following questions and answers about Barack Obama. Pay special attention to past tense questions and answers.**

**Q:** What did Obama do before he became president?

**A:** He was a senator from Illinois.

**Q:** When did he get married?

**A:** He got married in 1989.

**Q:** Who did he marry?

**A:** He married Michelle Robinson.

**Q:** Where did he meet her?

**A:** He met her at a law office.

**Q:** Did he work there?

**A:** Yes. They both worked there.

**Q:** Did he ever teach?

**A:** Yes. He taught law at the University of Chicago.

**Q:** Did he live in Chicago?

**A:** Yes, he did. He also lived in Springfield, the capital of Illinois, when he was a senator from Illinois.

**Q:** Did he win every election?

**A:** No, he didn't. In 2000, he wanted to be a U.S. Representative from Illinois, but he didn't win.





## 3.6 Questions with the Simple Past Tense

Compare affirmative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	Did	Subject	Verb	Complement	Short Answer
		Obama	lived	with his grandparents.	
Where	Did	he	live	in New York?	No, he didn't.
	did	he	live?		In Hawaii.
When	Did	Obama	went	to Africa.	Yes, he did.
	did	he	go	to Kenya?	In 1988.

**Language Note:** The base form is used in questions after *did*.

Compare negative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	Didn't	Subject	Didn't	Base Form	Complement
Why	didn't	Obama	didn't	live	with his father.
		Obama		live	with his father?
Why	didn't	His father	didn't	stay	in the U.S.
		he		stay	in the U.S.?

**EXERCISE 12** Read each statement. Write a *yes/no* question with the words in parentheses ( ). Give a short answer.

**EXAMPLE** Obama lived in Hawaii. (with his grandparents) (yes)  
Did he live with his grandparents? Yes, he did.

- His grandmother died before he became president. (his mother) (yes)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- His father went to Kenya. (his mother) (no)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Michelle Robinson became his wife. (his law partner) (no)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- He met his wife in a law office. (in Hawaii) (no)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- He lived in Hawaii. (in Indonesia) (yes)  
 \_\_\_\_\_

6. He lost the election for representative of Illinois. (senator of Illinois) (no)

\_\_\_\_\_

7. He taught at the University of Chicago. (law) (yes)

\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 13** Read each statement. Write a *wh-* question about the words in parentheses ( ). Then answer the question.

**EXAMPLE** Obama went to high school. (where) (in Hawaii)

*Where did he go to high school?*

*He went to high school in Hawaii.*

1. His mother met his father. (where) (in college)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. His mother went to Indonesia. (why) (to be with her husband)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Obama returned to Hawaii. (when) (in 1971)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. He studied law. (where) (at Harvard University)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. He wrote a book. (what kind of book) (about his life)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Obama became president. (when) (in 2009)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. Obama's grandmother died. (when) (in November 2008)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Obama didn't work in Hawaii. (why) (because he lived in Illinois)

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



**EXERCISE 14**

A student is interviewing her teacher about Martin Luther King Jr. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb and any other necessary words.



CD 1, TR 29

**S:** Do you remember Martin Luther King Jr.?

**T:** Of course I do. I saw him on TV many times when  
(example: see)

I \_\_\_\_\_ young.  
(1 be)

**S:** \_\_\_\_\_ him on TV when he was in Washington, D.C.?  
(2 see)

**T:** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_. I remember his famous speech in Washington in 1963.  
(3)

**S:** What \_\_\_\_\_ about?  
(4 speak)

**T:** He \_\_\_\_\_ about equality for everyone.  
(5 speak)

**S:** \_\_\_\_\_ to Washington?  
(6 a lot of people/go)

**T:** Oh, yes. 250,000 people \_\_\_\_\_ to Washington.  
(7 go)

**S:** Do you remember when he died?

**T:** I was in high school when he \_\_\_\_\_. The principal  
(8 die)

\_\_\_\_\_ to our class and \_\_\_\_\_ us the news.  
(9 come) (10 tell)

**S:** What \_\_\_\_\_ when you heard the news?  
(11 do)

**T:** At first we \_\_\_\_\_ it. Then we all started to  
(12 not/believe)

\_\_\_\_\_. We \_\_\_\_\_ home from  
(13 cry) (14 go)

school and \_\_\_\_\_ the news on TV.  
(15 watch)

**S:** Where \_\_\_\_\_ he when he died?  
(16 be)

**T:** He \_\_\_\_\_ on the balcony of a hotel in Memphis when a man  
(17 be)

\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ him. It was terrible. But we should remember  
(18 come) (19 shoot)

King for his life, not his death. We celebrate Martin Luther King Jr.'s birthday.

**S:** Really? I \_\_\_\_\_ that. When is it?  
(20 not/know)

**T:** He \_\_\_\_\_ born on January 15. The third Monday in January  
(21 be)

\_\_\_\_\_ a national holiday.  
(22 become)

**S:** \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday right after he died?  
(23 this date/become)

**T:** No. It \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday in 1983.  
(24 become)

**S:** How do you remember so much about King?

**T:** I \_\_\_\_\_ a paper on him when I was in college.  
(25 write)

**EXERCISE 15**

**ABOUT YOU** Check (✓) the things you did this past week. Exchange books with another student. Ask the other student about the items he or she checked.

**EXAMPLE** ✓ I made a long-distance phone call.

**A:** I made a long-distance phone call.

**B:** Who(m) did you call?

**A:** I called my father in Mexico.

**B:** How long did you talk?

**A:** We talked for about 15 minutes.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. ___ I made a long-distance phone call. | 7. ___ I went to the bank.                                |
| 2. ___ I shopped for groceries.           | 8. ___ I read something interesting (a book, an article). |
| 3. ___ I met someone new.                 | 9. ___ I went to the post office.                         |
| 4. ___ I got together with a friend.      | 10. ___ I did exercises.                                  |
| 5. ___ I wrote a letter.                  | 11. ___ I received a letter.                              |
| 6. ___ I bought some new clothes.         | 12. ___ I went to an interesting place.                   |

## Summary of Lesson 3

### 1. Simple Past Tense

*Be*

Dawson **was** happy.

He **wasn't** rich.

Was he from a large family? Yes, he **was**.

Where **was** he born?

Why **wasn't** he in school?

*Regular Verb*

Dawson **lived** for 103 years.

He **didn't** live during the time of slavery.

**Did** he live in the North? No, he **didn't**.

Where **did** he live?

Why **didn't** he live in the North?



### Irregular Verb

Dawson felt happy.

He **didn't** feel lonely.

Did he feel good when he learned to read? Yes, he **did**.

How **did** he feel about his life?

Why **didn't** he feel lonely?

### 2. Habitual Past with *Used To*

Obama **used to** live in Hawaii.

Black children and white children **used to** go to separate schools. Now schools are for all children.

## Editing Advice

### 1. Use *was/were* with *born*.

*was*

He <sup>^</sup>born in Germany.

### 2. Don't use *was/were* with *die*.

He ~~was~~ died two years ago.

### 3. Don't use a past form after *to*.

*leave*

I decided to ~~left~~ early.

I wanted to go home and ~~watched~~ TV.

### 4. Don't use *was* or *were* to form a simple past tense.

*went*

He ~~was~~ ~~go~~ home yesterday.

### 5. Use *there* when a new subject is introduced.

*There w*

~~Was~~ a big earthquake in 1906.

### 6. Use a form of *be* before an adjective. Remember, some *-ed* words are adjectives.

*were*

They <sup>^</sup>excited about their trip to America.

### 7. Don't use *did* with an adjective. Use *was/were*.

*were*

Why ~~did~~ you afraid?

8. Use the correct word order in a question.

*didn't you*  
Why ~~you didn't~~ return?

9. Use *did* + the base form in a question.

*did buy*  
What kind of car you ~~bought~~?

10. Use the base form after *didn't*.

He ~~didn't worked~~ yesterday.

11. Don't forget the *d* in *used to*.

*d*  
She ~~use~~ to live in Miami.

12. Don't add the verb *be* before *used to* for habitual past.

I ~~am~~ used to play soccer in my country.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

*come*

*C*

A: I ~~didn't came~~ to class last week. I ~~missed~~ two days. What ~~we studied~~?  
(example) (example) (1)

B: Why ~~you didn't come~~ to class?  
(2)

A: I had to ~~worked~~ overtime, so I ~~tired~~.  
(3) (4)

B: We ~~had~~ a great lesson. We ~~learn~~ about racial progress in the U.S.  
(5) (6)

We ~~talked~~ about Martin Luther King Jr., George Dawson, and Barack  
(7)

Obama.

A: Who ~~was~~ George Dawson?  
(8)

B: He ~~was~~ an amazing man. He ~~born~~ at the end of the 1800s.  
(9) (10)

He ~~didn't learned~~ to read when he was young. He ~~started~~ to learn  
(11) (12)

when he was 98 years old.

(continued)



- A:** Wow! Is he still alive?
- B:** No, he was died in 2001. And we also learned about Martin Luther King's life.
- A:** I use to read about him in my country, India. King was studied the ideas of our leader, Gandhi. When I was in my country, I'm used to study a lot of history.
- B:** And was a story about Barack Obama in our book too.
- A:** I know. I read it at home. It made me sad.
- B:** Why did you sad?
- A:** Because his grandmother didn't lived to see him become president.
- B:** Yeah, that part was sad.
- A:** Was any homework?
- B:** Yes, there was. We had to wrote a composition about a famous person.
- A:** Thanks for filling me in.

## Lesson 3 Test/Review

**PART 1** Write the past form of the following verbs.

**EXAMPLE** draw drew

- |                 |                 |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. eat _____    | 8. take _____   | 15. sit _____  |
| 2. put _____    | 9. bring _____  | 16. go _____   |
| 3. give _____   | 10. talk _____  | 17. make _____ |
| 4. write _____  | 11. know _____  | 18. hear _____ |
| 5. send _____   | 12. find _____  | 19. feel _____ |
| 6. listen _____ | 13. stand _____ | 20. fall _____ |
| 7. read _____   | 14. leave _____ | 21. get _____  |

**PART 2** Write the negative form of the underlined word.

**EXAMPLE** Rosa Parks lived in Alabama. She didn't live in Washington.

1. She was tired when she got out of work. She \_\_\_\_\_  
sick.
2. She went to work by bus. She \_\_\_\_\_ to work by car.
3. The bus driver told African-Americans to stand. He  
\_\_\_\_\_ white Americans to stand.
4. Some African-Americans stood up. Rosa Parks  
\_\_\_\_\_ up.
5. The police came to the bus. They  
\_\_\_\_\_ to her house.
6. They took her to jail. They \_\_\_\_\_ her  
to her house.
7. Many people had the opportunity for education. George Dawson  
\_\_\_\_\_ the opportunity for education.
8. George Dawson wrote a book. He \_\_\_\_\_  
it alone.
9. Barack Obama spent a lot of time with his grandparents. He  
\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time with his father.

**PART 3** Write a question beginning with the words given. An answer is not necessary.

**EXAMPLE** Martin Luther King Jr. lived in the South.

Where did he live?

1. King became a minister.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
2. King was born in Georgia.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
3. Black children went to separate schools.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
4. Some restaurants didn't permit black people to eat there.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_



5. King was in jail many times because of his protests.  
How many times \_\_\_\_\_
6. King won the Nobel Peace Prize.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
7. Rosa Parks worked in Montgomery.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_
8. She was tired.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
9. She went home by bus.  
How many times \_\_\_\_\_
10. She didn't want to obey the law.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
11. The police took her to jail.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
12. Dawson learned to read.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
13. Dawson didn't feel lonely.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
14. Obama didn't know his father very well.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
15. Obama won the election.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
16. Obama's father wasn't born in the U.S.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_
17. Obama wrote a book.  
What \_\_\_\_\_ about?

**PART 4** Write two sentences with *used to* comparing your life ten years ago with your life today.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_

5. King was in jail many times because of his protests.  
How many times \_\_\_\_\_
6. King won the Nobel Peace Prize.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
7. Rosa Parks worked in Montgomery.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_
8. She was tired.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
9. She went home by bus.  
How many times \_\_\_\_\_
10. She didn't want to obey the law.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
11. The police took her to jail.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
12. Dawson learned to read.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
13. Dawson didn't feel lonely.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
14. Obama didn't know his father very well.  
Why \_\_\_\_\_
15. Obama won the election.  
When \_\_\_\_\_
16. Obama's father wasn't born in the U.S.  
Where \_\_\_\_\_
17. Obama wrote a book.  
What \_\_\_\_\_ about?

**PART 4** Write two sentences with *used to* comparing your life ten years ago with your life today.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_



# Expansion

## Classroom

### Activities

① Check (✓) the sentences that are true for you. Find a partner and exchange books. Give each other more information about the things you checked. Ask each other questions about these activities.

- a. \_\_\_ I bought a CD in the past week.
- b. \_\_\_ I worked last Saturday.
- c. \_\_\_ I rode a bike this past week.
- d. \_\_\_ I went to a party last weekend.
- e. \_\_\_ I got a driver's license in the past year.
- f. \_\_\_ I took a trip in the past year.
- g. \_\_\_ I got married in the last two years.
- h. \_\_\_ I found a job this month.
- i. \_\_\_ I spent more than \$50 today.
- j. \_\_\_ I received some money this week.
- k. \_\_\_ I ate pizza in the past month.
- l. \_\_\_ I bought a car in the past year.
- m. \_\_\_ I came to the U.S. alone.

② Who did it?

**Teacher:** Pass out an index card to each student.

**Students:** Write something you did last weekend. It can be something unusual or something ordinary. (Examples: I went fishing. I baked a pie. I did my laundry.)

**Teacher:** Collect the cards. Pull out one card at a time and read the sentence to the class. The students have to guess who wrote the card.

**3 Who used to do it?**

**Teacher:** Pass out an index card to each student.

**Students:** Think of some things you used to be, wear, do, etc. when you were younger. Think of things that other students would not guess about you. Write two or three of these things on the card.

**Teacher:** Collect the cards. Pull out one card at a time and read the sentences to the class. The students have to guess who wrote the card.

**EXAMPLES** I used to hate studying a foreign language.  
I used to have very long hair.  
I used to be a terrible student.

**4 Bring in a picture of yourself when you were younger. Describe how you were at that time and compare yourself to how you are now.**

**EXAMPLE** I used to play soccer all day with my friends. Now I don't have time for it.

**5 Fill in the blank. Discuss your answers in a small group or with the entire class.**

Before I came to the U.S., I used to believe that \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_, but now I know it's not true.

**6 With a partner, write a few questions to ask George Dawson.**

**EXAMPLES** Why didn't you go to school?  
What kinds of jobs did you have?  
What was the first book you read?

## Talk

### About It

In a small group or with the entire class, discuss the following:

**1 Changes in daily life:** Compare how life used to be when you were younger with how it is now.

**2 Fashion:** Talk about different styles or fashions in the past.

**EXAMPLE** In the 1960s, men used to wear their hair long.



## Write

### About It

Choose one of the following topics to write a short composition.

- 1 Write a paragraph or paragraphs telling about changes in your native country. Compare how life used to be with how it is now.
- 2 Write about an ordinary person who did something extraordinary (like George Dawson). It can be someone you read about or someone you know.
- 3 Write a paragraph or paragraphs telling about your childhood.

#### My Childhood

When I was a child, I lived in a big house with my parents, grandparents, sisters, brothers, aunts, and uncles. My parents went to work and my grandparents took care of me. I always had a good time with them. My grandmother used to tell me a lot of stories. My grandfather used to take me fishing...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.

## Lesson

# 4

### Grammar

Possessive Forms

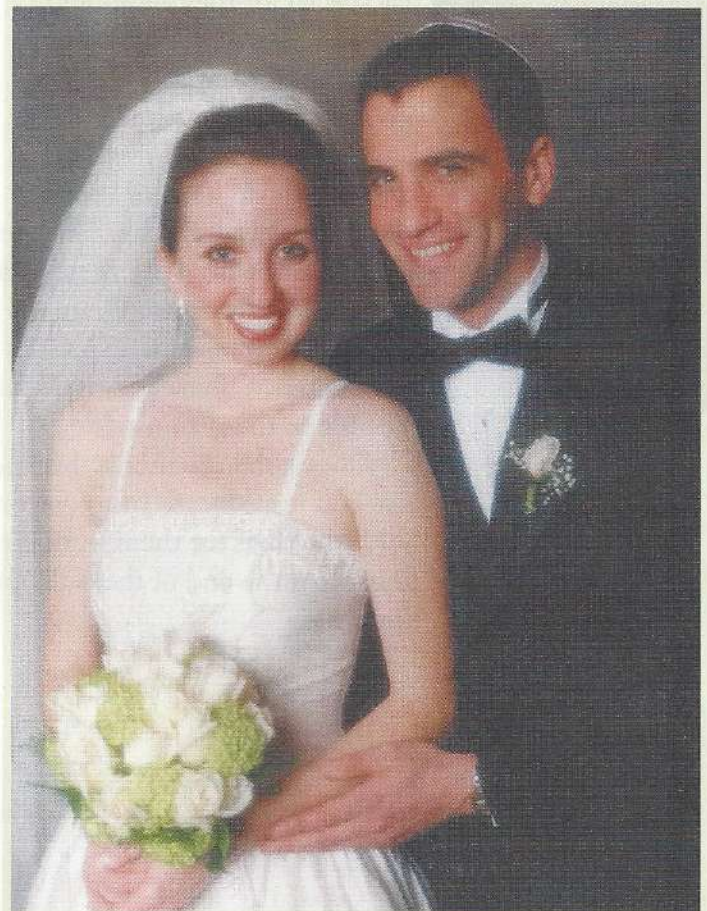
Object Pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns

Questions

### Context

Weddings





# A Traditional American Wedding

## Before You Read

1. What kind of clothes do a bride and groom wear in your native culture?
2. At what age do people usually get married in your native culture?



CD 2, TR 01

Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to object pronouns and possessive forms.

### Did You Know?

- Most American weddings (80%) take place in a church or synagogue.
- The average number of guests is 175.
- Hawaii is the favorite honeymoon destination.
- August is the most popular month for weddings.
- Money is the most desired wedding gift.
- About 43 percent of marriages end in separation or divorce within 15 years.

Many young couples consider **their** wedding to be one of the most important days of **their** life. They save for it and often spend a year planning for it: finding a place, selecting a menu and cake, buying a wedding dress, ordering invitations and sending **them** to friends and relatives, selecting musicians, and much more. The bride chooses **her** maid of honor and bridesmaids, and the groom chooses **his** best man<sup>1</sup> and groomsmen. The bride and groom want to make this day special for themselves and for **their** guests.

When the day arrives, the groom doesn't usually see the bride before the wedding. It is considered bad luck for **him** to see **her** ahead of time. The guests wait with excitement to see **her** too. When the wedding begins, the groom and groomsmen enter first. Then the bridesmaids enter. When the bride finally enters in **her** white dress, everyone turns around to look at **her**. Sometimes guests stand up when the bride enters. Often the **bride's** father or both of **her** parents walk **her** down the aisle to the groom's side.

During the ceremony, the bride and groom take vows.<sup>2</sup> They promise to love and respect each other for the rest of their lives. The groom's best man holds the rings for **them** until they are ready to place **them** on each **other's** fingers. At the end of the ceremony, the groom lifts the **bride's** veil and kisses **her**.



<sup>1</sup>The best man is the man who stands beside the groom and helps him.

<sup>2</sup>A vow is a promise.



There is a party after the ceremony. People make toasts,<sup>3</sup> eat dinner, and dance. The bride and groom usually dance the first dance alone. Then guests join **them**.

Before the bride and groom leave the party, the bride throws **her** bouquet over **her** head, and the single women try to catch **it**. It is believed that the woman who catches **it** will be the next one to get married.

The newlyweds<sup>4</sup> usually take a trip, called a honeymoon, immediately after the wedding.

## 4.1 Possessive Forms of Nouns

We use possessive forms to show ownership or relationship.

NOUN	ENDING	EXAMPLES
Singular noun: bride groom	Add apostrophe + s.	The <b>bride's</b> dress is white. The <b>groom's</b> tuxedo is black.
Plural noun ending in -s: parents guests	Add apostrophe only.	She got married in her <b>parents'</b> house. The <b>guests'</b> coats are in the coat room.
Irregular plural noun: men women	Add apostrophe + s.	The <b>men's</b> suits are black. The <b>women's</b> dresses are beautiful.
Names that end in -s: Charles	Add apostrophe + s.	Do you know <b>Charles's</b> wife? <b>Note:</b> Sometimes you will see only an apostrophe when a name ends in s. Do you know <b>Charles'</b> wife?
Inanimate objects: the church the dress	Use "the _____ of the _____." Do not use apostrophe + s.	St. Peter's is <b>the name of the church</b> . <b>The front of the dress</b> has pearls.

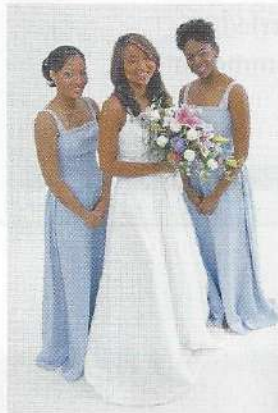
<sup>3</sup>A toast is a wish for good luck, usually while holding a glass.

<sup>4</sup>For a short time after they are married, the bride and groom are called *newlyweds*.



**EXERCISE 1** Fill in the blanks to make the possessive form of the noun.

**EXAMPLE** The bride's grandfather looks very handsome.



1. The groom \_\_\_\_\_ mother is very nice.
2. The bride \_\_\_\_\_ flowers are beautiful.
3. The bridesmaids \_\_\_\_\_ dresses are blue.
4. They invited many guests to the wedding. They didn't invite the guests \_\_\_\_\_ children.
5. The women \_\_\_\_\_ dresses are very elegant.
6. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ sister is a bridesmaid.
7. The newlyweds \_\_\_\_\_ picture is in the newspaper.
8. Do you know the children \_\_\_\_\_ names?

**EXERCISE 2** Fill in the blanks with the two nouns in parentheses ( ). Put them in the correct order. Use the possessive form of one of the nouns, except with nonliving things.

**EXAMPLES** The \_\_\_\_\_ *bride's name* \_\_\_\_\_ is Lisa.  
(name/the bride)

The \_\_\_\_\_ *door of the church* \_\_\_\_\_ is open.  
(door/church)

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ came to the wedding from London.  
(bride/grandmother)
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ has a red carpet.  
(church/floor)
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ are very beautiful.  
(windows/church)
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ is crying.  
(bride/mother)
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ is Saint Paul's.  
(church/name)
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ are black.  
(men/tuxedos)
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ is white.  
(limousine/color)
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ are pretty.  
(dresses/girls)
9. Who chose the \_\_\_\_\_?  
(flowers/color)
10. Some people get married in their \_\_\_\_\_.  
(house/parents)

## 4.2 Possessive Adjectives

Possessive adjectives show ownership or relationship.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>My</b> brother is getting married.  <b>Your</b> gift is wonderful.            The groom chooses <b>his</b> best man.            The bride chooses <b>her</b> bridesmaids.            The restaurant has <b>its</b> own reception hall.  <b>Our</b> cousins came from out of town.            The wedding is the most important day of <b>their</b> lives.</p>	<p><b>Subject Pronouns</b>      <b>Possessive Adjectives</b></p> <p>I                              my            you                         your            he                             his            she                           her            it                              its            we                            our            they                         their</p>
<p><b>My sister</b> loves <b>her</b> husband.  <b>My uncle</b> lives with <b>his</b> daughter.</p>	<p>Be careful not to confuse <i>his</i> and <i>her</i>.  <i>Wrong: My sister loves his husband.</i>  <i>Wrong: My uncle lives with her daughter.</i></p>
<p>The <b>bride's mother's</b> dress is blue.</p>	<p>We can use two possessive nouns together.</p>
<p><b>My brother's</b> wife did not attend the wedding.</p>	<p>We can use a possessive adjective (<i>my</i>) before a possessive noun (<i>brother's</i>).</p>

### EXERCISE 3 Fill in the blanks with a possessive adjective.

EXAMPLE I love my parents.

- I have one sister. \_\_\_\_\_ sister got married five years ago.
- She loves \_\_\_\_\_ husband very much.
- He's an accountant. He has \_\_\_\_\_ own business.
- They have one child. \_\_\_\_\_ son's name is Jason.
- They bought a house last year. \_\_\_\_\_ house isn't far from my house.
- My sister and I visit \_\_\_\_\_ parents once a month. They live two hours away from us.
- My sister said, "My car isn't working this week. Let's visit them in \_\_\_\_\_ car."



**EXERCISE 4** Fill in the blanks with a possessive adjective.



**A:** What are you going to wear to your sister's wedding?  
(example)

**B:** I'm going to wear \_\_\_\_\_ new blue dress.  
(1)

**A:** Did your sister buy a new dress for her wedding?

**B:** No. She's going to borrow \_\_\_\_\_ best friend's dress.  
(2)

**A:** Will the wedding be at your home?

**B:** Oh, no. We live in an apartment. \_\_\_\_\_ apartment is too small. We're going to invite more than 200 guests. The wedding is going to be at a church. Afterwards, we're going to have a dinner in a restaurant. The restaurant has \_\_\_\_\_ own reception hall.  
(3)

**A:** Are the newlyweds going on a honeymoon after the wedding?

**B:** Yes. They have friends who have a cottage. They're going to stay at \_\_\_\_\_ friends' cottage in the country for a week.  
(5)

**A:** Is the groom's mother a nice woman?

**B:** I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ mother. I'll meet her at the wedding for the first time.  
(6)

## 4.3 Possessive Pronouns

We can use possessive pronouns (*mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs*) to show ownership or relationship.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE	POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Her dress</b> is white.  <b>Their wedding</b> was big.                      We had <b>our wedding</b> in a church.</p>	<p><b>Mine</b> is blue.  <b>Ours</b> was small.                      They had <b>theirs</b> in a garden.</p>	<p>When we omit the noun, we use a possessive pronoun.  <i>mine</i> = my dress  <i>ours</i> = our wedding  <i>theirs</i> = their wedding</p>
<p><b>The groom's parents</b> look happy.</p>	<p><b>The bride's</b> do too.</p>	<p>After the possessive form of a noun, we can omit the noun.  <i>The bride's</i> = the bride's parents</p>

Compare the three forms below.

SUBJECT PRONOUN	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE	POSSESSIVE PRONOUN
I	my	mine
you	your	yours
he	his	his
she	her	hers
it	its	—
we	our	ours
they	their	theirs

**EXERCISE 5** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate possessive adjective or pronoun.



**A:** I heard your brother got married last month. How was the wedding? Was it anything like your wedding? I remember yours very well.   
 (example)

**B:** My brother's wedding was very different from \_\_\_\_\_. His was a very formal wedding in a church last month. \_\_\_\_\_ was very informal, in a garden.



**A:** I enjoyed your wedding. I prefer informal weddings. At most weddings, I have to get dressed up in a suit and tie. At \_\_\_\_\_, I wore comfortable clothes.

**B:** \_\_\_\_\_ brother and \_\_\_\_\_ bride had a very different honeymoon too. Our honeymoon was a two-day trip. \_\_\_\_\_ was a two-week stay in a luxury hotel in Hawaii. Their honeymoon was expensive. \_\_\_\_\_ was very economical. We drove to Chicago and stayed in a motel there.

**A:** I remember your wife made her own dress. You saved a lot of money.

**B:** My sister-in-law, Gina, spent a lot of money on \_\_\_\_\_ dress. \_\_\_\_\_ cost over \$1,000. My wife's was only about \$100.

(continued)



**A:** The cost of a wedding isn't the most important thing. The most important thing is the happiness that follows. My uncle's wedding cost over \$30,000. \_\_\_\_\_ was the most beautiful wedding you can imagine. But his marriage lasted only eight months.

**EXERCISE 6** Fill in the blanks with *I, I'm, me, my, or mine*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ a student.
- \_\_\_\_\_ live in an apartment near school.
- \_\_\_\_\_ apartment is on the first floor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ parents often visit \_\_\_\_\_.
- They don't have a computer. They use \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 7** Fill in the blanks with *we, we're, us, our, or ours*.

- \_\_\_\_\_ classroom is large.
- \_\_\_\_\_ study English here.
- \_\_\_\_\_ foreign students.
- The teacher helps \_\_\_\_\_ learn English.
- The teacher brings her book, and we bring \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks with *you, you're, your, or yours*. Pretend you are talking directly to the teacher.

- \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher.
- \_\_\_\_\_ come from the U.S.
- My first language is Polish. \_\_\_\_\_ is English.
- \_\_\_\_\_ pronunciation is very good.
- We see \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

**EXERCISE 9** Fill in the blanks with *he, he's, his, or him*.

- I have a brother. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Paul.
- \_\_\_\_\_ married.
- \_\_\_\_\_ has four children.
- My apartment is small. \_\_\_\_\_ is big.
- I see \_\_\_\_\_ on the weekends.

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks with *she, she's, her, or hers*.

1. I have a sister. \_\_\_\_\_ name is Marilyn.
2. I visit \_\_\_\_\_ twice a week.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ lives in a suburb.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher. \_\_\_\_\_ husband is a doctor.
5. My children go to private school. \_\_\_\_\_ go to public school.

**EXERCISE 11** Fill in the blanks with *it, it's, or its*.

1. The school has a big library. \_\_\_\_\_ comfortable and clean.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ has many books and magazines.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ hours are from 8 a.m. to 8 p.m.
4. I use \_\_\_\_\_ every day.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ on the first floor.

**EXERCISE 12** Fill in the blanks with *they, they're, them, their, or theirs*.

1. My parents rent \_\_\_\_\_ apartment.
2. My apartment is small, but \_\_\_\_\_ is big.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ very old now.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ live in a suburb.
5. I visit \_\_\_\_\_ on the weekends.

## 4.4 Questions with *Whose*

*Whose* + a noun asks a question about ownership.

WHOSE + NOUN	AUXILIARY VERB	SUBJECT	VERB	ANSWER
<b>Whose</b> dress	did	the bride	borrow?	She borrowed her sister's dress.
<b>Whose</b> flowers	are	those?		They're the bride's flowers.
<b>Whose</b> last name	will	the bride	use?	She'll use her husband's last name.



**EXERCISE 13** Write a question with *whose*. The answer is given.

**EXAMPLE** *Whose flowers are these?*

They're the bride's flowers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

That's my father's car.

2. \_\_\_\_\_

Those are the newlyweds' gifts.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

She's wearing her sister's necklace.

4. \_\_\_\_\_

I'm wearing my friend's suit.

5. \_\_\_\_\_

I follow my parents' advice.

6. \_\_\_\_\_

The bride borrowed her sister's dress.

## 4.5 Object Pronouns

We can use an object pronoun (*me, you, him, her, it, us, or them*) after the verb.

OBJECT NOUN	OBJECT PRONOUN	EXPLANATION
Daniel loves <b>Sofia</b> . Sofia loves <b>Daniel</b> . You met <b>my parents</b> .	He loves <b>her</b> very much. She loves <b>him</b> very much. You met <b>them</b> last night.	We can use an object pronoun to substitute for an object noun.
Do you know <b>the guests</b> ? The bride and groom sent <b>invitations</b> .	Yes, we know <b>them</b> . They sent <b>them</b> last month.	We use <i>them</i> for plural people and things.
I see <b>the bride</b> . The bride is with <b>her father</b> .	Everyone is looking <i>at</i> <b>her</b> . She will dance <i>with</i> <b>him</b> .	An object pronoun can follow a preposition ( <i>at, with, of, about, to, from, in, etc.</i> ).

## Compare subject and object pronouns.

SUBJECT	OBJECT	EXAMPLES		
		Subject	Verb	Object
I	me	You	love	me.
you	you	I	love	you.
he	him	She	loves	him.
she	her	He	loves	her.
it	it	We	love	it.
we	us	They	love	us.
they	them	We	love	them.

### EXERCISE 14 Fill in the blanks with an object pronoun in place of the underlined words.

**EXAMPLE** The groom doesn't walk down the aisle with the bride. Her father walks with her.

- The bride doesn't enter with the groom. He waits for \_\_\_\_\_, and she goes to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The groom takes the ring. He puts \_\_\_\_\_ on the bride's hand.
- The bride wears a veil. The groom lifts \_\_\_\_\_ to kiss \_\_\_\_\_.
- The bride doesn't throw the bouquet to all the women. She throws \_\_\_\_\_ to the single women only.
- People make toasts to the bride and groom. They wish \_\_\_\_\_ health and happiness.
- The groom promises to love the bride, and the bride promises to love \_\_\_\_\_.

### EXERCISE 15 Fill in the blanks with the correct subject pronoun, object pronoun, or possessive adjective.



CD 2, TR 04

**A:** How was your cousin Lisa's wedding last Saturday?

**B:** It was great.  
(example)

**A:** How many guests were there?

**B:** Maybe about 200. I couldn't count \_\_\_\_\_.  
(1)

**A:** Wow! That's a lot. It sounds like an expensive wedding. How did they pay for \_\_\_\_\_?  
(2)

(continued)



**B:** Lisa and Ron worked when \_\_\_\_\_ graduated from college  
(3)  
and saved money for \_\_\_\_\_ wedding. \_\_\_\_\_  
(4) (5)  
parents helped \_\_\_\_\_ a little, but they couldn't depend on  
(6)  
\_\_\_\_\_ too much. \_\_\_\_\_ parents aren't wealthy.  
(7) (8)

**A:** Did Lisa wear a traditional white dress?

**B:** Yes. In fact, \_\_\_\_\_ wore \_\_\_\_\_ mother's  
(9) (10)  
wedding dress. She looked beautiful in \_\_\_\_\_.  
(11)

**A:** Where did \_\_\_\_\_ go on their honeymoon?  
(12)

**B:** They went to Hawaii. I was surprised—they sent \_\_\_\_\_  
(13)  
a postcard. They had a great time.

**A:** I hope \_\_\_\_\_ will be happy. The wedding and honeymoon  
(14)  
are important, but the marriage that follows is what really counts.

**B:** I agree with \_\_\_\_\_. But I'm sure they'll be happy.  
(15)

She loves \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_  
(16) (17)  
loves \_\_\_\_\_ very much.  
(18)

**A:** Did you take pictures?

**B:** Yes. Do you want to see \_\_\_\_\_? I took \_\_\_\_\_  
(19) (20)  
with my new digital camera.

**A:** I don't have time now. Can you show \_\_\_\_\_ the pictures  
(21)  
tomorrow?

**B:** I'll e-mail \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ later this evening.  
(22) (23)



# New Wedding Trends

## Before You Read

1. American wedding customs are changing. Are wedding customs changing in your native culture?
2. In your native culture, what kind of vows do the bride and groom make to each other?



CD 2, TR 05

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to direct and indirect objects after verbs.

http://www.all\*weddings.com

Wedding traditions are changing. More and more young couples are choosing to **create a unique wedding experience** for themselves and for their guests. In traditional weddings, a clergy **reads the bride and groom their vows**. “Do you, Mary Jones, **take Roger Smith** to be your husband, for better or for worse, for richer, for poorer, in sickness and in health, to love and to cherish, until death **parts you**?” The bride and groom simply say, “I do” in response to this question. But more and more couples today **are writing their own vows and saying them** in their own words. They **face the guests** while they say or **read their vows to each other**.

(continued)



Churches and synagogues are still the most popular places for a wedding. But some couples are choosing to **have a destination wedding**. They get married on the beach, on a mountain top, or other unusual place. These weddings **have fewer guests** because of the expense of traveling. Often the bride and groom **pay for the hotel rooms** of their guests. They **tell their guests the date** at least three to four months in advance. Often they **send them “save-the-date” cards** so that their guests can **make plans to attend the wedding**.

Another new trend in weddings is to **create a wedding** based on the couple's ethnic background. For example, in an African-American wedding, some couples want to **show respect to their ancestors<sup>5</sup>** by jumping over a broom, a tradition coming from the time of slavery. The jumping of the broom **symbolizes a new beginning** by sweeping away the old and welcoming the new. Some African-Americans **use colorful clothing** inspired by African costumes, rather than a white dress for the bride and a suit or tuxedo for the groom.

One thing stays the same. The newlyweds **send the guests thank-you cards** by mail to **thank them** for attending the wedding and for the gifts they gave.



<sup>5</sup>Ancestors are your grandparents, great-grandparents, great-great-grandparents, etc.



## 4.6 Direct and Indirect Objects

Some verbs are followed by both a direct and an indirect object. The order of the objects sometimes depends on the verb.<sup>6</sup> It sometimes depends on pronoun use.

EXAMPLES				EXPLANATION		
<b>Pattern A:</b>				With the following verbs, we follow Pattern A or Pattern B.		
<b>Subj.</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Indirect Obj.</b>	<b>Direct Obj.</b>			
We	gave	the couple	a wedding gift.	bring	read	show
They	sent	us	a thank-you card.	give	sell	tell
She	read	the groom	her vows.	offer	send	write
They	showed	me	their pictures.	pay	(e-)mail	
<b>Pattern B:</b>				In Pattern A, we put the indirect object before the direct object.		
<b>Subj.</b>	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Direct Obj.</b>	<b>To Indirect Obj.</b>	In Pattern B, we put the direct object first and then use <i>to</i> + the indirect object.		
We	gave	a wedding gift	to the couple.			
She	read	her vows	to the groom.			
Ed gave Ann a ring. He gave <b>it</b> to Ann on her birthday. Do you have the pictures? Can you show <b>them</b> to me?				When the direct object is a pronoun, we follow Pattern B.		
		<b>Direct Obj.</b>	<b>To Indirect Obj.</b>	With the following verbs, we follow Pattern B: direct object <i>to</i> indirect object.		
Please explain		wedding customs	to me.	announce	mention	say
Please describe		the wedding	to us.	describe	prove	suggest
				explain	report	

**EXERCISE 16** Fill in the blanks with the words in parentheses ( ). Put them in the correct order. Add *to* if necessary. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.



CD 2, TR 06

**A:** How was your cousin's wedding? Can you describe

\_\_\_\_\_ **it to me** \_\_\_\_\_?

(example: it/me)

**B:** It was beautiful. The bride read \_\_\_\_\_,

(1 a lovely poem/the groom)

and then the groom read \_\_\_\_\_ too.

(2 a poem/her)

**A:** Did they get married in a church?

**B:** No. They got married in a beautiful garden. Why didn't

you go? I thought they sent \_\_\_\_\_?

(3 an invitation/you)



<sup>6</sup>For a more detailed list of verbs and the order of direct and indirect objects, see Appendix I.

(continued)



A: They did. But I couldn't go. I wrote \_\_\_\_\_ and  
(4 a letter/them)  
 I explained \_\_\_\_\_ . I had to take an important  
(5 them/my problem)  
 exam for college that day. But I sent \_\_\_\_\_ .  
(6 a lovely present/them)

B: I'm sure they'll appreciate it. It's too bad you couldn't go.

A: I'm sure I mentioned \_\_\_\_\_ a few weeks ago.  
(7 you/it)

B: You probably did, but I forgot.

A: Do you have pictures from the wedding?

B: I took a lot of pictures. I'll e-mail \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.  
(8 you/them)

A: Thanks.

## 4.7 Say and Tell

*Say and tell have the same meaning, but we use them differently.*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>Compare:</b> a. She <b>said</b> her name. b. She <b>told</b> me her name. c. She <b>said</b> her name to me. d. They <b>told</b> the musicians to start the music.	a. We <i>say</i> something. b. We <i>tell</i> someone something. c. We <i>say</i> something to someone. d. We <i>tell</i> someone to do something.
The bride and groom <b>say</b> "I do." They <b>say</b> "thank you" to the guests.	<i>Say</i> is followed by a direct object.
They <b>told</b> the guests the wedding date. <b>Tell</b> me the bride's name.	<i>Tell</i> is followed by an indirect object and a direct object.
<b>Tell</b> the truth, do you love me?	We can use <i>tell the truth</i> or <i>tell a lie</i> without an indirect object.

**EXERCISE 17** Fill in the blanks with the correct form of *say* or *tell*.

**EXAMPLES** The bride said, "I love you."

They told me the date of the wedding.

- You \_\_\_\_\_ me the groom's name, but I forgot it.
- Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me where the wedding is?
- \_\_\_\_\_ the truth, do you like the bride's dress?



4. The bride hates to \_\_\_\_\_ good-bye to her family.
5. During the ceremony, the bride and groom \_\_\_\_\_, "I do."
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ the band to play romantic music.
7. My neighbor wants to come to the wedding. I wasn't planning on inviting her, but I can't \_\_\_\_\_ no.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ our daughter to economize on her wedding, but she \_\_\_\_\_ she wanted a fancy wedding.

## Economizing on a Wedding

### Before You Read

1. Does a wedding have to be expensive?
2. How can people economize on their weddings?



CD 2, TR 07

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the reflexive pronouns.**

The average cost of a wedding in the U.S. today is \$28,800. In days past, the bride's parents usually paid for the wedding. But as today's brides and grooms are older when they get married, they often pay for things **themselves**. There are many couples who put **themselves** in debt<sup>7</sup> to create a dream wedding.

Some recently married people give advice on how to economize on a wedding and still have a lovely, memorable event. Here are their tips:

- "I always pictured **myself** in a beautiful white dress. But when I went shopping and saw that most dresses are at least \$1,000, I decided to look for a secondhand dress. I found something for \$200, and it was lovely. When my sister got married, she made her dress **herself** and spent only \$100 on fabric and lace. It isn't necessary to spend so much money on a dress. A bride is always beautiful."
- "We were going to use a professional printer for the invitations, but we decided to make the invitations **ourselves**. We designed them on the computer and added ribbons. The guests told us that they were beautiful and original."



### Did You Know?

The average age of marriage is 27 for men and 25 for women.

<sup>7</sup>When you are in *debt*, you owe money and have to pay it back.

(continued)



- “I always wanted live music at my wedding. But when I saw the cost of musicians, I was shocked. My cousin plays piano well, so I asked her to play the piano for the wedding. And we used a DJ<sup>8</sup> for the dancing afterwards. We had to remind **ourselves** that the music wasn’t the focus for the day—our marriage was.”
- “Most couples want to get married in the summer. Ask **yourself** how important a summer wedding really is. You can cut costs by having a wedding at a less popular time. For example, a wedding in January is cheaper than a wedding in August.”

According to some couples, it is not good to economize on some things:

- “Don’t try to save money by sending invitations or thank-you cards through e-mail. Guests are offended. You should use postal mail.”
- “We asked a friend to take pictures at our wedding but were very disappointed with the results. Our advice: Hire a professional photographer. You want to look at **yourselves** and guests for years to come.”

The best way to economize is to cut the guest list and invite only your closest relatives and friends.

Although most young couples want a perfect wedding, the most important thing is to have a good marriage.

## 4.8 Reflexive Pronouns

We use reflexive pronouns for the object when the subject and object are the same.

**Compare:**

The groom loves **her**. (object pronoun)

The bride loves **herself**. (reflexive pronoun)

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. I pictured <b>myself</b> in a beautiful white dress. (D.O.) b. We tell <b>ourselves</b> that money makes us happy, but it’s not true. (I.O.) c. They like to look at <b>themselves</b> in their wedding photos. (O.P.)	A reflexive pronoun can be a. a direct object (D.O.) b. an indirect object (I.O.) c. the object of a preposition (O.P.)
She made the dress <b>all by herself</b> . The bride and groom made the invitations <b>by themselves</b> .	We often use a reflexive pronoun to mean alone, without help. We often add <i>all by</i> or <i>by</i> before the reflexive pronoun.
We enjoyed <b>ourselves</b> at the wedding. Help <b>yourself</b> to more cake. Make <b>yourself</b> at home.	We use reflexive pronouns in a few idiomatic expressions.

<sup>8</sup>A DJ is a disk jockey, a person who plays recorded music.



## REFLEXIVE FORMS

Subject	Verb	Reflexive Pronoun
I	see	myself.
You	see	yourself.
He	sees	himself.
She	sees	herself.
It	sees	itself.
We	see	ourselves.
You	see	yourselves.
They	see	themselves.



**EXERCISE 18** Frank and Sylvia are like many American couples. They have problems balancing their relationship, children, careers, families, and other responsibilities. Read each one's story and fill in the blanks with a reflexive pronoun.



CD 2, TR 08

*Sylvia's Story:*



Now that I'm married, I don't have time for myself anymore.  
(example)  
 We used to spend time with each other. Now that we have kids, we never have time for \_\_\_\_\_. We both work, but Frank doesn't  
(1)  
 help me with housework or with the kids. I have to do everything all by  
 \_\_\_\_\_. My husband thinks only of \_\_\_\_\_. When he wants  
(2) (3)  
 something, like a new digital camera or new software, he buys it.  
 He never buys me flowers or presents anymore. I tell \_\_\_\_\_ that  
(4)  
 he still loves me, but sometimes I'm not so sure. Sometimes I think the  
 problem is his fault, but sometimes I blame \_\_\_\_\_.  
(5)

*Frank's Story:*

Sylvia never has time for me anymore. We used to do things together. Now I have to do everything by \_\_\_\_\_. If I want to go to a movie,  
(6)  
 she says that she's too busy or too tired or that the kids are sick. I rarely go to the movies, and if I do, I go by \_\_\_\_\_. It seems like all I do is  
(7)  
 work and pay bills. Other married people seem to enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ more  
(8)  
 than we do. She says she wants me to help her with the housework, but she

*(continued)*



really prefers to do everything \_\_\_\_\_ because she doesn't like  
(9)  
the way I do things. She wants us to see a marriage counselor, but I don't  
like to tell other people about my problems. I like to solve my problems

\_\_\_\_\_  
(10)  
What do you think Frank and Sylvia should do?

**EXERCISE 19** **ABOUT YOU** Write two sentences telling about things you like to do by yourself. Write two sentences telling about things you don't like to do by yourself.

**EXAMPLES** I like to shop by myself. I prefer to visit art museums by myself.

I don't like to eat by myself. I don't like to go for a walk by myself.

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 20** Fill in the blanks with the correct pronoun or possessive form.

Frank and Sylvia used to do a lot of things together. They went  
(example)  
to movies, went out to restaurants, and took vacations together. But now  
\_\_\_\_\_ are always too busy for each other. \_\_\_\_\_ have two  
(1) (2)  
children and spend most of \_\_\_\_\_ time taking care of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(3) (4)

Frank and Sylvia bought a house recently and spend \_\_\_\_\_ free  
(5)  
time taking care of \_\_\_\_\_. It's an old house and needs a lot of work.  
(6)

When Frank and Sylvia have problems, \_\_\_\_\_ try to solve  
(7)  
\_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_. But sometimes Sylvia goes to \_\_\_\_\_  
(8) (9) (10)  
mother for advice. Frank never goes to \_\_\_\_\_ mother. He doesn't  
(11)  
want to bother \_\_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_\_ problems. Frank often  
(12) (13)  
complains that Sylvia cares more about the kids and the house than  
about \_\_\_\_\_.  
(14)

Sylvia wants to go to a marriage counselor, but Frank doesn't want to  
go with \_\_\_\_\_. He always says to Sylvia, "We don't need a marriage  
(15)

counselor. We can solve \_\_\_\_\_ problems by \_\_\_\_\_. You just  
(16) (17)  
need to pay more attention to \_\_\_\_\_. If you want to see a counselor,  
(18)  
you can go by \_\_\_\_\_. I'm not going." Sylvia feels very frustrated. She  
(19)  
thinks that the marriage isn't going to get better by \_\_\_\_\_.  
(20)

## Questions and Answers about an American Wedding

### Before You Read

1. Do you have any questions about American weddings?
2. How is a traditional American wedding different from a wedding in your native culture?



**Read the following questions and answers about American weddings. Pay special attention to questions.**

**Q: Who pays for the wedding?**

**A:** In the past, the bride's parents paid for most of the wedding. Today only about 20 percent of weddings are the responsibility of the bride's parents. As men and women are getting married after starting careers and earning money, more and more weddings are becoming the responsibility of the bride and groom.

**Q: What is a shower?**

**A:** A shower is a party for the bride (and sometimes the groom) before the wedding. The purpose of the party is to give the couple gifts that will help them start their new home. Typical gifts are towels, cookware, linens,<sup>9</sup> and small kitchen and household appliances.



**Q: Who hosts the shower?**

**A:** Usually the maid of honor hosts the shower. She invites friends and relatives of the bride and groom.

**Q: When do they have the shower?**

**A:** Usually the shower is two to six weeks before the wedding.

<sup>9</sup>Linens are sheets, pillowcases, and tablecloths.

(continued)



- Q:** How long does it take to plan a wedding?  
**A:** Most couples plan their wedding for seven to twelve months.
- Q:** When do the couples send invitations?  
**A:** They usually send the invitations about eight weeks before the wedding.
- Q:** When guests come in from out of town, who pays for their hotel and transportation?  
**A:** The out-of-town guests pay for their own hotel. However, the groom pays for the hotel for his groomsmen and the bride pays for her bridesmaids. The guests usually pay for their own transportation.
- Q:** Whom does the groom choose as his best man?  
**A:** Often the groom chooses his brother or best friend. However, he chooses the man he feels closest to. The groom chooses other close friends or male relatives as the groomsmen.
- Q:** When do the bride and groom open their gifts?  
**A:** They open their gifts at home, not at the wedding.
- Q:** How do the guests know what the bride and groom want as gifts?  
**A:** The bride and groom usually register for gifts at stores. They list the gift items they want and need for their new home, such as dishes, cookware, small appliances, and towels. When the guests go to buy a gift, they check the registry in the store. Of course, money is always a popular gift.
- Q:** How do I know how much money to give?  
**A:** Most guests spend about \$100 on a gift. People who are closer to the bride or groom often spend more. Casual friends usually spend less.

## 4.9 Questions about the Subject or Complement

Questions about the complement include *do*, *does*, or *did*. Questions about the subject do not include *do*, *does*, or *did*.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Who wears</b> a white dress? The bride <b>does</b>.</p> <p><b>Who paid</b> for the wedding? The parents <b>did</b>.</p> <p><b>Whose ring has</b> a diamond? The bride's ring <b>does</b>.</p>	<p>We usually answer a subject question with a subject and an auxiliary verb.</p>
<p><b>What happened</b> after the wedding? The bride and groom <b>went</b> on a honeymoon.</p>	<p><i>What happened</i> is a subject question. We usually answer with a different verb.</p>
<p>a. Who <b>has</b> the prettiest dress?            b. Which woman <b>has</b> the prettiest dress?            c. Which women <b>have</b> the prettiest dresses?            d. How many people <b>want</b> to dance?            e. What <b>happens</b> at the reception?</p>	<p>For the simple present tense:</p> <p>a. Use the -s form after <i>who</i>.            b. Use the -s form after <i>which</i> + singular noun.            c. Use the base form after <i>which</i> + plural noun.            d. Use the base form after <i>how many</i> + plural noun.            e. Use the -s form after <i>what</i>.</p>



Compare these statements and related questions.

Wh- Word	Do/Does/Did	Subject	Verb	Complement
What	did	The groom the bride	paid for pay for?	the rings.
		Someone Who	paid for paid for?	the wedding. the wedding?
Whom	does	The groom he	chooses choose?	a best man.
		The bride Who	chooses chooses?	her dress. the rings?
Why	do	Out-of-town guests they	stay stay?	at a hotel. at a hotel?
		Who	stays	at a hotel?
Whose dress	did	The bride she	borrowed borrow?	a dress.
		Someone's dress Whose dress	looks looks?	beautiful. beautiful?
		Something What	happened happened?	next. next?

**Language Note:** In a question about the object, *whom* is very formal. Informally, many Americans say *who*.  
**Formal:** *Whom* did your brother marry?  
**Informal:** *Who* did your brother marry?

**EXERCISE 21** Read each statement. Then write a question about the words in parentheses ( ). No answer is necessary.

**EXAMPLE** Someone takes the bride to the groom. (who)  
Who takes the bride to the groom?

- Someone holds the rings. (who)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Someone's car has a "just married" sign. (whose car)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Two people say, "I do." (how many people/"congratulations")  
\_\_\_\_\_
- One woman wore a black dress. (which woman)  
\_\_\_\_\_
- The bride pays for her white dress. (who/the bridesmaids' dresses)  
\_\_\_\_\_



**EXERCISE 22**

**ABOUT YOU** Use the simple present tense of the verb in parentheses ( ) to ask a question about this class. Any student may volunteer an answer.

**EXAMPLES** Who (ride) a bike to school?

**A:** Who rides a bike to school?

**B:** I do.

How many students (have) the textbook?

**A:** How many students have the textbook?

**B:** We all do.

1. Who (explain) the grammar?
2. How many students (speak) Spanish?
3. What usually (happen) after class?
4. Who (need) help with this lesson?
5. Which students (walk) to school?
6. Who (have) a digital camera?
7. Who (live) alone?
8. Whose last name (have) over ten letters?

**EXERCISE 23**

**ABOUT YOU** Use the simple past tense of the verb in parentheses ( ) to ask a question. Any student may volunteer an answer.

**EXAMPLE** Who (buy) a used textbook?

**A:** Who bought a used textbook?

**B:** I did.

1. Who (move) last year?
2. Who (understand) the explanation?
3. Whose family (take) a trip recently?
4. Who (bring) a dictionary to class today?
5. Who (pass) the last test?
6. Which students (come) late today?
7. Which student (arrive) first today?
8. How many students (do) today's homework?
9. How many students (study) English in elementary school?
10. How many students (bring) a cell phone to class?

**EXERCISE 24** Read each statement. Then write a question about the words in parentheses ( ). Some of the questions are about the subject. Some are not. No answer is necessary.

**EXAMPLES** The bride wears a white dress. (what/the groom)

*What does the groom wear?*

---

The bride enters last. (who/first)

*Who enters first?*

---

1. The bride throws the bouquet. (when)

---

2. Some women try to catch the bouquet. (which women)

---

3. The groom puts the ring on the bride's finger. (on which hand) OR  
(which hand . . . on)

---

4. The band plays music. (what kind of music)

---

5. Someone dances with the bride. (who)

---

6. Guests give presents. (what kind of presents)

---

7. Some people cry at the wedding. (who)

---

8. There's a dinner after the ceremony. (what/happen/after the dinner)

---

**EXERCISE 25** In the conversation below, two women are talking about their families. Fill in the blanks to complete the questions. Some of the questions are about the subject. Some are about the object. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.



CD 2, TR 10

**A:** How do you have time to work, go to school, and take care of a family?

**B:** I don't have to do everything myself.

**A:** Who helps you ?  
(example)

**B:** My husband helps me.

**A:** I usually cook in my house. Who \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
(1)

**B:** Sometimes my husband cooks; sometimes I cook. We take turns.

(continued)





**A:** I usually clean. Who \_\_\_\_\_? (2)

**B:** I usually clean the house.

**A:** How many \_\_\_\_\_? (3)

**B:** I have five children.

**A:** How many \_\_\_\_\_? (4)

**B:** Three children go to school. The younger ones stay home.

**A:** Do you send them to public school or private school?

**B:** One of my sons goes to private school.

**A:** Which \_\_\_\_\_? (5)

**B:** The oldest does. He's in high school now.

**A:** It's hard to take care of so many children. How do you find the time to go to class?

**B:** As I said, my husband helps me a lot. And sometimes I use a babysitter.

**A:** I'm looking for a sitter. Who(m) \_\_\_\_\_? (6)

**B:** I recommend our neighbor, Susan. She's 16 years old, and she's very good with our children.

**A:** Maybe she's too busy to help me. How many families \_\_\_\_\_? (7)

**B:** I think she works for only one other family. I'll give you her phone number. If she's not busy, maybe she can work for you too.

**A:** Thanks. I could use some help.

**EXERCISE 26** Fill in the blanks with *who*, *whom*, *who's*, or *whose*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ did you invite to the wedding?

I invited all my friends and relatives.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ took pictures?

My brother did. He borrowed a camera because his is broken.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ camera did he borrow?

He borrowed my aunt's camera. She has a fantastic camera.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ your aunt?

She's that woman over there.

# Summary of Lesson 4

## 1. Pronouns and Possessive Forms

SUBJECT PRONOUN	OBJECT PRONOUN	POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE	POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	REFLEXIVE PRONOUN
I	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	—	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves
who	whom	whose	whose	—

### EXAMPLES

They came from Canada.

I invited **them**.

**Their** wedding was outdoors.

My wedding was small. **Theirs** was big.

They paid for the wedding **themselves**.

**Who** came from Canada?

**Who(m)** did you invite?

**Whose** wedding was outdoors?

Someone's wedding was big.

**Whose** was big?

## 2. Possessive Form of Nouns

### Singular Nouns

the **bride's** dress

my **father's** house

the **child's** toy

the **man's** hat

**Charles's** wife

### Plural Nouns

the **bridesmaids'** dresses

my **parents'** house

the **children's** toys

the **men's** hats

## 3. Say and Tell

He **said** his name.

He **told** me his name.

He **said** good-bye to his friends.

He **told** them to write often.

## 4. Questions about the Subject

### Simple Present:

Who has the rings?

How many bridesmaids have a pink dress?

Which bridesmaid has a red dress?

Which bridesmaids have pink flowers?

What happens after the wedding?

### Simple Past:

Who kissed the bride?

Which man kissed the bride?

What happened next?

How many people came to the wedding?

Whose mother cried?



## Editing Advice

1. Don't confuse *you're* (you are) and *your* (possessive form).

*You're*

~~Your~~ late.

*Your*

~~You're~~ class started ten minutes ago.

2. Don't confuse *he's* (he is) and *his* (possessive form).

*He's*

~~His~~ married.

*His*

~~He's~~ wife is a friend of mine.

3. Don't confuse *it's* (it is) and *its* (possessive form).

*It's*

This college is big. ~~Its~~ a state university.

*Its*

~~It's~~ library has many books.

4. Don't confuse *his* (masculine possessor) and *her* (feminine possessor).

*her*

My sister loves ~~his~~ son.

*his*

My brother loves ~~her~~ daughter.

5. Don't confuse *my* and *mine*.

*my*

I don't have ~~mine~~ book today.

*mine*

You can borrow ~~my~~.

6. Don't confuse *they're* and *their*.

*Their*

~~They're~~ last name is Williams.

*They're*

~~Their~~ from California.

7. Use the correct pronoun (subject or object).

*her*

I have a daughter. I love ~~she~~ very much.

8. For a compound subject, use “another person and I.” Don’t use *me* in the subject position.

<sup>I</sup>  
My father and ~~me~~ like to go fishing.

*My father and I*

~~Me and my father~~ like to go fishing.

9. For a compound object, use “another person and me.” Don’t use *I* in the object position.

<sup>me</sup>  
My parents gave my brother and ~~I~~ a present.

10. Don’t use an apostrophe to make a plural form.

<sup>guests</sup>  
They invited many ~~guest’s~~ to the wedding.

11. Don’t use an auxiliary verb in a question about the subject.

<sup>s</sup>  
Who ~~does~~ speak <sup>^</sup>Spanish?

12. Don’t separate *whose* from the noun.

Whose is this book?

13. Don’t confuse *whose* and *who’s*.

*Whose*

~~Who’s~~ coat is that?

14. Use the correct word order for possession.

*My wife’s mother*

~~Mother my wife~~ helps us a lot.

15. Put the apostrophe after the *s* of a plural noun that ends in *s*.

<sup>parents’</sup>  
My ~~parent’s~~ house is small.

16. The *s* in a possessive pronoun is not for a plural.

~~Theirs~~ parents live in Canada.

17. Don’t use a form of *be* with *what happened*.

What ~~was~~ happened to your new car?

18. Use the correct word order with direct and indirect objects.

<sup>the grammar to me</sup>  
She explained ~~me the grammar~~.

<sup>it to him</sup>  
I gave ~~him it~~.



## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

- A:** I heard you got married recently. Tell me about <sup>your</sup> ~~you're~~ wedding. Did you have a lot of <sup>C</sup> ~~guests?~~ <sub>(example)</sub>
- B:** It was a small wedding. <sup>(1)</sup> Sara's parents wanted a big wedding, and <sup>(2)</sup> hers parents offered to pay for <sup>(3)</sup> it. But we wanted to be responsible and pay for it <sup>(4)</sup> ourself. We explained <sup>(5)</sup> them the situation, and they agreed. So we just had <sup>(6)</sup> our immediate families: parents, grandparents, sisters, brothers, aunts, and uncles. But <sup>(7)</sup> grandfather Sara didn't come.
- A:** Why not? What <sup>(8)</sup> was happened to <sup>(9)</sup> he?
- B:** Nothing. <sup>(10)</sup> His grandfather lives in Mexico. <sup>(11)</sup> His very old and couldn't travel. But <sup>(12)</sup> her grandmother came and stayed at <sup>(13)</sup> Sara's aunt's house.
- A:** <sup>(14)</sup> Your grandparents are old too, aren't they? Did they come?
- B:** Yes, they did. <sup>(15)</sup> Mine live nearby. And <sup>(16)</sup> their in great health.
- A:** That's good. So <sup>(17)</sup> you didn't spend a lot of money on your wedding?
- B:** No. No big ceremony, no big party. Just a small dinner at <sup>(18)</sup> Sara's parent's house. <sup>(19)</sup> Aunts of Sara made a beautiful dinner. We even saved money on the wedding dress because Sarah borrowed a dress.
- A:** <sup>(20)</sup> Who's dress did she borrow?
- B:** She wore <sup>(21)</sup> her <sup>(22)</sup> mothers wedding dress. And I didn't rent a tuxedo. I wore <sup>(23)</sup> my new blue suit. You know the tradition: "Something old, something new, something borrowed, something blue." My suit is new and blue. <sup>(24)</sup> Sara's dress is old and borrowed.
- A:** Did you hire a photographer?
- B:** No. <sup>(25)</sup> We saved money there too. <sup>(26)</sup> Mine uncle is a photographer. <sup>(27)</sup> He took all the <sup>(28)</sup> picture's and gave <sup>(29)</sup> us them on disk. We printed <sup>(30)</sup> they and made an album.

**A:** Did you go on a honeymoon?

**B:** We saved money there too. Sara's uncle has a vacation home in Miami.

Me <sup>(31)</sup> and Sara stayed there for a week. (His <sup>(32)</sup> uncle wasn't there at the time.)

**A:** Its <sup>(33)</sup> hot in Miami at this time of the year.

**B:** Yes, it is. But there was a swimming pool. We used it <sup>(34)</sup> every day.

**A:** What are you going to do with all the money you saved?

**B:** We have to pay our college loans. We also want to buy a house and car, so we're <sup>(35)</sup> saving for its. <sup>(36)</sup>

**A:** You're <sup>(37)</sup> a wise man! When Lisa and I <sup>(38)</sup> get married after we graduate, I'd like to do the same thing. But I think Lisa won't agree.

**B:** Who know? <sup>(39)</sup> Maybe she'll like the idea.



## Lesson 4 Test/Review

### PART 1 Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

EXAMPLE Do you like c neighbors?

- a. you      b. you're      c. your      d. yours

1. Where do your parents live? \_\_\_\_\_ live in Colombia.

- a. My      b. Mine      c. Mine's      d. Mines

2. \_\_\_\_\_ coat is that?

- a. Whose      b. Who's      c. Who      d. Whom

3. \_\_\_\_\_ went to Hawaii for our honeymoon.

- a. My wife and I      c. Me and my wife  
b. I and my wife      d. My wife and me

4. My sister's daughter is 18. \_\_\_\_\_ son is 16.

- a. His      b. Her      c. Hers      d. Her's

5. What's \_\_\_\_\_?

- a. the name your son      c. the name your son's  
b. your son's name      d. your the son's name

6. Look at those dogs. Do you see \_\_\_\_\_?

- a. they      b. its      c. them      d. it's

7. We have your phone number. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_?

- a. us      b. our      c. ours      d. our's

8. What is \_\_\_\_\_?

- a. that building name      c. the name that building  
b. the name of that building      d. the name's that building

9. Someone left a sweater. \_\_\_\_\_?

- a. Whose is this sweater?      c. Whose sweater is this?  
b. Who's is this sweater?      d. Who's sweater is this?

10. \_\_\_\_\_ the correct answer?

- a. Who's knows      b. Whom knows      c. Who does know      d. Who knows

11. They have my address, but I don't have \_\_\_\_\_.

- a. their      b. them      c. they're      d. theirs

12. We did it by \_\_\_\_.
- a. self      b. oneself      c. ourself      d. ourselves
13. They can help \_\_\_\_.
- a. theirself      b. theirselves      c. themself      d. themselves
14. I know \_\_\_\_ very well.
- a. myself      b. mineself      c. meself      d. self
15. My teacher speaks Spanish. My \_\_\_\_ teacher doesn't.
- a. husbands      b. husbands'      c. husband's      d. the husband's

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with *said* or *told*.

1. She \_\_\_\_\_, "Excuse me."
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ them to study.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ him the truth.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ "hello" to her neighbor.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ them the answers.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ us about her trip.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ the answer out loud.
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ good-bye.

**PART 3** Complete the question. Some of these questions ask about the subject. Some do not. The answer is underlined.

**EXAMPLES** What does the bride wear?

The bride wears a white dress and a veil.

Who usually cries at the wedding?

The bride's mother usually cries at the wedding.

1. When \_\_\_\_\_

She throws the bouquet at the end of the wedding party.

2. Which women \_\_\_\_\_

The single women try to catch the bouquet.

3. On which hand \_\_\_\_\_

The groom puts the ring on the bride's left hand.

4. Whom \_\_\_\_\_

The groom kisses the bride.



5. Whose \_\_\_\_\_  
The bride's ring has a diamond.
6. Whose \_\_\_\_\_  
The bride uses her husband's last name.
7. Who \_\_\_\_\_  
A professional photographer took pictures at my wedding.
8. Whose \_\_\_\_\_  
I borrowed my sister's dress.
9. Whose \_\_\_\_\_, yours or your sisters?  
My sister's wedding was bigger.
10. How many people \_\_\_\_\_  
Over 250 people came to the wedding.
11. Who \_\_\_\_\_  
The bride and groom cut the cake.

**PART 4** Fill in the blanks with a reflexive pronoun.

**EXAMPLE** She likes to talk about herself.

1. I made the cake all by \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The bride made her dress \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They prepared \_\_\_\_\_ financially before getting married.
4. We helped \_\_\_\_\_ to another piece of cake.
5. The groom bought \_\_\_\_\_ a new pair of shoes.
6. All of you should help \_\_\_\_\_ to more cake and coffee.
7. Did you go to the wedding by \_\_\_\_\_ or did your wife go with you?

# Expansion

## Classroom

### Activities

**1 Form a small group. The group should have people from different cultures and countries, if possible. Talk about weddings and marriages in your native cultures and countries.**

- a. Who chooses a husband for a woman?
- b. Who pays for the wedding?
- c. What happens at the wedding?
- d. What happens after the wedding?
- e. Do the guests bring gifts to the wedding? What kind of gifts do they give? Where do the bride and groom open the gifts?
- f. How many people attend a wedding?
- g. Where do people get married?
- h. Do people dance at a wedding?
- i. Who takes pictures?
- j. What color dress does the bride wear?
- k. At what age do people usually get married?

**2 In a small group, interview one person who is married. Ask this person questions about his or her wedding.**

#### EXAMPLES

- Where did you get married?
- How many people did you invite?
- How many people came?
- Where did you go on your honeymoon?

**3 According to an American tradition, the bride should wear:**

- Something old,
- Something new,
- Something borrowed,
- Something blue.

Do you have any traditions regarding weddings in your native culture?

**4 Do you have a video of a wedding in your family? If so, can you bring it to class and tell the class about it? The teacher may have a video of an American wedding to show the class.**



**5 Write some advice for newlyweds in each of the following categories. Discuss your sentences in a small group.**

home	problem solving
children	mother-in-law
housework	money
careers	time together/time apart
family obligations	

## Talk

### About It

- 1** What kind of problems do most married people have today? Do you think American married couples have the same problems as couples in other countries?
- 2** Do you think married couples can solve their problems by themselves? At what point should they go to a marriage counselor?
- 3** Do you think married people should spend most of their time together, or should they spend some time by themselves?
- 4** Do you think young people are realistic about marriage? How can they prepare themselves for the reality of marriage?

## Write

### About It

- 1** Write about the different ways in which a person can economize on a wedding.
- 2** Write about a typical wedding in your native culture, or describe your own wedding or the wedding of a family member or friend.

### Weddings in China

In my country, China, weddings are different from weddings in the U.S. On the day of the wedding, the groom goes to the bride's house with his groomsmen. At the bride's house, the bride's friends play a "door game." They block the door until the men offer red packets of money . . .



**For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.**



## Lesson

# 5

### Grammar

Singular and Plural

Count and Noncount Nouns

*There + Be*

Quantity Words

### Context

Thanksgiving, Pilgrims,  
and Native Americans





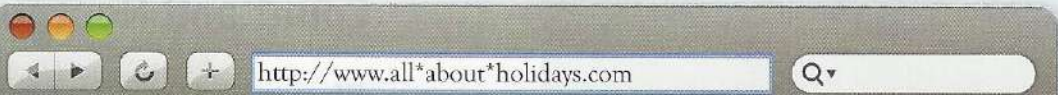
# A Typical Thanksgiving

## Before You Read

1. When you celebrate a holiday, what kind of food do you prepare?
2. Do you think a holiday meal is a healthy meal?



Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to singular and plural nouns.



Thanksgiving is a very special American **holiday**. We celebrate it on the fourth Thursday of November. **People** get together with **family** and **friends**. **Airports** are especially crowded as people travel to be with their **families** on this **day**. In fact, there are more **travelers** on the Sunday after Thanksgiving than any other day in the year.

On Thanksgiving, people eat a very big **meal**. While waiting for the **guests** to arrive, the host family usually puts out **snacks**, such as **potato chips** and **nuts**. The main **part** of the meal is **turkey**. Most people stuff the turkey with a **mixture** of **bread**, **onions**, **celery**, **nuts**, and **spices**. Some people add **fruit**, such as **apples** or **apricots**, to the **stuffing**. Other **parts** of the meal include **sweet potatoes**, **mashed potatoes**, **gravy**,<sup>1</sup> **corn**



Thanksgiving Day Parade

<sup>1</sup>Gravy is a sauce made from meat drippings, flour, water, and sometimes bacon fat.



bread, and cranberry sauce. Then there is dessert. Pumpkin pie with whipped cream is a favorite dessert. The typical Thanksgiving meal contains more than 3,000 calories and is 45 percent fat. Many people talk about going on a diet the day after Thanksgiving.

In addition to eating a big meal, many people relax and watch TV. It is a typical tradition to watch professional football on Thanksgiving Day. The men are especially interested in football. Many cities also have a parade on Thanksgiving morning. New York City has a very big parade. Millions of people go to see the parade.

## 5.1 Noun Plurals

We use the plural to talk about more than one. Regular noun plurals add *-s* or *-es*.

REGULAR NOUN PLURALS				
Word Ending	Example Noun	Plural Addition	Plural Form	Pronunciation
Vowel	bee banana	+ s	bees bananas	/z/
<i>ch, sh, x, s</i>	church dish box class	+ es	churches dishes boxes classes	/əz/
Voiceless consonants	cat month	+ s	cats months	/s/
Voiced consonants	card pin	+ s	cards pins	/z/
Vowel + y	boy day	+ s	boys days	/z/
Consonant + y	lady story	y + ies	ladies stories	/z/
Vowel + o	video radio	+ s	videos radios	/z/
Consonant + o	potato hero	+ es	potatoes heroes	/z/
<i>Exceptions:</i> photos, pianos, solos, altos, sopranos, autos, tuxedos, and avocados				
<i>f</i> or <i>fe</i>	leaf knife	<i>f</i> + ves	leaves knives	/z/
<i>Exceptions:</i> beliefs, chiefs, roofs, cliffs, chefs, and sheriffs				



### IRREGULAR NOUN PLURALS

Singular	Plural	Examples	Explanation
man woman tooth foot goose	men women teeth feet geese	The <b>women</b> cooked the dinner. The <b>men</b> washed the dishes.	Vowel change
sheep fish deer	sheep fish deer	There are two <b>fish</b> in the bowl.	No change
child mouse person	children mice people	The <b>children</b> set the table. We invited a lot of <b>people</b> to dinner.	Different word form



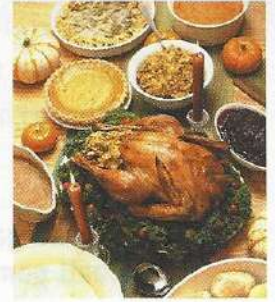
**Language Note:** The plural of *person* can also be *persons*, but *people* is more common.

### EXERCISE 1 Write the plural form of each noun. Pronounce each plural form.

EXAMPLE hour hours

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. holiday _____   | 13. apple _____  |
| 2. turkey _____    | 14. peach _____  |
| 3. cranberry _____ | 15. tomato _____ |
| 4. potato _____    | 16. pie _____    |
| 5. child _____     | 17. knife _____  |
| 6. family _____    | 18. deer _____   |
| 7. spice _____     | 19. watch _____  |
| 8. nut _____       | 20. tax _____    |
| 9. guest _____     | 21. month _____  |
| 10. man _____      | 22. goose _____  |
| 11. woman _____    | 23. dish _____   |
| 12. snack _____    | 24. path _____   |

**EXERCISE 2** Fill in the blanks with the plural form of the words in parentheses ( ).



**A:** Who prepares the Thanksgiving meal in your family?

**B:** The women in my family do most of the cooking.  
*(example: woman)*

But the \_\_\_\_\_ help a little too. My husband usually  
*(1 man)*  
makes the \_\_\_\_\_ and gravy. I always prepare the  
*(2 potato)*  
turkey. Even the \_\_\_\_\_ help. Last year, my two  
*(3 child)*

\_\_\_\_\_ made the cranberry sauce.  
*(4 daughter)*

**A:** Do you use fresh \_\_\_\_\_?  
*(5 cranberry)*

**B:** Yes, we do. We boil them with sugar and add \_\_\_\_\_ or orange  
*(6 apple)*  
\_\_\_\_\_ and some \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(7 slice) (8 nut)*

**A:** How do you make the stuffing?

**B:** I use bread, garlic \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, butter, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(9 clove) (10 onion) (11 mushroom)*  
I add \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(12 spice)*

**A:** What do you make for dessert?

**B:** My neighbor always comes and brings several \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(13 pie)*

**A:** Does she make them herself?

**B:** No, she doesn't make them. She buys them.

**A:** Thanksgiving is such a lovely holiday, isn't it?

**B:** I love it. The only thing I don't like is washing the \_\_\_\_\_  
*(14 dish)*  
afterwards.

**A:** Why don't the \_\_\_\_\_ wash the \_\_\_\_\_?  
*(15 man) (16 dish)*

**B:** They're too busy watching the football game. They always say that they'll  
wash them later, but the \_\_\_\_\_ are in a hurry to clean up. So we  
*(17 woman)*  
do it ourselves.



## 5.2 Using the Singular and Plural for Generalizations

We can use the singular or plural to make a generalization. A generalization says something is true of all members of a group.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>A football game</b> lasts about three hours. OR <b>Football games</b> last about three hours.	To make a generalization about the subject, use the indefinite article ( <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> ) with a singular subject or no article with a plural subject.
<b>A sweet potato</b> is nutritious. OR <b>Sweet potatoes</b> are nutritious.	

**EXERCISE 3** Make a generalization about the following nouns. Use the plural form. You may work with a partner.

**EXAMPLE** American teachers are very informal.

1. American children \_\_\_\_\_
2. American colleges \_\_\_\_\_
3. Buses in this city \_\_\_\_\_
4. Elderly Americans \_\_\_\_\_
5. American cities \_\_\_\_\_
6. American doctors \_\_\_\_\_
7. American women \_\_\_\_\_
8. American men \_\_\_\_\_
9. American holidays \_\_\_\_\_
10. Football games \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 4** Make a generalization about these professions. Use the singular form. You may work with a partner.

**EXAMPLE** A taxi driver has a dangerous job.

1. A teacher \_\_\_\_\_
2. A doctor \_\_\_\_\_
3. A nurse \_\_\_\_\_
4. A garbage collector \_\_\_\_\_
5. A lawyer \_\_\_\_\_
6. A musician \_\_\_\_\_
7. A librarian \_\_\_\_\_

8. A movie star \_\_\_\_\_
9. An accountant \_\_\_\_\_
10. A newspaper reporter \_\_\_\_\_

## 5.3 Special Cases of Singular and Plural

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>a. The U.S. has more than 300 <b>million</b> people.</p> <p>b. <b>Millions</b> of people go shopping the day after Thanksgiving.</p> <p>c. My grandfather is in his <b>seventies</b>. He was born in the <b>1940s</b>.</p>	<p>a. Exact numbers use the singular form.</p> <p>b. Inexact numbers use the plural form.</p> <p>c. An approximate age or year uses the plural form.</p>
<p>One of my <b>neighbors</b> brought a pie to Thanksgiving dinner.</p> <p>One of the <b>men</b> helped with the dishes.</p>	<p>We use the plural form in the following expressions: <i>one of (the, my, his, her, etc.)</i>.</p>
<p>Every <b>guest</b> brought something.</p> <p>We washed all the <b>dishes</b>.</p>	<p>We use a singular noun after <i>every</i>. We use a plural noun after <i>all</i>.</p>
<p>After dinner, the girl put on her <b>pajamas</b> and went to bed.</p> <p>We're wearing our best <b>clothes</b> today.</p>	<p>Some words have no singular form: <i>pajamas, clothes, pants, slacks, (eye)glasses, scissors</i>.</p>
<p>Let's watch the <b>news</b>. It's on after dinner.</p> <p>Let's not discuss <b>politics</b> during dinner.</p> <p>It's not a good subject.</p>	<p>Even though <i>news</i> and <i>politics</i> end in <i>-s</i>, they are singular.</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> Do not make adjectives plural. He made three <b>wonderful pies</b>.</p>	

**EXERCISE 5** Find the mistakes with the underlined words and correct them. Not every sentence has a mistake. If the sentence is correct, write C.

**EXAMPLES** Five men watched the football game.  
Ten guests came to dinner. C

1. The childrens helped serve the dinner.
2. One of her daughter came from New York on Thanksgiving.
3. Ten millions people passed through the airports that day.



4. Millions of people travel for Thanksgiving.
5. After the news is over, we can watch the football game.
6. His pants is new.
7. Five women prepared the dinner.
8. Every guests stayed to watch the game.
9. Thanksgiving is one of my favorite holiday.
10. Hundreds of people saw the parade.
11. My grandmother came for Thanksgiving. She's in her eighties.
12. Politics is not a good subject to discuss at the dinner table.
13. The boy should go to bed. His pajamas are on the bed.
14. Do you like sweets potatoes?

## The Origin of Thanksgiving

Before

You Read

1. What do you know about the origin of American Thanksgiving?
2. Do you have a day of thanks in your native culture?



CD 2, TR 13

**Read the following textbook article. Pay special attention to count and noncount nouns.**

On Thanksgiving, Americans come together to give thanks for all the good **things** in their **lives**. Thanksgiving officially began in 1863, when President Lincoln declared that Americans would have a **day** of thanks. What is the **origin** of this great day?

In 1620, a **group** of 120 **men, women, and children** left England for America on a **ship** called the Mayflower. They came to America in search of religious **freedom**. They started their new **life** in a deserted<sup>2</sup> Indian **village** in what is now the **state** of Massachusetts. But **half** of the **Pilgrims** did not



<sup>2</sup>Deserted means empty of people.



survive their first cold, hard **winter**. In the **spring**, two American **Indians**<sup>3</sup> found the **people** from England in very bad **condition**. They didn't have enough **food**, and they were in bad **health**. Squanto, an English-speaking American Indian, stayed with them for several **months** and taught them how to survive in this new **land**. He brought them deer **meat** and animal **skins**; he showed them how to grow **corn** and other **vegetables**; he showed them how to use **plants** as **medicine**; he explained how to use **fish** for **fertilizer**<sup>4</sup>—he taught them many **skills** for **survival** in their new land.

By the time their second **fall** arrived, the Pilgrims had enough food to get through their second winter. They were in better **health**. They decided to have a Thanksgiving **feast**<sup>5</sup> to celebrate their good **fortune**.

They invited Squanto and neighboring Indian **families** of the Wampanoag **tribe** to come to their **dinner**. The Pilgrims were surprised when 90 Indians showed up. The Pilgrims did not have enough food for so many people. Fortunately, the Indian **chief** sent some of his people to bring food to the **celebration**. They brought five **deer**, **fish**, **beans**, **squash**, **corn bread**, **berries**, and many wild **turkeys**. The feast lasted for three **days**. There was a short **time** of **peace** and **friendship** between the Indians and the Pilgrims.

Now on Thanksgiving, we eat some of the traditional **foods** from this **period** in American **history**.

## 5.4 Count and Noncount Nouns

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Use one <b>potato</b> in the recipe. Use three <b>potatoes</b> in the soup.	A count noun is something we can count. It has a singular and plural form.
<b>Corn</b> is native to America. The Indians used a lot of <b>corn</b> .	A noncount noun is something we don't count. It has no plural form.
We used <b>rice</b> in the recipe. We use <b>beans</b> in the soup.	<i>Count</i> and <i>noncount</i> are grammatical terms, but they are not always logical. <i>Rice</i> and <i>beans</i> are both very small, but <i>rice</i> is a noncount noun and <i>bean</i> is a count noun.

<sup>3</sup>The native people of America are called *American Indians*, *Indians*, or *Native Americans*.

<sup>4</sup>We put *fertilizer* in the earth to help plants grow.

<sup>5</sup>A *feast* is a large dinner.



## There are several types of noncount nouns.

### Group A: Nouns that have no distinct, separate parts. We look at the whole.

milk	juice	bread	electricity
oil	yogurt	meat	lightning
water	pork	butter	thunder
coffee	poultry	paper	cholesterol
tea	soup	air	blood

### Group B: Nouns that have parts that are too small or insignificant to count.

rice	hair	sand
sugar	popcorn	corn
salt	snow	grass

### Group C: Nouns that are classes or categories of things. The members of the category are not the same.

money or cash (nickels, dimes, dollars)	mail (letters, packages, postcards, flyers)
furniture (chairs, tables, beds)	homework (compositions, exercises, readings)
clothing (sweaters, pants, dresses)	jewelry (necklaces, bracelets, rings)

### Group D: Nouns that are abstractions.

love	happiness	nutrition	patience	work	nature
truth	education	intelligence	poverty	health	help
beauty	advice	unemployment	music	fun	energy
luck/fortune	knowledge	pollution	art	information	friendship

### Group E: Subjects of study.

history	grammar	biology
chemistry	geometry	math (mathematics*)

\*Note: Even though *mathematics* ends with *s*, it is not plural.

## EXERCISE 6 Fill in the blanks with a noncount noun from the box below.

advice	snow	freedom ✓	friendship
health	work	corn	

**EXAMPLE** The Pilgrims wanted to find freedom in America.

1. They had poor \_\_\_\_\_ during their first winter in America.
2. The Indians gave the Pilgrims a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about how to grow food.
3. Squanto taught them to plant \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The first winter was hard. It was cold and there was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Learning American agriculture was hard \_\_\_\_\_ for the Pilgrims.
6. In the beginning, there was \_\_\_\_\_ between the Pilgrims and the Indians.



## 5.5 Nouns That Can Be Both Count or Noncount

Some nouns can be noncount or count, depending on their meaning or use.

NONCOUNT	COUNT
<p>a. I like to spend <b>time</b> with my family on the holidays.</p> <p>b. My neighbors invited me to their dinner many <b>times</b>.</p> <p>a. Indians had <b>experience</b> with American winters.</p> <p>b. The first winter for the Pilgrims was a bad <b>experience</b>.</p>	<p>The noncount nouns in (a) and the count nouns in (b) have different meanings. In many languages, a completely different word is used.</p>
<p>a. <b>Life</b> in America was difficult.</p> <p>b. The Pilgrims had difficult <b>lives</b>.</p> <p>a. The Pilgrims had a lot of <b>trouble</b> their first winter.</p> <p>b. Do you tell your <b>troubles</b> to your friends?</p> <p>a. The men are watching the football game. They're making a lot of <b>noise</b>.</p> <p>b. There are some loud <b>noises</b> coming from the next room.</p>	<p>Sentences (a) show abstractions. They are noncount nouns.</p> <p>Sentences (b) show specific examples of these nouns. They are count nouns.</p>
<p>a. We put some <b>fruit</b> in the cranberry sauce.</p> <p>b. Oranges and lemons are citrus <b>fruits</b>.</p> <p>a. We prepare a lot of <b>food</b> for Thanksgiving.</p> <p>b. Cranberries and sweet potatoes are typical <b>foods</b> for Thanksgiving.</p>	<p>Sentences (a) refer to the nouns in general. They are noncount nouns.</p> <p>Sentences (b) refer to categories of the noun. They are count nouns.</p>
<p>a. We ate some <b>pie</b> for dessert.</p> <p>b. My friend brought three <b>pies</b> to the Thanksgiving dinner.</p> <p>a. We eat <b>turkey</b> on Thanksgiving.</p> <p>b. The Indians brought many <b>turkeys</b> to the feast.</p>	<p>Sentences (a) refer to a part of the whole. They are noncount nouns.</p> <p>Sentences (b) refer to the whole. They are count nouns.</p> <p>In the case of animals, the count noun usually refers to the animal rather than the food.</p>

**EXERCISE 7** Decide if the noun in parentheses ( ) is count or noncount. If it is a count noun, change it to the plural form. If it is a noncount noun, do not use the plural form.

**EXAMPLE** The Pilgrims wanted freedom.  
(Pilgrim) (freedom)

1. American Indians have a lot of respect for \_\_\_\_\_.  
(nature)

They love \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
(tree) (bird) (fish)

2. Thanksgiving is a celebration of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.  
(peace) (friendship)



3. On Thanksgiving, Americans eat a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ and  
(food)

sometimes gain weight.

4. Americans sometimes eat \_\_\_\_\_ for dessert.  
(pie)

5. Squanto gave the Pilgrims a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about planting  
(advice)

\_\_\_\_\_ and other \_\_\_\_\_. He had a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about  
(corn) (vegetable) (knowledge)  
the land.

6. The Pilgrims didn't have any \_\_\_\_\_ with American agriculture.  
(experience)

7. On the first Thanksgiving, Indians brought \_\_\_\_\_,  
(meat)

\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
(bean) (bread) (berry)

8. The Pilgrims celebrated because they had a lot of good \_\_\_\_\_.  
(fortune)

9. American Indians use \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_.  
(plant) (medicine)

10. My friends went to the Southwest last summer. They

bought American Indian \_\_\_\_\_, such as \_\_\_\_\_  
(jewelry) (ring)  
and \_\_\_\_\_.  
(necklace)

11. Do you have a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about American \_\_\_\_\_?  
(information) (holiday)

# Recipe for Turkey Stuffing

Before  
You Read

1. Do you like to cook?
2. What is a favorite recipe of yours?



CD 2, TR 14

Read the following recipe from a magazine. Pay special attention to quantities.

## Turkey Stuffing<sup>6</sup>

- ¼ cup of butter or olive oil
- 2 cloves of garlic, minced<sup>7</sup>
- 1 cup of sliced mushrooms
- 1 onion, chopped
- 3 stalks of celery, chopped
- ¼ cup bacon pieces
- 4 cups of dry bread, cut into cubes
- ¼ teaspoon of salt
- ¼ teaspoon of pepper
- ¼ teaspoon of dry oregano
- 2 teaspoons of dry parsley
- 1 cup of hot chicken broth



Brown garlic<sup>8</sup> in butter (or olive oil). Add mushrooms and sauté<sup>9</sup>. Add the rest of the vegetables and cook until they begin to soften. Stir bacon pieces into mixture, then lower heat to medium and add bread cubes and seasonings.

Continue cooking for approximately 5 more minutes, stirring continuously.

Add hot chicken broth and mix well. Cover and cook over low heat for at least 30 minutes, stirring frequently.

Use as turkey stuffing and bake with turkey or place in a covered casserole dish and bake for 30 minutes in a 350–375 degree oven.



<sup>6</sup>Stuffing is often cooked inside the turkey.

<sup>7</sup>Minced means cut into very small pieces.

<sup>8</sup>Recipes often leave out articles. For example, this recipe says "brown garlic" instead of "brown the garlic."

<sup>9</sup>To sauté means to fry quickly.



## 5.6 Quantities with Count and Noncount Nouns

We can put a number before a count noun. We cannot put a number before a noncount noun. We use a unit of measure, which we can count—for example, two *cloves* of garlic.

BY CONTAINER	BY PORTION	BY MEASUREMENT <sup>10</sup>	BY SHAPE OR WHOLE PIECE	OTHER
a bottle of water	a slice (piece) of bread	an ounce of sugar	a loaf of bread	a piece of mail
a carton of milk	a piece of meat	a quart of oil	an ear of corn	a piece of furniture
a jar of pickles	a piece of cake	a pound of meat	a piece of fruit	a piece of advice
a bag of flour	a strip of bacon	a gallon of milk	a head of lettuce	a piece of information
a can of soda (pop)	a piece (sheet) of paper	a pint of cream	a candy bar	a work of art
a cup of coffee	a slice of pizza		a tube of toothpaste	a homework assignment
a glass of water	a scoop of ice cream		a bar of soap	
a bowl of soup			a clove of garlic	
			a stalk of celery	

**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks with a specific quantity or unit of measure. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** I drink three glasses of water a day.

- I drink a \_\_\_\_\_ orange juice in the morning.
- I'm going to buy two \_\_\_\_\_ meat to make dinner for the family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ milk is heavy to carry.
- She drinks two \_\_\_\_\_ coffee every morning.
- Buy \_\_\_\_\_ bread for dinner.
- He eats \_\_\_\_\_ fruit a day.
- Some people carry \_\_\_\_\_ water with them.
- I ate two \_\_\_\_\_ cake.
- Let me give you \_\_\_\_\_ advice before you apply to colleges.
- How many \_\_\_\_\_ gas did you buy at the gas station?
- How many \_\_\_\_\_ garlic are you going to use in the recipe?
- The recipe calls for  $\frac{1}{4}$  \_\_\_\_\_ butter or oil.
- The recipe calls for  $\frac{1}{4}$  \_\_\_\_\_ pepper.

<sup>10</sup>For a list of conversions from the American system of measurement to the metric system, see Appendix D.



# Taking the Land from the Native Americans

Before  
You Read

1. Who were the original inhabitants of your native country?
2. Are there any ethnic minorities in your native country? Do they have the respect of the majority population?



American Indian Reservations in the U.S.



CD 2, TR 15

Read the following textbook article. Pay special attention to *there* + a form of *be*.

## Did You Know?

Many place names in the U.S. are American Indian names. Chicago, for example, comes from an Indian word meaning "smelly onion."

Before the arrival of Europeans, **there were** between 10 and 16 million Native Americans in America. Today **there are** fewer than 2 million. What happened to these natives of America?

The friendship between the Indians and Europeans did not last for long. As more English people came to America, they did not need the help of the Indians, as the first group of Pilgrims did. The white people started to take the land away from the Indians. As Indians fought to keep their land, many of them were killed. Also, **there were** many deaths from diseases that Europeans brought to America. In 1830, President Andrew Jackson took the Indians' lands and sent them to live on reservations. Indian children had to learn English. Often they were punished for speaking their own language. As a result, **there are** very few Indians today who speak the language of their ancestors.

Today **there are** about 500 tribes in the U.S., each with its own traditions. **There are** about 300 reservations, but less than half of American Indians live on this land. **There is** a lot of unemployment and poverty on many reservations. As a result, many Indians move to big cities to find work. Many return to their reservations only for special celebrations such as powwows, when Indians wear their traditional clothing and dance to traditional music.

It is becoming harder and harder for Indians to keep their traditions and languages alive.



## 5.7 There + a Form of Be

We use *there* + a form of *be* to introduce a subject, either count or noncount, into the conversation. After the noun, we often give a time or place.

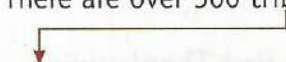
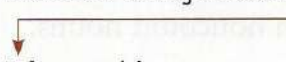

<i>There</i>	<i>Be</i>	<i>A/An/One</i>	<i>Singular Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	is	a	reservation	in Wyoming.
There	is	an	onion	in the recipe.
There	will be	a	football game	on TV tonight.
There	was	one	guest	for dinner.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be</i>	<i>(Quantity Word)</i>	<i>Noncount Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	is	a lot of	unemployment	on some reservations.
There	is	some	garlic	in the recipe for stuffing.
There	was		peace	between the Indians and the Pilgrims.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be</i>	<i>(Quantity Word)</i>	<i>Plural Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	are	500	Indian tribes	in the U.S.
There	were	many	deaths	from diseases after the Europeans arrived.
There	are	a lot of	calories	in a typical Thanksgiving meal.
There	are		reservations	in California.

### Negative Forms

<i>There</i>	<i>Be + Not + A/An</i>	<i>Singular Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	wasn't a	problem	between the Pilgrims and Indians in 1620.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be + No</i>	<i>Singular Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	was no	problem	between the Pilgrims and Indians in 1620.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be + Not + (Any)</i>	<i>Noncount Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	isn't any	milk	in the recipe.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be + No</i>	<i>Noncount Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	is no	milk	in the recipe.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be + Not + (Any)</i>	<i>Plural Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	aren't any	reservations	in Illinois.
<i>There</i>	<i>Be + No</i>	<i>Plural Subject</i>	<i>Complement</i>
There	are no	reservations	in Illinois.



## 5.8 Using *There*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>There's</b> a reservation in Wyoming.  <b>There are</b> reservations in California and Utah.</p>	<p>The contraction for <i>there is</i> = <i>there's</i>.            We don't write a contraction for <i>there are</i>.</p>
<p><b>There is</b> one onion and three celery stalks in the recipe.  <b>There are</b> three celery stalks and one onion in the recipe.  <b>There is</b> dessert and coffee after the dinner.</p>	<p>If two nouns follow <i>there</i>, use a singular verb (<i>is</i>) if the first noun is singular. Use a plural verb (<i>are</i>) if the first noun is plural.</p>
<p><b>Informal:</b> <b>There's</b> a lot of reservations in California.  <b>Formal:</b> <b>There are</b> a lot of reservations in California.</p>	<p>In conversation, you will sometimes hear <i>there's</i> with plural nouns.</p>
<p>There are over 500 tribes in the U.S.    <b>They</b> each have their own traditions.            There's a Navajo reservation in Arizona.    <b>It's</b> very big.            There's a Navajo woman in my chemistry class.    <b>She</b> comes from Arizona.</p>	<p>After we introduce a noun with <i>there</i>, we can continue to speak of this noun with a pronoun (<i>they, it, she, etc.</i>).</p>
<p><b>Is there</b> unemployment on some reservations?            Yes, there is.  <b>Are there</b> any reservations in California?            Yes, there are.            How many Navajo Indians <b>are there</b> in Arizona?</p>	<p>Observe the word order in questions with <i>there</i>.</p>
<p><i>Wrong:</i> <i>There's</i> the Grand Canyon in Arizona.  <i>Right:</i> The Grand Canyon is in Arizona.</p>	<p>Don't use <i>there</i> to introduce a specific or unique noun.</p>



**EXERCISE 9** Fill in the blanks with the correct form and tense.

**EXAMPLE** There are a lot of Indians in Oklahoma.

1. There \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of reservations in California.
2. There \_\_\_\_\_ more American Indians 200 years ago than there \_\_\_\_\_ today.
3. In the beginning, there \_\_\_\_\_ peace between the Indians and the Pilgrims.
4. Later, there \_\_\_\_\_ wars between the Indians and the Europeans who took their land.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ enough food to eat at the first Thanksgiving?  
Yes, there was.
6. How many people \_\_\_\_\_ at the first Thanksgiving celebration?
7. Next week there \_\_\_\_\_ a test on noncount nouns.
8. How many questions \_\_\_\_\_ on the test?

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks with a time or place.

**EXAMPLE** There was a war in my country from 1972 to 1975.

1. There will be a test \_\_\_\_\_
2. There's a lot of snow \_\_\_\_\_
3. There's a lot of rain \_\_\_\_\_
4. There are a lot of people \_\_\_\_\_
5. There are a lot of reservations \_\_\_\_\_
6. There was a presidential election \_\_\_\_\_
7. There are a lot of different languages \_\_\_\_\_
8. There aren't many students \_\_\_\_\_
9. There are a lot of books \_\_\_\_\_
10. There was a war \_\_\_\_\_

# Navajo Code Talkers

Before

You Read

1. Are some languages more complicated than others?
2. Why is a code important during wartime?



CD 2, TR 16

Read the following textbook article. Pay special attention to quantity words.

American Indian languages are very complicated. There are **many** different languages and each one has **several** dialects. **Some** languages, like Navajo, have **no** alphabet or symbols.

Philip Johnston was not an Indian but he grew up on the Navajo reservation and learned a **lot of** their language. Later, when Johnston served in World War I, he understood the importance of developing a code that the enemy could not understand. In World War II, the U.S. was at war with Japan. The Japanese were very skillful at breaking codes. In 1942, Johnston met with an American military general and explained his idea of using the Navajo language in code to send messages. Indians living on Navajo land in the southwest U.S. could speak and understand the language. **Very few** non-Navajos could speak or understand it.

The general agreed to try this idea. The U.S. Marines recruited **200** native speakers of Navajo to create a code based on their language. There were **many** military words that did not exist in the Navajo language, so the Navajo recruits had to develop words for these things. For example, the commanding general was a “war chief”; a battleship was a “whale”; a submarine was an “iron fish.”

In the first **two** days of code talking, more than **800** messages were sent without **any** errors.

During and after the war, the Navajo code talkers got **little** recognition for their great help in World War II. It wasn't until 1992 that the U.S. government honored the Navajo code talkers for their help in winning major battles of the war.





## 5.9 Quantity Expressions—An Overview

We can use quantity expressions to talk about the quantity of count and noncount nouns.

### EXAMPLES

There are about **two million** American Indians today.

There were about **200** code talkers during World War II.

**Very few** non-Navajos could speak the Navajo language.

Navajo code talkers got **little** recognition for their work.

The Navajo language has **no** alphabet.

The Navajo language has **several** dialects.

The Pilgrims had **very little** food during the first winter.

The American Indians had **a lot of** knowledge about the land.

The Pilgrims didn't have **much** knowledge about the land.

**Many** Indians died from disease after the Europeans came.

**Some** Indians today live on reservations.

**EXERCISE 11** Fill in the blanks to complete these statements. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** There are 500 \_\_\_\_\_ **tribes** \_\_\_\_\_ of American Indians in the United States.

- Two hundred native speakers of \_\_\_\_\_ served as code talkers.
- There is no word for “\_\_\_\_\_” in Navajo.
- The Navajo language has no \_\_\_\_\_.
- Before the arrival of people from Europe, there were at least \_\_\_\_\_ American Indians.
- After the first cold winter in America, the Pilgrims didn't have much \_\_\_\_\_.
- Many Pilgrims \_\_\_\_\_ during the first winter.
- Some \_\_\_\_\_ helped the Pilgrims.
- The Indians taught them many \_\_\_\_\_ to help them survive.
- The second year in America was much better. They had a lot of \_\_\_\_\_.
- As more Europeans came to America, many \_\_\_\_\_ lost their land.
- Many Indians can't find work on their reservations. There is a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on a reservation.



Native American at a Powwow



## 5.10 Some, Any, A, No

	EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>Affirmative</b>	There is <b>a</b> big reservation in the Southwest. There is <b>an</b> onion in the recipe.	Use <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> with singular count nouns.
<b>Affirmative</b>	I used <b>some</b> raisins in the recipe. I used <b>some</b> bread in the recipe.	Use <i>some</i> with both plural count nouns and noncount nouns.
<b>Negative</b>	I didn't eat <b>any</b> potatoes. I didn't eat <b>any</b> gravy.	Use <i>any</i> for negatives with both plural count nouns and noncount nouns.
<b>Question</b>	Did the code talkers make <b>any</b> mistakes? Did the enemy get <b>any</b> information?	Use <i>any</i> for questions with both plural count nouns and noncount nouns.
<b>No vs. any</b>	There isn't <b>any</b> sugar in the stuffing. There is <b>no</b> sugar in the stuffing.  There aren't <b>any</b> potatoes in the soup. There are <b>no</b> potatoes in the soup.	Use <i>any</i> after a negative verb. Use <i>no</i> after an affirmative verb.  <i>Wrong:</i> There <i>aren't no</i> potatoes in the soup.

### Language Notes:

- Don't use the indefinite article after *no*.  
*Wrong:* I have no *an* answer to your question.  
*Right:* I have no answer to your question.
- You will sometimes see *any* with a singular count noun.  
Which pen should I use for the test? You can use *any* pen.  
*Any*, in this case, means whichever you want. It doesn't matter which pen.

**EXERCISE 12** Look at the recipe on page 163. Use *there + be + the words given to tell about this recipe. If you use no, delete the article.*

**EXAMPLES** salt  
There's some salt in the recipe.  
  
a sweet potato  
There are no sweet potatoes in the recipe.

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. an onion | 5. mushrooms |
| 2. pepper   | 6. nuts      |
| 3. oil      | 7. carrots   |
| 4. raisins  | 8. milk      |



**EXERCISE 13** Fill in the blanks with *some, any, a, an, or no*.

**EXAMPLE A:** I put some salt on the potatoes.

**B:** Did you put any pepper on the potatoes?

**1. A:** Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ American Indians?

**B:** No, I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ American Indians.

**2. A:** Can you name \_\_\_\_\_ American Indian tribes?

**B:** Yes, I can name \_\_\_\_\_ tribes.

**A:** I can't name \_\_\_\_\_.

**3. A:** Does the Navajo language have \_\_\_\_\_ alphabet?

**B:** No. It has \_\_\_\_\_ alphabet.

**4. A:** I'll make \_\_\_\_\_ pie.

**B:** Can you cook the turkey too?

**A:** Sorry, I can't. I have \_\_\_\_\_ experience cooking a turkey.

**5. A:** I need \_\_\_\_\_ onion.

**B:** Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ carrots?

**A:** Yes, I need \_\_\_\_\_ carrots too.

**6. A:** Do you need \_\_\_\_\_ butter for your recipe?

**B:** No. I don't need \_\_\_\_\_ butter. I'm going to use oil.

**7. A:** Sugar is not good for you, so there's \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in this recipe.

**B:** Is there any honey?

**A:** No. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ honey either.

**B:** Are there \_\_\_\_\_ raisins?

**A:** There are \_\_\_\_\_ raisins either.

## 5.11 A Lot Of, Much, Many

	EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>A lot of</b> American Indians served in the military. It takes <b>a lot of</b> time to develop a code.	Use <i>a lot of</i> with count and noncount nouns.
<b>Affirmative</b>	On Thanksgiving, we give thanks for the <b>many</b> good things in our lives. We eat <b>a lot of</b> food on Thanksgiving.	Use <i>many</i> with count nouns. Use <i>a lot of</i> with noncount nouns in affirmative statements. <i>Much</i> is rare in affirmative statements.
<b>Negative</b>	Today the Indians don't have <b>much</b> land. The Pilgrims didn't have <b>many</b> skills.	Use <i>much</i> with noncount nouns. Use <i>many</i> with count nouns.
<b>Negative</b>	Today the Indians don't have <b>a lot of</b> land. The Pilgrims didn't have <b>a lot of</b> skills.	Use <i>a lot of</i> with both count and noncount nouns.
<b>Question</b>	Did you eat <b>much</b> turkey? Did you eat <b>many</b> cookies?	Use <i>much</i> with noncount nouns. Use <i>many</i> with count nouns.
<b>Question</b>	Did you eat <b>a lot of</b> turkey? Did you eat <b>a lot of</b> cookies?	Use <i>a lot of</i> with both count and noncount nouns.
<b>Question</b>	<b>How much</b> experience did the code talkers have? <b>How many</b> code talkers were in the military?	Use <i>how much</i> with noncount nouns. Use <i>how many</i> with count nouns.

### Language Note:

When the noun is omitted (in the following sentence, **water**), use *a lot*, not *a lot of*.  
I usually drink **a lot of** water, but I didn't drink **a lot** today.

**EXERCISE 14** Fill in the blanks with *much*, *many*, or *a lot of*. Avoid *much* in affirmative statements. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.



CD 2, TR 17

**A:** Did you prepare a lot of food for Thanksgiving?  
(example)

**B:** No, I didn't prepare \_\_\_\_\_.  
(1)

**A:** You didn't? Why not?

**B:** This year I didn't invite \_\_\_\_\_ people. I just invited my immediate family.  
(2)

**A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ people are there in your immediate family?  
(3)

**B:** Just seven. I bought a twelve-pound turkey. It was more than enough.



(continued)



**A:** I don't know how to prepare a turkey. Is it \_\_\_\_\_ work  
(4) to prepare a turkey?

**B:** Not really. But you have to cook it for \_\_\_\_\_ hours.  
(5)

**A:** Did you make \_\_\_\_\_ other dishes, like sweet potatoes  
(6) and cranberry sauce?

**B:** No. Each person in my family made something. That way I didn't  
have \_\_\_\_\_ work. But we had \_\_\_\_\_ work cleaning  
(7) (8) up. There were \_\_\_\_\_ dirty dishes. I hate washing dishes  
(9) after a big dinner, so I'm planning to buy a dishwasher soon.

**A:** Does a dishwasher cost \_\_\_\_\_ money?  
(10)

**B:** Yes, but I'd like to have one for that one day a year.

**A:** Maybe you should just use paper plates.

**B:** I know \_\_\_\_\_ people do that, but I want my dinner to look  
(11) elegant. For me, paper plates are for picnics.

## 5.12 A Lot Of vs. Too Much/Too Many

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. <b>A lot of</b> Navajo Indians live in the Southwest. b. My friend left the reservation because there was <b>too much</b> unemployment and she couldn't find a job.	Sentences (a) show a large quantity. No problem is presented. <i>A lot of</i> has a neutral tone.
a. <b>A lot of</b> people came to dinner. We all had a great time. b. <b>Too many</b> people came to dinner. There wasn't enough food for everyone.	Sentences (b) show an excessive quantity. A problem is presented or implied. A sentence with <i>too much/too many</i> can have a complaining tone.
I feel sick. I ate <b>too much</b> .	We can put <i>too much</i> at the end of a verb phrase.
<b>Language Note:</b> Sometimes you can use <i>a lot of</i> in place of <i>too much/too many</i> . <b>Too many</b> people came to dinner. There wasn't enough food for everyone. <b>A lot of</b> people came to dinner. There wasn't enough food for everyone.	

**EXERCISE 15** Fill in the blanks with *a lot of*, *too much*, or *too many*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**EXAMPLE** I love garlic. This recipe calls for a lot of garlic, so it's going to be delicious.

1. I can't eat this soup. It has \_\_\_\_\_ salt.
2. A Thanksgiving dinner has about 3,000 calories. Most people eat \_\_\_\_\_ and don't feel so good afterwards.
3. You put \_\_\_\_\_ pepper in the potatoes, and they taste terrible.
4. She's going to bake a cherry pie. She needs \_\_\_\_\_ cherries.
5. I think I ate \_\_\_\_\_ pieces of pumpkin pie. Now I feel sick.
6. Before the Europeans arrived, there were \_\_\_\_\_ Indians in America.
7. There are \_\_\_\_\_ American Indian languages.
8. The Navajo code talkers gave \_\_\_\_\_ help during World War II.
9. The code talkers sent \_\_\_\_\_ messages successfully.

**EXERCISE 16** Use *a lot of*, *too much*, or *too many* to fill in the blanks in the story below. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.



CD 2, TR 18

My name is Coleen Finn. I'm a Ho-chunk Indian. My tribal land is in Wisconsin. But I live in Chicago because there is too much unemployment on my tribal land, and I can't find a good job there. There are \_\_\_\_\_ (1) opportunities in Chicago, and I found a job as a secretary in the English Department at Truman College. I like my job very much. I have \_\_\_\_\_ responsibilities and I love the challenge.

I like Chicago, but I miss my land, where I still have \_\_\_\_\_ (2) relatives and friends. I often go back to visit them whenever I get tired of life in Chicago. My friends and I have \_\_\_\_\_ (3) fun together, talking, cooking our native food, walking in nature, and attending Indian ceremonies, such as powwows. I need to get away from Chicago once in a while to feel closer to nature. Even though there are \_\_\_\_\_ (4) nice things about Chicago, there are \_\_\_\_\_ (5) cars and trucks in the big city and there is \_\_\_\_\_ (6) pollution. A weekend with my tribe gives me \_\_\_\_\_ (7) time to relax and smell fresh air.



**EXERCISE 17** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks after *too* with *much* or *many*. Then complete the statement.

**EXAMPLE** If I drink too much coffee, I won't be able to sleep tonight.

1. If I try to memorize too \_\_\_\_\_ words, \_\_\_\_\_
2. If I make too \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes on my homework, \_\_\_\_\_
3. If I spend too \_\_\_\_\_ money on clothes, \_\_\_\_\_
4. If I spend too \_\_\_\_\_ time with my friends, \_\_\_\_\_

## 5.13 A Few, Several, A Little

	EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>Count</b>	The Navajo language has <b>several</b> dialects. She speaks <b>a few</b> languages. Put <b>a few</b> teaspoons of salt in the potato recipe.	Use <i>a few</i> or <i>several</i> with count nouns or with quantities that describe noncount nouns ( <i>teaspoon, cup, bowl, piece, etc.</i> ).
<b>Noncount</b>	He put <b>a little</b> salt in the potatoes. Please add <b>a little</b> milk to the coffee.	Use <i>a little</i> with noncount nouns.

**EXERCISE 18** Fill in the blanks with *a few*, *several*, or *a little*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**EXAMPLE** We have a little information about American Indians.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Indians came to help the Pilgrims.
2. They taught the Pilgrims \_\_\_\_\_ skills for planting.
3. The article gave us \_\_\_\_\_ information about the code talkers.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Navajo Indians developed a code.
5. It took \_\_\_\_\_ time to develop the code.
6. The Navajos had to create \_\_\_\_\_ new words.
7. There were \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese experts at code breaking.



## 5.14 A Few vs. Few; A Little vs. Little

A *few* and *a little* have a neutral tone. *Few* and *little* (without *a*) have a negative emphasis.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>a. <b>A few</b> Indians helped the Pilgrims.</p> <p>b. <b>Few</b> non-Navajos could speak the Navajo language.</p> <p>c. <b>Very few</b> young American Indians speak the language of their ancestors.</p>	<p>In example (a), <i>a few</i> means some or enough. <i>A few</i> has a neutral tone.</p> <p>In examples (b) and (c), <i>few</i> and <i>very few</i> mean not enough; almost none. We often use <i>very</i> before <i>few</i>.</p>
<p>a. There's <b>a little</b> food in the refrigerator. Let's make a sandwich.</p> <p>b. The Navajo code talkers got <b>little</b> recognition for their help in World War II.</p> <p>c. The Pilgrims had <b>very little</b> food the first winter.</p>	<p>In example (a), <i>a little</i> means some or enough. <i>A little</i> has a neutral tone.</p> <p>In examples (b) and (c), <i>little</i> and <i>very little</i> mean not enough; almost none. We often use <i>very</i> before <i>little</i>.</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> Whether something is enough or not enough does not depend on the quantity. It depends on the perspective of the person. Is the glass half empty or half full?</p> <p>☺ One person may say the glass is half full. He sees something positive about the quantity of water in the glass: The glass has <i>a little</i> water.</p> <p>☹ Another person may say the glass is half empty. He sees something negative about the quantity of water in the glass: The glass has (<i>very</i>) <i>little</i> water.</p>	



### EXERCISE 19 Fill in the blanks with *a little*, *very little*, *a few*, or *very few*.

**EXAMPLE 1. A:** We read about American Indians in this lesson. Did you know that Eskimos are Native Americans too?

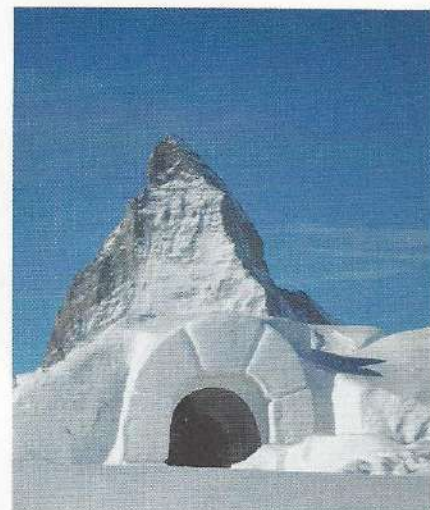
**B:** Really? I know very little about Eskimos.  
(example)  
In fact, I know almost nothing.

**A:** They live in Alaska, Canada, and Greenland.  
They make their houses out of ice.

**B:** What do they eat? \_\_\_\_\_ plants grow  
(1)  
in the cold regions.

**A:** They use a lot of sea animals for food. They eat whale, seal, and fish.

**B:** I like to eat \_\_\_\_\_ fish, but I can't imagine eating it all the  
(2)  
time. And I really can't imagine eating whale and seal. How do you know so much about Eskimos?



(continued)



**A:** I saw the movie *Eskimo*. I learned \_\_\_\_\_ about Eskimos from the movie. And I read \_\_\_\_\_ books. Do you want to borrow my books?

**B:** Uh, no thanks.

**2. A:** Let's prepare the Thanksgiving dinner together. I always like to get \_\_\_\_\_ help for the Thanksgiving holiday.

**B:** I don't think I'm going to be much help. You know I have \_\_\_\_\_ experience in the kitchen.

**A:** Don't worry. You can be my assistant.

**B:** OK. What can I do?

**A:** I need to put \_\_\_\_\_ oil on the turkey.

**B:** There's \_\_\_\_\_ oil in the house. I don't think it's going to be enough.

**A:** Don't worry. I have another bottle. Can you get \_\_\_\_\_ things out of the cabinet for me?

**B:** Sure.

**A:** Get the spices. We're going to put \_\_\_\_\_ spices on the turkey.

**B:** What else do you need?

**A:** I need \_\_\_\_\_ string to tie the legs. Then the turkey will be ready to go into the oven.

**B:** Is there anything else I can do?

**A:** Yes. I need you to go to the store and get \_\_\_\_\_ things for me. Here's a list.

**B:** Shopping! That's something I can do well.

**A:** Why is it that \_\_\_\_\_ men cook the turkey? In fact, I almost never see a man prepare the Thanksgiving dinner. It seems like it's always a woman's job.

**3. A:** Do you speak another language?

**B:** I speak \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish. I also studied Latin in high school.

**A:** Who speaks Latin?

**B:** No one does anymore. It's dead as a spoken language. That's why \_\_\_\_\_ high schools offer Latin classes.  
(15)

**A:** Is it like the Navajo language?

**B:** No. The Navajo language is not a dead language. However, today \_\_\_\_\_ people speak it anymore. Most American Indians speak English.  
(16)

**EXERCISE 20** **ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with "Are there . . . ?" and the words given about another student's hometown. The other student will answer with an expression of quantity. Practice count nouns.

**EXAMPLE** museums

**A:** Are there any museums in your hometown?

**B:** Yes. There are a lot of (a few, three) museums in my hometown.

OR

No. There aren't any museums in my hometown.

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. department stores     | 6. open markets        |
| 2. fast-food restaurants | 7. hospitals           |
| 3. homeless people       | 8. universities        |
| 4. skyscrapers           | 9. American businesses |
| 5. supermarkets          | 10. bridges            |

**EXERCISE 21** **ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with "Is there . . . ?" and the words given about another student's native country or hometown. The other student will answer with an expression of quantity. Practice noncount nouns.

**EXAMPLE** petroleum/in your native country

**A:** Is there much petroleum in your native country?

**B:** Yes. There's lot of petroleum in my native country.

OR

No. There isn't much petroleum in my native country.

**In Your Native Country**

**In Your Hometown**

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1. petroleum   | 5. traffic   |
| 2. industry    | 6. rain      |
| 3. agriculture | 7. pollution |
| 4. tourism     | 8. noise     |



**EXERCISE 22**

**ABOUT YOU** Ask a student a question with "Do you have . . . ?" and the words given. The other student will answer. Practice both count and noncount nouns.

**EXAMPLES** American friends

**A:** Do you have any American friends?

**B:** Yes. I have many (OR a lot of) American friends.

OR

No. I don't have many American friends.

free time

**A:** Do you have a lot of free time?

**B:** Yes. I have some free time.

OR

No. I have very little free time.

1. problems in the U.S.
2. friends
3. relatives in New York
4. time to relax
5. brothers and sisters (siblings)
6. experience with small children
7. questions about American customs
8. trouble with English pronunciation
9. information about points of interest in this city
10. knowledge about computer programming

**EXERCISE 23**

**ABOUT YOU** Cross out the phrase that doesn't fit and fill in the blanks with an expression of quantity to make a true statement about another country you know about. Discuss your answers.

**EXAMPLE** There's/There isn't much unemployment in Korea.

1. There's/There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ opportunity to make money in \_\_\_\_\_.
2. There are/There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ divorced people in \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There are/There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ foreigners in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. There's/There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ freedom in \_\_\_\_\_.
5. There are/There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ American cars in \_\_\_\_\_.
6. There are/There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ political problems in \_\_\_\_\_.
7. There is/There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ unemployment in \_\_\_\_\_.
8. There is/There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ crime in \_\_\_\_\_.

# Summary of Lesson 5

1. Study the words that are used before count and noncount nouns.

SINGULAR COUNT	PLURAL COUNT	NONCOUNT
a tomato	some tomatoes	some coffee
no tomato	no tomatoes	no coffee
	any tomatoes (with questions and negatives)	any coffee
	a lot of tomatoes	a lot of coffee
	many tomatoes	much coffee (with questions and negatives)
	a few tomatoes	a little coffee
	several tomatoes	
	How many tomatoes?	How much coffee?

2. Sentences with *there*

**Count**

There's an onion in the recipe.

There are two carrots in the recipe.

**Noncount**

There's some oil in the recipe.

How much salt is there in the recipe?

3. *Too Much/Too Many/A Lot Of*

- *A lot of* + count or noncount noun (no problem is presented)

I cooked **a lot of** potatoes for Thanksgiving dinner.

I put **a lot of** butter on the potatoes.

- *Too much* + noncount noun (a problem is presented)

She doesn't qualify for financial aid because her parents make **too much** money.

- *Too many* + count noun (a problem is presented)

There are **too many** students in the class. The teacher doesn't have time to help everyone.



## Editing Advice

1. Some plural forms are irregular and don't take -s.

She has two childrens.

2. Use a singular noun and verb after *every*.

Every children<sup>s</sup> need<sup>s</sup> love.

3. Use the plural form of the noun after *one of*.

One of my sister<sup>s</sup> is a lawyer.

4. Don't use *a* or *an* before a plural noun.

(some)  
She bought a new socks.

5. Don't put *a* or *an* before a noncount noun.

some OR a piece of  
I want to give you an advice.

6. A noncount noun is always singular.

a lot of  
I have many homeworks to do.  
pieces of  
She bought three furnitures.

7. Use *there is* or *there are* to introduce a noun.

There are  
Are a lot of people in China.

8. Be careful with *there* and *they're*. They sound the same.

There  
They're are many problems in the world.

9. Don't use a specific noun after *there is/there are*.

T is  
There's the Golden Gate bridge in San Francisco.

10. Include *of* with a unit of measure.

of  
He bought three tubes toothpaste.

11. Omit *of* after *a lot* when the noun is omitted.

I have a lot of time, but my brother doesn't have a lot of.

12. Use a *little/a few* to mean *some*. Use *little/few* to mean *not enough*.

(very)

He can't help you because he has a little time.

13. Don't use *too much* or *too many* if the quantity doesn't present a problem.

a lot of

He's a lucky man. He has ~~too many~~ friends.

14. Don't confuse *too* and *too much/many*.

The potatoes are ~~too much~~ salty. I can't eat them.

15. Don't use a double negative.

any

He doesn't have ~~no~~ money. OR *He has no money.*

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

I love American Thanksgiving. Every ~~years~~, the whole family comes to our house for this holiday and ~~a few~~ other holidays. But Thanksgiving is my favorite. ~~There are~~ a lot of ~~childrens~~ in my family and they love to see each other on Thanksgiving. They don't have ~~many~~ time to see each other the rest of the year because of school. It's so joyful to have ~~too many~~ children in the house ~~few~~ times a year. ~~There's~~ a lot of ~~noise~~ in the house when ~~they're~~ here, but we don't mind.

We all bring some ~~foods~~. ~~One of my sister~~ always makes ~~a~~ pumpkin pie. Her husband always makes ~~a~~ cookies in the shape of turkeys. My other sister makes cranberry sauce. She uses a lot of ~~sugars~~ and sometimes it's ~~too much~~ sweet, but I never say anything. My brother doesn't like to cook, so he brings ~~a lot fresh fruit~~. My cousin brings about 10 big ~~bottles~~ soda. I prepare the sweet ~~potatoes~~. My mother always makes the turkey. It takes ~~much time~~ to cook a big turkey.



We have a lot to prepare before Thanksgiving. My mother has very little time the week before because of her job. But I have a lot of because I don't have no homeworks that week. So I clean the house. My father likes to help but he has very few experience in the kitchen, so my mother asks him to do the shopping. He doesn't have much experience shopping either, so she always gives him an advice about shopping with a list. But he always forgets to take the list and buys too much. Last year he bought a 50-pound bag of rice that we still haven't finished!

It's always fun to spend Thanksgiving with too many people that we love. But there's one thing I don't like: they're are always a lot of dishes to wash afterwards.

## Lesson 5 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with the singular or plural form of the word in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** The Pilgrims didn't have a lot of experience with American land.  
(experience)

- The Indians had many \_\_\_\_\_ with white \_\_\_\_\_ over their land.  
(war) (person)
- Some \_\_\_\_\_ have a big problem with \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. There aren't enough \_\_\_\_\_ for everyone.  
(reservation) (unemployment) (poverty) (job)
- My father gave me a lot of \_\_\_\_\_. He told me that there are more \_\_\_\_\_ in big \_\_\_\_\_ than on reservations.  
(advice) (job) (city)
- We like to visit the art museum. We like to see the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ by famous \_\_\_\_\_. We like all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(sculpture) (painting) (artist) (art)
- My brother likes all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_. He has a large collection of \_\_\_\_\_.  
(music) (CD)

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate measurement of quantity. In some cases, several answers are possible.

**EXAMPLE** I bought a loaf of bread.

1. I drank a \_\_\_\_\_ of tea.
2. She drank a \_\_\_\_\_ of milk.
3. I usually put a \_\_\_\_\_ of sugar in my coffee.
4. There's a \_\_\_\_\_ of milk in the refrigerator.
5. I'm going to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ of furniture for my living room.
6. The teacher gave a long homework \_\_\_\_\_.
7. My father gave me an important \_\_\_\_\_ of advice.
8. I drank three \_\_\_\_\_ of water today.
9. I need a \_\_\_\_\_ of paper to write my composition.
10. We need to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ of soap.

**PART 3** Read this composition by an American Indian. Circle the correct words to complete the composition.

My name is Joseph Falling Snow.

I'm (an, a, any) Native American from  
(example)  
a Sioux<sup>11</sup> reservation in South Dakota.

I don't live in South Dakota anymore  
because I couldn't find (a, any, no) job.  
(1)

There's (a little, a few, very little, very few)  
(2)  
work on my reservation. There's

(much, a lot of, many) poverty. My uncle  
(3)  
gave me (a, an, some, any) good advice.  
(4)

He told me to go to Minneapolis to find (a, an, some) job. Minneapolis is a  
(5)  
big city, so there are (much, many, any) job opportunities there. It was easy  
(6)  
for me to find a job as a carpenter. I had (no, not, any) trouble finding a job  
(7)  
because I have (a lot of, many, much) experience.  
(8)



<sup>11</sup>Sioux is pronounced /su/.



My native language is Lakota, but I know (*any, a few, very few*) words in my language. Most of the people on my reservation speak English.

(*A few, Any, A little*) older people still speak Lakota, but the language is dying out as the older people die.

(*A few, A little, Few, Little*) times a year, I go back to the reservation for a powwow. We wear our native costumes and dance our native dances. It gets very crowded at these times because (*much, any, a lot of*) people from our reservation and nearby reservations attend this celebration. We have (*much, many, a lot of*) fun.

## Expansion

### Classroom

#### Activities

**1** Work with a partner. Imagine that you have to spend a few weeks alone on a deserted island. You can take 15 things with you. What will you need to survive? Give reasons for each item.

**EXAMPLE** I'll take a lot of water because I can't drink ocean water. It has salt in it.

**2** Game: Where am I?

**Teacher:** Write these words on separate index cards: *at the airport, downtown, at the library, at a supermarket, at a department store, on the highway, at the zoo, at church, at the beach, at home, on an elevator, on a bus, on an airplane, at the post office, and in the school cafeteria.*

**Students:** One student picks an index card with a place name and says, "Where am I?" Other students have to guess where he/she is by asking questions.

**EXAMPLES** Are you indoors or outdoors?  
Are there a lot of cars in this place?  
Is it noisy in this place?  
Are there a lot of people in this place?

**3** Find a partner. Talk about the food you eat on a holiday or special day. Describe the ingredients of this food.

## Talk

### About It

Read the following quotes and discuss what they mean to you.

① "Once I was in a big city and I saw a very large house. They told me it was a bank and that the white men place their money there to be taken care of, and that by and by they got it back with interest. We are Indians and we have no such bank. When we have plenty of money or blankets, we give them away to other chiefs and people, and by and by they return them with interest, and our hearts feel good. Our way of giving is our bank."

—Chief Maquinna, Nootka tribe

② "Treat the Earth well. It was not given to you by your parents; it was loaned to you by your children." (*Kenyan proverb*)

③ "Today is a time of celebrating for you—a time of looking back to the first days of white people in America. But it is not a time of celebrating for me. It is with a heavy heart that I look back upon what happened to my people. When the Pilgrims arrived, we, the Wampanoags, welcomed them with open arms, little knowing that it was the beginning of the end. . . . Let us always remember, the Indian is and was just as human as the white people."

*"From a speech by a Wampanoag Indian given on Thanksgiving in 1970 in Massachusetts, at the 350th anniversary of the Pilgrims' arrival in America."*

## Write

### About It

① Write about an ethnic minority in your native country or another country you know about. Where and how do these people live? Use expressions of quantity.

② Write a paragraph telling about the advantages or disadvantages of living in a city. You may write about pollution, job opportunities, weather, traffic, transportation, and crime. Use expressions of quantity.



**3 Write about a holiday in your country. How do you celebrate it?**

### The New Year Celebration in Vietnam

In my country, Vietnam, we celebrate the New Year (*Tet*) in a very special way. It's the most important day of the year. We follow the lunar calendar and New Year comes at the end of January or the beginning of February. It's not like the American New Year at all. We spend a lot of time preparing for this day...



**For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.**

## Lesson

# 6

**Grammar**  
**Adjectives**

**Noun Modifiers**

**Adverbs**

*Too/Enough/Very/A Lot Of*

**Context**  
**Health**





# Obesity: A National Problem

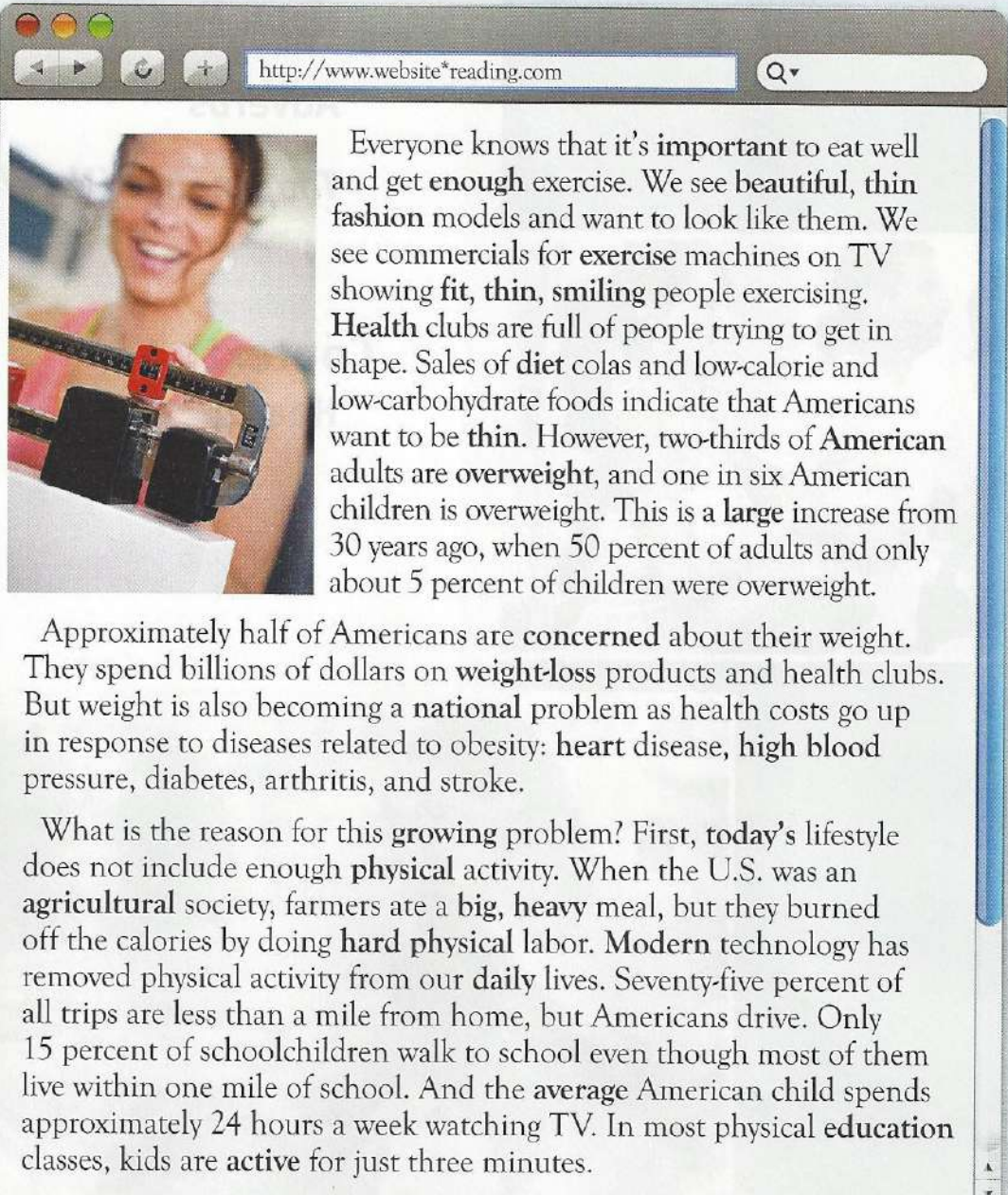
## Before You Read

1. Do you ever eat at fast-food restaurants?
2. What kind of food commercials do you see on TV?



CD 2, TR 19

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to adjectives and noun modifiers.



Everyone knows that it's **important** to eat well and get **enough** exercise. We see **beautiful, thin** fashion models and want to look like them. We see commercials for **exercise** machines on TV showing **fit, thin, smiling** people exercising. **Health** clubs are full of people trying to get in shape. Sales of **diet** colas and low-calorie and low-carbohydrate foods indicate that Americans want to be **thin**. However, two-thirds of **American** adults are **overweight**, and one in six American children is overweight. This is a **large** increase from 30 years ago, when 50 percent of adults and only about 5 percent of children were overweight.

Approximately half of Americans are **concerned** about their weight. They spend billions of dollars on **weight-loss** products and health clubs. But weight is also becoming a **national** problem as health costs go up in response to diseases related to obesity: **heart** disease, **high** blood pressure, diabetes, arthritis, and stroke.

What is the reason for this **growing** problem? First, **today's** lifestyle does not include enough **physical** activity. When the U.S. was an **agricultural** society, farmers ate a **big, heavy** meal, but they burned off the calories by doing **hard** physical labor. **Modern** technology has removed physical activity from our **daily** lives. Seventy-five percent of all trips are less than a mile from home, but Americans drive. Only 15 percent of schoolchildren walk to school even though most of them live within one mile of school. And the **average** American child spends approximately 24 hours a week watching TV. In most physical **education** classes, kids are **active** for just three minutes.

### Did You Know?

In 1969, approximately half of all schoolchildren walked or bicycled to or from school, and 87% of those living within 1 mile of school walked or bicycled.



*Quote from public health expert, Dr. David Katz:*

*"Today's kids may be the first generation in history whose life expectancy is... less than that of their parents."*

Another reason for the **weight** problem is the American diet. The average child sees more than 10,000 food commercials a year. Most of these are for high-calorie foods, such as **sweetened** cereals, **sugary** soft drinks, **salty** chips, and other **snack** foods. We call these **unhealthy** foods "**junk**" food. Children and adults often prefer junk food.

Adults have **busy** lives and depend on **fast** food. The supermarkets are filled with **cheap**, **tasty** food that is **easy** to prepare and **high** in calories.

Obesity is quickly becoming the number one cause of **preventable** death.

### What's Your Body Mass Index?

Body Mass Index (BMI) helps to measure if a person is overweight or not.

$$\frac{\text{weight in pounds}}{(\text{height in inches})^2} \times 703$$

**Example:**

$$\frac{160 \text{ lbs.}}{(69 \text{ in.})^2} \times 703 = 23.6 \text{ BMI}$$

BMI	Status
Below 18.5	Underweight
18.5-24.9	Normal
25.0-29.9	Overweight
30.0-39.9	Obese
40 and above	Extremely obese



## 6.1 Adjectives

An adjective describes a noun.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>We ate a <b>big</b> meal. People need <b>physical</b> activity.</p>	<p>An adjective can come before a noun.</p>
<p>a. Farmers ate a <b>big, heavy</b> meal. a. We see <b>beautiful, thin</b> models. b. People used to do <b>hard physical</b> labor. b. The <b>average American</b> child watches a lot of TV.</p>	<p>Two adjectives can come before a noun. In examples (a), we put a comma between the two adjectives because we can reverse the order of the adjectives without changing the meaning. In examples (b), we don't use a comma because we can't reverse the order of the adjectives.</p>
<p>Fast food is <b>cheap</b>. Chips are <b>salty</b>. Burgers taste <b>delicious</b>. You look <b>healthy</b>.</p>	<p>An adjective can come after <i>be</i>, <i>seem</i>, and the sense-perception verbs: <i>look</i>, <i>sound</i>, <i>smell</i>, <i>taste</i>, or <i>feel</i>.</p>
<p>It is <b>important</b> to eat well. It is <b>easy</b> to gain weight if you eat junk food.</p>	<p>An adjective can come after impersonal expressions beginning with <i>it + be</i>.</p>
<p>Are you <b>concerned</b> about your weight? I'm <b>tired</b> after work. Supermarkets are <b>filled</b> with easy-to-prepare foods.</p>	<p>Some <i>-ed</i> words are adjectives: <i>tired</i>, <i>worried</i>, <i>located</i>, <i>crowded</i>, <i>married</i>, <i>divorced</i>, <i>excited</i>, <i>disappointed</i>, <i>finished</i>, <i>frightened</i>, <i>filled</i>, and <i>concerned</i>.</p>
<p>We read an <b>interesting</b> article about weight. Obesity is a <b>growing</b> problem in the U.S. <b>Working</b> parents often don't have time to prepare a good meal for their children.</p>	<p>Some <i>-ing</i> words are adjectives: <i>interesting</i>, <i>growing</i>, <i>exciting</i>, <i>boring</i>, and <i>working</i>.</p>
<p>She is a <b>thin</b> model. We often see <b>thin</b> models on TV.</p>	<p>Do not make adjectives plural.</p>
<p>Fast food is <b>very</b> fattening. I'm <b>so</b> tired. Some Americans are <b>quite</b> fat. People used to do <b>extremely</b> hard physical labor.</p>	<p><i>Very</i>, <i>so</i>, <i>quite</i>, and <i>extremely</i> can come before adjectives.</p>
<p>I was <b>kind of</b> tired after work, so I just watched TV. We had a <b>real</b> delicious meal. I had a <b>pretty</b> hard day.</p>	<p>Conversational words that come before adjectives are: <i>pretty</i>, <i>sort of</i>, <i>kind of</i>, and <i>real</i>.</p>
<p>Do you want a big pizza or a small <b>one</b>? Do you prefer the purple grapes or the green <b>ones</b>?</p>	<p>After an adjective, we can substitute a singular noun with <i>one</i> and a plural noun with <i>ones</i>.</p>



**EXERCISE 1** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** Burgers and fries are high in calories.

1. Fries are cooked in oil. They are very \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I ate a terrible meal and I got \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Do you want a large coffee or a small \_\_\_\_\_?
4. She's very \_\_\_\_\_ about her children's health because they prefer candy to fruit.
5. I didn't sleep at all last night. I'm very \_\_\_\_\_ today.
6. Have a piece of fresh apple pie. I just had a piece. It \_\_\_\_\_ good.
7. Potato chips are very \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Ice cream is \_\_\_\_\_ in calories.
9. Most Americans have \_\_\_\_\_ lives and don't make the time to eat well.
10. Obesity in the U.S. is a \_\_\_\_\_ problem. It is a much bigger problem today than it was 30 years ago.

**EXERCISE 2** Circle the correct words in italics to complete this conversation.



CD 2, TR 20

A husband (H) and wife (W) are discussing weight.

**H:** We're gaining weight. We used to be (*thin* / *thins*), but when we got (*marry* / *married*), we started to gain weight.

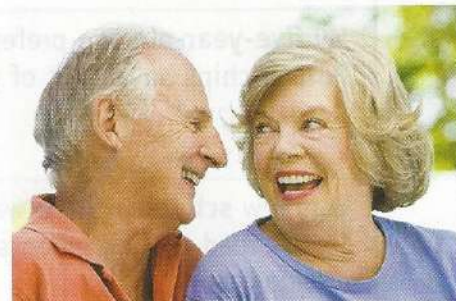
**W:** Let's go jogging after work. There's a (*beautiful park* / *park beautiful*) where we can go. It's (*locate* / *located*) just a few blocks away from our apartment.

**H:** But after work I'm always too (*tire* / *tired*). I just want to eat dinner and watch TV.

**W:** It's not good to eat a big meal so late at night. I know that's what most Americans do, but in other countries people eat a big meal during the day and (*a small one* / *a small*) at night.

**H:** What difference does it make?

(continued)





- W:** If we eat a big meal in the middle of the day, we have the rest of the day to burn off the calories.
- H:** I'm sure that's *(an idea very good / a very good idea)* but I don't have time to eat a big meal in the middle of the day. My lunch break is *(kind / kind of)* short.
- W:** We should cook more at home. We're always eating out in *(expensive / expensives)* restaurants that have *(fatty / fattied)* foods.
- H:** Maybe doctors will find a pill that will make us thin with no effort.
- W:** You know what they say, "No pain, no gain." It takes a lot of effort to lose weight.

## 6.2 Noun Modifiers

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Do you have an <b>exercise machine</b> ? A <b>farm worker</b> gets a lot of exercise. Some people eat at <b>fast-food restaurants</b> . I joined a <b>health club</b> . <b>Fashion models</b> are very thin.	A noun can modify (describe) another noun. The second noun is more general than the first. An <i>exercise machine</i> is a machine. A <i>leg exercise</i> is an exercise.
I bought new <b>running</b> shoes. Do you ever use the <b>swimming</b> pool?	Sometimes a gerund describes a noun. It shows the purpose of the noun.
My <b>five-year-old</b> son prefers candy to fruit. <b>Potato</b> chips have a lot of grease.	The first noun is always singular. A <b>five-year-old</b> son is a son who is five years old. <b>Potato</b> chips are chips made from <b>potatoes</b> .
Very few <b>schoolchildren</b> walk to school. I can't read the ingredients without my <b>eyeglasses</b> .	Sometimes we write the two nouns as one word. The noun modifier and the noun become a compound word.
Do you have your <b>driver's</b> license? I can't understand the <b>owner's</b> manual for my new DVD player. <b>Today's</b> lifestyle doesn't include much physical activity.	Sometimes a possessive noun describes a noun.
<b>Pronunciation Note:</b> When a noun describes a noun, the first noun usually receives the greater emphasis in speaking. I wear my <b>running</b> shoes when I go to the <b>health</b> club and use the <b>exercise</b> machines.	

**EXERCISE 3** Find the noun modifiers in the reading on pages 190–191. Underline them.

**EXERCISE 4** A mother (M) and son (S) are shopping at a big supermarket. Fill in the blanks by putting the nouns in parentheses ( ) in the correct order. Remember to use the singular form for the first noun.



**S:** What are we going to buy today? Just a few things?

**M:** No. We need a lot. Let's take a shopping cart.  
(example: cart/shopping)

**S:** Can I sit in the \_\_\_\_\_?  
(1 child/seat)

**M:** You're much too big. You're a six-  
\_\_\_\_\_ boy.  
(2 years/old)

**S:** Mom, buy me that cereal. It looks good.

I saw it on a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(3 commercial/TV)

**M:** Let's read the ingredients on the \_\_\_\_\_ first. I want to  
see the \_\_\_\_\_ before we buy it. Let me put on my  
(4 cereal/box)  
(5 content/sugar)

\_\_\_\_\_. Oh, dear. This cereal has 20 grams of sugar.  
(6 glasses/eyes)

**S:** But I like sugar, Mom.

**M:** You know it causes \_\_\_\_\_. Remember what the  
dentist told you?  
(7 teeth/decay)

**S:** But I brush my teeth once a day.

**M:** I want you to use your \_\_\_\_\_ after every meal, not  
just once a day.  
(8 teeth/brush)

**S:** Mom, can we buy those \_\_\_\_\_?  
(9 chips/potatoes)

**M:** They have too much fat.

**S:** How about some soda?

**M:** You should drink more juice. How about some \_\_\_\_\_?  
(10 juice/oranges)

**S:** I don't like juice.

**M:** It seems you don't like anything that's good for you. Maybe we  
should shop at the \_\_\_\_\_ store next time.  
(11 food/health)

**S:** Oh, Mom, you're no fun.

**M:** Let's get in the \_\_\_\_\_ and pay now.  
(12 line/check-out)





# Obesity: The Solution

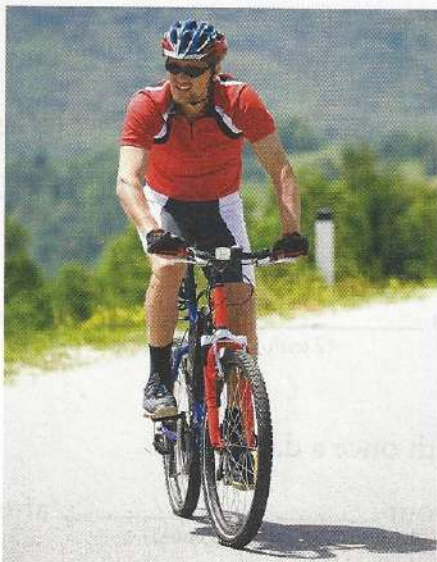
## Before You Read

1. Where and when do you eat your big meal of the day?
2. When you see commercials for food on TV, do you want to buy that food?



CD 2, TR 22

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to adverbs.



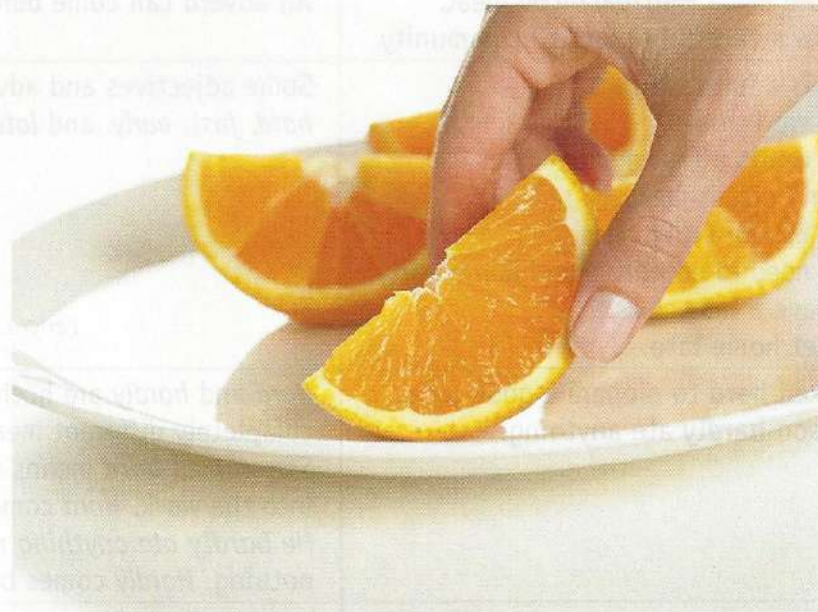
Millions of Americans are overweight. Health experts agree that the problem comes from a combination of things: the kind of food we eat, our lifestyle, and even technology. Experts have the following recommendations for living a healthier lifestyle:

1. Get active. Ride a bike or walk places instead of driving. Cars and other machines **greatly** reduce the need for physical activity. These machines help us move from place to place **easily** and **quickly** and work **efficiently**, but we don't use much physical energy.
2. Eat a **well**-balanced meal consisting of protein, grains, vegetables, and fruit. Unfortunately, many people often eat alone and **quickly**. Some even just eat snacks all day. Nutritionists recommend that families eat together like they used to. As they eat their big meal together **slowly**, they can discuss the events of their day and enjoy each other's company.
3. Take the soft drink and snack machines out of the schools and educate children **early** about nutrition and exercise. The typical teenager gets about 10 to 15 percent of his or her calories from soft drinks, which have no nutrition at all. Replace the food in the machines with water, juice, and healthy snacks such as raisins.

4. Be careful of the food messages you hear from advertisers that say, "Eat this. Buy that." Technology allows advertisers to send us messages **constantly** through commercials. Many of these foods are high in fat and calories. Choose natural foods, such as fruits and nuts, instead of manufactured foods.

In addition to what individuals can do, communities need to build their housing more **carefully**. In many communities in the U.S., it is hard to walk from place to place **easily** because there are no sidewalks. If we want people to get exercise in their communities, they need sidewalks and bike paths with stores and activities within walking distance.

Can you think of any other ways to solve the problem of obesity?





## 6.3 Adverbs of Manner

An adverb of manner tells *how* or *in what way* a person does something.

EXAMPLES			EXPLANATION
<b>Subject</b>	<b>Verb Phrase</b>	<b>Adverb</b>	We form most adverbs of manner by putting <i>-ly</i> <sup>1</sup> at the end of an adjective. An adverb usually follows the verb phrase.
He	does his job	<b>efficiently.</b>	
They	ate lunch	<b>quickly.</b>	
We	walk together	<b>slowly.</b>	
Cars <b>greatly</b> reduce the need for physical activity. We <b>constantly</b> see ads on TV for food.			The <i>-ly</i> adverb of manner can come before the verb. This position is more formal.
Do you eat <b>well</b> ?			The adverb for <i>good</i> is <i>well</i> .
You should eat a <b>well</b> -balanced meal. We live in a <b>carefully</b> planned community.			An adverb can come before an adjective.
ADJ: He is a <b>hard</b> worker. ADV: He works <b>hard</b> . ADJ: He wants a <b>fast</b> meal. ADV: Don't eat so <b>fast</b> . ADJ: He has an <b>early</b> class. ADV: We need to educate our children <b>early</b> . ADJ: I have a <b>late</b> class. ADV: I get home <b>late</b> .			Some adjectives and adverbs have the same form: <i>hard, fast, early, and late</i> .
She worked <b>hard</b> to prepare a good meal, but her son <b>hardly</b> ate anything.			<i>Hard</i> and <i>hardly</i> are both adverbs, but they have completely different meanings. <i>She worked hard</i> means she put a lot of effort into the work. <i>Hard</i> comes after the verb phrase. <i>He hardly ate anything</i> means he ate almost nothing. <i>Hardly</i> comes before the verb.
He came home <b>late</b> and missed dinner. <b>Latently</b> , he doesn't have time to eat a good meal.			<i>Late</i> and <i>latently</i> are both adverbs, but they have completely different meanings. <i>Late</i> means not on time. It comes after the verb phrase. <i>Latently</i> means recently. It comes at the beginning or end of the sentence.
<b>Compare:</b> She is a <b>friendly</b> person. She behaves <b>in a friendly manner</b> . He is a <b>lively</b> person. He dances <b>in a lively way</b> .			Some adjectives end in <i>-ly</i> : <i>lovely, lonely, early, friendly, lively, ugly</i> . They have no adverb form. We use an adverbial phrase ( <i>in a ___-ly way</i> ) to describe the action.
He loses weight <b>very easily</b> . She cooks <b>extremely well</b> . He eats <b>so fast</b> . She exercises <b>real hard</b> . You eat <b>quite slowly</b> .			<i>Very, extremely, so, real, and quite</i> can come before an adverb.

<sup>1</sup>For the spelling of *-ly* adverbs, see Appendix C.

**EXERCISE 5** Fill in the blanks with an adverb from the box below (or choose your own adverb). Several answers may be possible.

- |           |             |            |        |
|-----------|-------------|------------|--------|
| cheaply   | differently | constantly | poorly |
| briskly ✓ | regularly   | quickly    | well   |

**EXAMPLE** If you walk briskly every day, you can lose weight.

- TV gives us messages \_\_\_\_\_, telling us to buy more junk food.
- Do you eat \_\_\_\_\_ or slowly?
- You should exercise \_\_\_\_\_ if you want to lose weight.
- If you eat \_\_\_\_\_, you will not be healthy and strong.
- If you eat \_\_\_\_\_, you will have no need to snack between meals.
- In a fast-food restaurant, a family can eat \_\_\_\_\_. In another kind of restaurant, they have to spend a lot of money.
- Some immigrants eat \_\_\_\_\_ when they come to the U.S. because they can't find food from their native countries.

**EXERCISE 6** **ABOUT YOU** Write the adverb form of the word in parentheses ( ). Then check (✓) the activities that you do in this way. Make statements telling how you do these activities.

**EXAMPLES** ✓ shop carefully  
(careful)

I shop carefully. I always try to buy healthy food for my family.

\_\_\_\_\_ dance well  
(good)

I don't dance well. I never learned how.

- \_\_\_\_\_ answer every question \_\_\_\_\_  
(honest)
- \_\_\_\_\_ walk \_\_\_\_\_  
(fast)
- \_\_\_\_\_ cook \_\_\_\_\_  
(good)
- \_\_\_\_\_ talk \_\_\_\_\_  
(constant)
- \_\_\_\_\_ work \_\_\_\_\_  
(hard)
- \_\_\_\_\_ study \_\_\_\_\_  
(hard)
- \_\_\_\_\_ speak Spanish \_\_\_\_\_  
(fluent)
- \_\_\_\_\_ type \_\_\_\_\_  
(fast)
- \_\_\_\_\_ exercise \_\_\_\_\_  
(regular)
- \_\_\_\_\_ choose my food \_\_\_\_\_  
(careful)



## 6.4 Adjective vs. Adverb

An adjective describes a noun. An adverb describes a verb (phrase).

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Jim is <b>serious</b> about good health. He takes his doctor's advice <b>seriously</b> .	<i>Serious</i> is an adjective. It describes Jim. <i>Seriously</i> is an adverb. It tells how he takes his doctor's advice.
a. Your composition looks <b>good</b> . b. The teacher is looking at it <b>carefully</b> . a. The soup tastes <b>delicious</b> . b. I tasted the soup <b>slowly</b> because it was hot.	a. Use an adjective, not an adverb, after the following verbs if you are describing the subject: <i>smell, sound, taste, look, seem, appear, and feel</i> . b. Use an adverb if you are telling <i>how</i> the action (the verb phrase) is done.
a. The children got <b>hungry</b> . b. They ate lunch <b>hungrily</b> .	Use an adjective, not an adverb, in expressions with <i>get</i> : <i>get hungry, get tired, get sick, get rich, etc.</i> a. <i>Hungry</i> describes the children. b. <i>Hungrily</i> describes how they ate lunch.
Her health is <b>absolutely</b> perfect. The refrigerator is <b>completely</b> empty. You should eat a <b>well</b> -balanced diet.	An adverb can come before an adjective in phrases such as these: completely right           extremely important pleasantly surprised    well-known perfectly clear           absolutely wrong
He's sick. He doesn't feel <b>well</b> today.	For health, use <i>well</i> . In conversational English, people often use <i>good</i> for health. He's sick. He doesn't feel <b>good</b> today.
<b>Compare:</b> <b>As usual</b> , she cooked dinner. Her husband <b>usually</b> cooks on Saturday.	Use the adjective, not the adverb, in the expression <i>as usual</i> .

**EXERCISE 7** Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the adjective or adverb in parentheses ( ).

Last week I was invited to a “potluck” dinner at my math teacher’s house. This is my first month in the U.S., so I didn’t know what “potluck” was. A good friend of mine told me that this is a dinner where each person brings some food. I wanted to make a \_\_\_\_\_ impression, so I prepared my \_\_\_\_\_ dish from Mexico. I worked \_\_\_\_\_ hard to make it look and taste \_\_\_\_\_.

Most of the people at the dinner looked at my dish \_\_\_\_\_. They didn’t know what it was. They thought \_\_\_\_\_ that Mexicans just eat tacos. They tasted my food \_\_\_\_\_, thinking that Mexicans make everything very hot and spicy. But I didn’t. I know that some people don’t like \_\_\_\_\_ food, so I put the hot sauce on the side.

A student from India brought Indian food. I was \_\_\_\_\_ to find out how spicy Indian food is. The taste was very \_\_\_\_\_ to me, but I ate it anyway.

The party was great. I went home very \_\_\_\_\_. I had to get up \_\_\_\_\_ the next morning, so I \_\_\_\_\_ slept at all that night.





# Sleep

Before

You Read

1. How many hours do you sleep a night?
2. How many hours would you like to sleep a night?



CD 2, TR 23

Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to phrases with *too*, *enough*, *a lot of*, and *very*.

## Did You Know?

Albert Einstein said he needed 10 hours of sleep a night to function well.

Most people need eight hours of sleep but don't get **enough**. Most Americans get less than seven hours a night. Only

30 percent get **enough sleep**. When people aren't rested **enough**, there are bad results.

For example, if people drive when they're **too tired**, they can cause serious accidents on the road. According to the National Transportation Administration, sleepy drivers cause 100,000 accidents each year. There are many

work-related accidents too. But that's not all. If you stay awake **too long**, your mind and nervous system begin to malfunction.<sup>2</sup> In the long term, if you don't get **enough sleep**, you will have less resistance to infection and disease.

Are we **too busy** to get **enough sleep**? Not always. Besides job and family responsibilities, Americans have a **lot of other things** that keep them out of bed. Twenty-four-hour-a-day Internet and TV keep us awake. Supermarkets, shopping malls, and laundromats are open late.

**A lot of Americans**, approximately 75 percent, report having trouble sleeping a few nights per week. Maybe they have **too much stress** in their lives or don't have good sleep habits. Sleep experts have some recommendations:

- Don't nap during the day.
- Don't get **too stimulated** before going to bed. Avoid activities such as watching TV or eating before bed.
- Go to bed at the same time every night.
- Avoid caffeine after lunchtime. If you drink **too much coffee** during the day, don't expect to get a good night's sleep.
- Exercise. Physical activity is **very good** for sleep. But if you exercise **too late** in the day, it will interfere with your sleep.

A good night's sleep is **very important**, so turn off the TV, shut down the computer, and sleep well.



<sup>2</sup>To malfunction means to function, or work, poorly.



## 6.5 Too and Enough

*Too* indicates a problem. The problem is stated or implied. *Enough* means sufficient.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>adjective</b> I'm <b>too tired</b> to drive.</p> <p><b>adverb</b> She drove <b>too fast</b> and got a ticket.</p>	Put <i>too</i> <b>before</b> adjectives and adverbs.
<p><b>noncount noun</b> a. Children eat <b>too much food</b> that is high in calories.</p> <p><b>count noun</b> b. You spend <b>too many hours</b> watching TV.</p>	<p>a. Use <i>too much</i> before a noncount noun.</p> <p>b. Use <i>too many</i> before a count noun.</p>
He doesn't sleep well because he worries <b>too much</b> .	<i>Too much</i> can come at the end of the verb phrase.
<p><b>adjective</b> Five hours of sleep is not <b>good enough</b>.</p> <p><b>adverb</b> I walked <b>quickly enough</b> to raise my heart rate.</p>	Put <i>enough</i> <b>after</b> adjectives and adverbs.
<p><b>noun</b> Some children don't get <b>enough exercise</b>.</p> <p><b>noun</b> I don't have <b>enough time</b> to exercise.</p>	Put <i>enough</i> <b>before</b> nouns.
<p><b>Language Notes:</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An infinitive phrase can follow a phrase with <i>too</i> and <i>enough</i>. He's <b>too young to understand</b> that candy isn't good for you. I don't have <b>enough money to join</b> a health club.</li> <li><i>Too good to be true</i> shows a surprised or doubtful reaction. I just won a million dollars. It's <b>too good to be true</b>.</li> </ol>	

**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks to complete these statements. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLES** Are Americans too busy to get a good night's sleep?

Some people don't get enough exercise, so they're overweight.

- It's hard to sleep if you exercise too \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.
- If you're too \_\_\_\_\_ when you drive, you can fall asleep at the wheel.



3. Some people spend too much \_\_\_\_\_ on the Internet. They should shut down the computer and go to bed.
4. If you drink too much \_\_\_\_\_, it can affect your sleep.
5. People drive everywhere. They don't \_\_\_\_\_ enough.
6. When children eat too \_\_\_\_\_, they get fat.
7. Children shouldn't drink so much soda, because it contains too many \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Most Americans don't get enough \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Many people say, "I don't have enough \_\_\_\_\_ to do all the things I need to do."
10. It's never too \_\_\_\_\_ to change your bad habits.
11. His clothes don't fit him anymore because he got too \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 9** **ABOUT YOU** Complete each statement with an infinitive.

**EXAMPLES** I'm too young to retire.

I'm not strong enough to move a piano.

1. I'm not too old \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I'm too young \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't have enough money \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I don't have enough time \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I don't speak English well enough \_\_\_\_\_.

**EXERCISE 10** A person is complaining about the school cafeteria. Fill in the blanks with *too*, *too much*, or *too many*.

**EXAMPLE** It's too noisy, so I can't talk with my friends.

1. They serve \_\_\_\_\_ junk food there.
2. The fries have \_\_\_\_\_ grease.
3. The hamburgers have \_\_\_\_\_ calories.
4. The food is \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.
5. The tables are \_\_\_\_\_ dirty.
6. There are \_\_\_\_\_ people there, and sometimes there's no place to sit.

## 6.6 Too and Very and A Lot Of

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>a. I'm <b>too</b> tired to drive. Would you drive for a while?</p> <p>b. I was <b>very</b> tired, but I stayed up late and studied for my test.</p> <p>a. The speed limit on the highway is 55, and you're driving 40. You're driving <b>too</b> slowly.</p> <p>b. The speed limit on this road is 15 miles per hour. You need to drive <b>very</b> slowly.</p> <p>a. My brother is 14 years old. He's <b>too</b> old to get into the movie theater at half price.</p> <p>b. My grandmother is 85. She's <b>very</b> old, but she's in great health.</p>	<p>Don't confuse <i>very</i> and <i>too</i>. <i>Too</i> always indicates a problem in a specific situation. The problem can be stated or implied. <i>Very</i> is a neutral word.</p> <p>In examples (a), <i>too</i> shows a problem in a specific situation.</p> <p>In examples (b), <i>very</i> does not show any problem.</p>
<p>a. You put <b>too much</b> salt in the soup, and I can't eat it.</p> <p>b. She puts <b>a lot of</b> sugar in her coffee. She likes it that way.</p> <p>a. I ate <b>too many</b> cookies, and now I feel sick.</p> <p>b. She baked <b>a lot of</b> cookies for the party. Everyone enjoyed them.</p>	<p>Don't confuse <i>a lot of</i> and <i>too much/too many</i>.</p> <p>a. <i>Too</i> always indicates a problem in a specific situation.</p> <p>b. <i>A lot of</i> is a neutral expression.</p>

### EXERCISE 11 Fill in the blanks with *too*, *too much*, *too many*, *a lot of*, or *very*.



CD 2, TR 24

**A:** Your dinner was very (example) delicious tonight.

**B:** I'm (1) glad you liked it.

**A:** Everything was great. But the soup had (2) salt.

**B:** Oh. I thought you liked everything.

**A:** I did. Other than the salt, it was good.

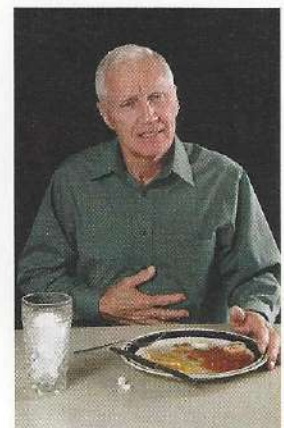
And I especially liked the potatoes.

**B:** I'm glad.

**A:** But you put a little (3) butter in the potatoes. They were (4) greasy.

**B:** Oh.

**A:** But don't worry. I ate them anyway.



(continued)



**B:** I'm afraid the steak was burned. I left it in the oven \_\_\_\_\_ long.  
(5)

**A:** Well, no one's perfect. I ate it anyway.

**B:** What about the cake I made? Did you like that?

**A:** Yes. It was \_\_\_\_\_ good. The only problem was it was \_\_\_\_\_ small. I was hoping to have another piece, but there was nothing left.  
(6)  
(7)

**B:** I thought you wanted to lose weight. You always say you're \_\_\_\_\_ fat and need to go on a diet.  
(8)

**A:** Fat? I'm not fat.

**B:** But you can't wear your old pants anymore.

**A:** I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ fat. My clothes are \_\_\_\_\_ small. When I washed them, the water I used was \_\_\_\_\_ hot and they shrank.  
(9)  
(10)  
(11)

**B:** They didn't shrink. You gained weight. You consume \_\_\_\_\_ calories.  
(12)

## Summary of Lesson 6

### 1. Adjectives and Adverbs

#### ADJECTIVES

We had a **quick** lunch.

We had a **late** dinner.

She is a **good** cook.

She looks **serious**.

**As usual**, he drank a cup of coffee.

#### ADVERBS

We ate **quickly**.

We ate **late**.

She cooks **well**.

She is looking at the label **seriously**.

He **usually** drinks coffee in the morning.

### 2. Adjective Modifiers and Noun Modifiers

#### ADJECTIVE MODIFIER

a **new** machine

**old** shoes

a **short** vacation

a **valid** license

#### NOUN MODIFIER

an **exercise** machine

**running** shoes

a **two-week** vacation

a **driver's** license

3. *Very/Too/Enough/Too Much/Too Many*

He's **very** healthy.

He's **too** young to retire.

I'm relaxed **enough** to drive.

I had **enough** sleep last night.

She doesn't eat ice cream because it has **too much** fat.

She doesn't eat ice cream because it has **too many** calories.

He loves coffee, but when he drinks **too much**, he can't sleep.

## Editing Advice

1. Adjectives are always singular.

I had two **important**s meetings last week.

2. Certain adjectives end with *-ed*.

He's interest<sup>ed</sup> in history.

3. Put an adjective before the noun.

She is a <sup>very intelligent girl</sup> girl-very intelligent.

4. Use *one(s)* after an adjective to take the place of a noun.

He has an old dictionary. She has a new<sup>one</sup>.

5. Put a specific noun before a general noun.

She made a <sup>phone call</sup> call phone.

6. A noun modifier is always singular.

She took a three-weeks vacation.

7. An adverb describes a verb. An adjective describes a noun.

The teacher speaks English fluent<sup>ly</sup>.

The teacher looks seriously.

8. Don't put the *-ly* adverb between the verb and the object.

He opened carefully the envelope.



9. Adverbs of manner that don't end in *-ly* follow the verb phrase.

He <sup>late</sup> came home.

10. *Too* indicates a problem. If there is no problem, use *very*.

Your father is <sup>very</sup> ~~too~~ intelligent.

11. *Too much* and *too many* are followed by a noun. *Too* is followed by an adjective or adverb.

She's ~~too much~~ old to take care of herself.

12. Put *enough* after the adjective.

He's <sup>old enough</sup> ~~enough~~ old to get married.

13. Don't confuse *hard* and *hardly*.

I'm tired. I worked ~~hardly~~ all day.

14. Don't use *too much/too many* when there is no problem.

I love juice. Every day I drink <sup>a lot of</sup> ~~too much~~ juice.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

I exercise <sup>C</sup> ~~regularly~~ and I eat very <sup>well</sup> ~~good~~ most of the time. Luckily, I'm <sup>(1)</sup> ~~too~~ healthy. I try to eat <sup>(2)</sup> ~~too many~~ <sup>(3)</sup> ~~fresh~~ fruits and vegetables every day. I also eat a lot of <sup>(4)</sup> ~~whole~~ grains. I rarely eat <sup>(5)</sup> ~~red~~ meat. I eat fish or chicken. But I rarely eat <sup>(6)</sup> ~~chicken fried~~ because it's <sup>(7)</sup> ~~too much~~ greasy. Most mornings I have a glass of <sup>(8)</sup> ~~juice orange~~ and cereal. For lunch, I have a <sup>(9)</sup> ~~small~~ meal, usually a <sup>(10)</sup> ~~tuna sandwich~~. For dinner, I like to eat a nice meal <sup>(11)</sup> ~~slowly~~. Most of the time, I cook dinner. But on Fridays I have a <sup>(12)</sup> ~~three-hours~~ biology course and I <sup>(13)</sup> ~~late get home~~ and I'm <sup>(14)</sup> ~~too much~~ <sup>(15)</sup> ~~tire~~ to cook. Then I'm not so <sup>(16)</sup> ~~carefully~~ about what I eat. My roommate offers me his food, but he eats

very poorly (17). He often eats hamburgers and greasy (18) fries from a fast-food place, or he brings home a sausage pizza (19). He eats quickly his food (20). And he drinks a lot of sweets (21) colas. He thinks it's enough good (22), but I don't agree. When I eat with him, I'm not carefully (23) about what I eat and then I don't feel well (24) the next day. I think it's important to have a diet very healthy (25). I'm going to try hardly (26) to have a better meal on Friday nights.

## Lesson 6 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks by putting the words in the correct order and making any other necessary changes.

**EXAMPLE** He ran a ten-mile race.  
(race/ten miles)

- His \_\_\_\_\_ are getting old.  
(shoes/running)
- He \_\_\_\_\_.  
(fast/ran)
- He didn't run \_\_\_\_\_ to win the race.  
(enough/fast)
- He was \_\_\_\_\_ when he finished the race.  
(completely/tired)
- He \_\_\_\_\_.  
(late/arrived home)
- He was \_\_\_\_\_ to eat dinner.  
(too/tired)
- He took a \_\_\_\_\_.  
(nap/two hours)

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with the correct form, adjective or adverb, of the word in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLES** She has clear pronunciation.  
(clear)

She pronounces very clearly.  
(clear)

- You need to find time to eat \_\_\_\_\_. Don't eat food that is \_\_\_\_\_ for you.  
(good)  
(bad)
- Don't drive \_\_\_\_\_. It's important to arrive \_\_\_\_\_.  
(fast)  
(safe)



3. I can't understand you. Could you speak more \_\_\_\_\_, please?  
(slow)
4. Some people learn languages \_\_\_\_\_.  
(easy)
5. Some people think that math is \_\_\_\_\_, but it's \_\_\_\_\_  
(hard) (easy)  
for me.
6. As \_\_\_\_\_, we will have a test at the end of the lesson.  
(usual)
7. She spoke \_\_\_\_\_, and I couldn't hear her \_\_\_\_\_.  
(soft) (good)
8. I need to learn English \_\_\_\_\_.  
(quick)
9. Do you exercise \_\_\_\_\_, or are you \_\_\_\_\_?  
(regular) (lazy)
10. You seem \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
(tired)
11. I'm very \_\_\_\_\_.  
(busy)
12. She works very \_\_\_\_\_, but she's \_\_\_\_\_ with her job.  
(hard) (happy)
13. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ woman. She's very \_\_\_\_\_.  
(lovely) (friendly)
14. John sounds \_\_\_\_\_, but he's not angry. He just  
(angry)  
talks \_\_\_\_\_.  
(loud)
15. You speak English \_\_\_\_\_ well. You have \_\_\_\_\_  
(extreme) (perfect)  
pronunciation. Everything you say is \_\_\_\_\_.  
(absolute) (clear)

## Expansion

### Classroom

#### Activities

- 1 Make a list of things that you ate when you were younger that you don't eat now. Make a list of things that you eat now that you didn't eat when you were younger. Form a small group and compare your lists.

Things I ate before that I don't eat now:	Things I eat now that I didn't eat before:

**2** Make a list of your lifestyle changes in the past few years. Find a partner. Compare your list with your partner's list. Which of these activities affect your health?

<b>EXAMPLES</b>	Things I do (or don't do) now:	Things I did (or didn't do) before:
	I watch TV more often. I shop once a week.	I hardly ever watched TV before. I shopped almost every day when I lived in my country.

**3** Bad habits: Make a list of bad habits that you or someone in your family has.

**EXAMPLES** I don't get enough exercise.  
My daughter talks on the phone too much.

**4** Take something from your purse, pocket, or bag, but don't show it to anyone. Describe it. Another student will try to guess what it is.

**5** In some schools, students evaluate teachers. Work with a partner and write an evaluation form for teachers at this school or for another profession you are familiar with.

<b>EXAMPLES</b>		Strongly Agree	Agree	Disagree	Strongly Disagree
	1. Begins class promptly. 2. Treats students with respect. 3. Explains assignments clearly.				



## Talk

### About It

- 1 In a small group or with the entire class, discuss what kind of food you usually eat. Do you think people eat healthy food in your native culture?
- 2 Americans often say, "You are what you eat." What do you think this means?
- 3 Do you get enough sleep? How much is enough for you? Do you remember your dreams?

## Write

### About It

- 1 Write a short composition comparing food in your native culture to food in the U.S.
- 2 Describe your eating habits.

#### My Eating Habits

In the U.S., I don't eat as well as I ate back home.

In the morning, I just grab a quick cup of coffee and a piece of toast. For lunch, I usually eat fast food.

Sometimes I even eat while I'm driving. . .



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.

## Lesson

# 7

### Grammar

#### Time Words and Time Clauses

#### The Past Continuous Tense<sup>1</sup>

### Context

#### Immigrants and Refugees



<sup>1</sup>The past continuous tense is also called the past progressive tense.



# Ellis Island

## Before You Read

1. Who was the first member of your family to come to the U.S.?
2. Was the process of entering the U.S. difficult for your family?  
How was it difficult?



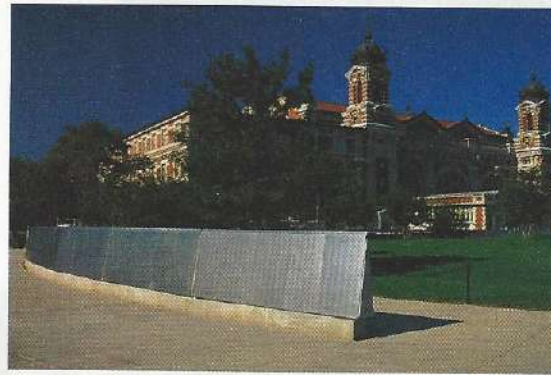
CD 2, TR 25

Read the following textbook article. Pay special attention to time words.

### Did You Know?

*Between 1820 and 1966, the largest number of immigrants in the U.S. came from Germany. The largest number of immigrants today come from Mexico, India, the Philippines, and China.*

For many years, Ellis Island, an island in New York Harbor, was the main door through which millions of immigrants entered the United States. From the time it opened in 1892 until the time it closed in 1924, the U.S. Bureau of Immigration used Ellis Island to receive and process new arrivals. During this



Ellis Island today with Wall of Honor

time, 12 million foreigners passed through this door with the hope of becoming Americans. They came from Italy, Poland, Russia, Germany, China, and many other countries. Sometimes more than 10,000 people passed through the registry room in one 24-hour period. New arrivals often waited for many hours while inspectors checked to see if they met legal and medical standards. Most did not speak English, and they were tired, hungry, and confused. Two percent (250,000 people) did not meet the requirements to enter the U.S. and had to return to their countries.

After Congress passed an immigration law that limited the number and nationality of new immigrants, immigration slowed down and Ellis Island was closed as an immigration processing center. It remained abandoned until 1965, when President Lyndon Johnson decided to restore it as a monument. Restoration of Ellis Island was finished by 1990. Now visitors to this monument can see the building as it looked from 1918 to 1920. In addition, they can see the Wall of Honor with the names of many of those who passed through on their way to becoming American citizens.



## 7.1 When, Until, While

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>When</b> immigration slowed down, Ellis Island was closed.</p> <p><b>When</b> it reopened, visitors could see the history of immigration.</p>	<p><i>When</i> means <i>at that time</i> or <i>starting at that time</i>.</p>
<p>Ellis Island was closed <b>until</b> 1990.</p> <p>Immigrants could not enter the U.S. <b>until</b> they passed an inspection.</p>	<p><i>Until</i> means <i>before that time</i>.</p>
<p><b>While</b> they waited, they were often tired, confused, and hungry.</p> <p>New arrivals waited <b>while</b> inspectors checked their documents.</p> <p><b>While</b> they were crossing the ocean, they thought about their uncertain future.</p>	<p><i>While</i> means <i>during that time</i>.</p> <p>We can sometimes use <i>when</i> in place of <i>while</i>:</p> <p><b>When</b> they were crossing the ocean, they thought about their uncertain future.</p>

### EXERCISE 1 Fill in the blanks with *when*, *while*, or *until*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**EXAMPLE** My grandfather came to the U.S. when he was 25 years old.

- \_\_\_\_\_ he lived in Poland, he had a hard life.
- \_\_\_\_\_ he left Poland, he didn't speak English at all.
- \_\_\_\_\_ he was at Ellis Island, he had to wait for hours. He was nervous \_\_\_\_\_ he waited.
- He was nervous \_\_\_\_\_ he got permission to enter the country. Then he felt more relaxed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ he passed the inspection, he entered the country.
- In Poland, he didn't study English. He didn't speak a word of English \_\_\_\_\_ he started to work in the U.S. Then he learned a little.
- \_\_\_\_\_ he worked, he saved money to bring his wife and children to America.
- My grandmother couldn't come to the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ my grandfather had enough money to send for her and their children.
- My grandfather lived in the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ he died in 1968.





**EXERCISE 2 ABOUT YOU** Add a main clause to complete each statement.

**EXAMPLE** When I got to class today, I gave the teacher my composition.

1. While I was in elementary school, \_\_\_\_\_
2. When I finished elementary school, \_\_\_\_\_
3. Until I came to this city / school, \_\_\_\_\_
4. When I arrived in the U.S., \_\_\_\_\_
5. Until I started this course, \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 3 ABOUT YOU** Finish the time expression to complete each statement.

**EXAMPLE** I stayed in my country until I won the diversity lottery.

1. I found my apartment / house while \_\_\_\_\_
2. I enrolled in this English class when \_\_\_\_\_
3. I didn't understand English until \_\_\_\_\_
4. I got married / found a job / bought a car / came to this country  
(choose one) when \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 4 ABOUT YOU** If you are from another country, name something you never . . . until you came to the U.S.

**EXAMPLE** Name something you never had.  
I never had a car until I came to the U.S.

1. Name something you never did.
2. Name something or someone you never heard of.
3. Name something you never saw.
4. Name something you never thought about.
5. Name something you never had.
6. Name something you never ate.
7. Name something you never knew.

## 7.2 When and Whenever

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>When</b> I went to New York last year, I visited Ellis Island.	<i>When</i> means <i>at that time</i> or <i>after that time</i> .
<b>Whenever</b> I visit New York, I go to the theaters there.	<i>Whenever</i> means <i>any time</i> or <i>every time</i> .

**EXERCISE 5** **ABOUT YOU** Add a main clause to complete each statement. Use the general present.

**EXAMPLE** Whenever I take a test, I feel nervous.

- Whenever I feel sad or lonely, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever I get angry, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever I need advice, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever I receive a present, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever I'm on an airplane, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever I'm sick, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever the weather is bad, \_\_\_\_\_
- Whenever the teacher explains the grammar, \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 6** **ABOUT YOU** Finish each sentence with a time clause.

**EXAMPLES** I feel nervous when I take a test.

I feel nervous whenever I have to speak in class.

- I feel relaxed \_\_\_\_\_
- I get angry \_\_\_\_\_
- I get bored \_\_\_\_\_
- I can't concentrate \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm happy \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm in a bad mood \_\_\_\_\_
- I sometimes daydream<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_
- Time passes quickly for me \_\_\_\_\_

<sup>2</sup>To *daydream* means to dream while you are awake. Your mind does not stay in the present moment.



## 7.3 Time Words

TIME WORD	EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
on	We came to the U.S. <b>on</b> April 16, 2008. We came to the U.S. <b>on</b> a Monday.	Use <i>on</i> with a specific date or day.
in	Ellis Island closed <b>in</b> 1924. My cousins came to the U.S. <b>in</b> August.	Use <i>in</i> with a specific year or month.
in vs. after	a. My brother will come to the U.S. <b>in</b> two months. b. My brother will come to the U.S. <b>after</b> he gets his visa.	a. Use <i>in</i> to mean after a period of time. b. Use <i>after</i> with an activity. <i>Wrong:</i> My brother will come to the U.S. <i>after</i> two months.
during	a. Many immigrants came to America <b>during</b> the war. b. Ellis Island was open from 1892 to 1924. <b>During</b> that time, 12 million immigrants passed through there.	a. Use <i>during</i> with an event ( <i>the war, the trip, the movie, etc.</i> ). b. Use <i>during</i> with a period of time ( <i>during that time, during the month of May, during the first week in August, etc.</i> ).
for	<b>For</b> many years, Ellis Island was the main entrance for immigrants to America. My grandfather waited at Ellis Island <b>for</b> ten hours.	Use <i>for</i> with the quantity of years, months, weeks, days, etc. <i>Wrong:</i> They waited at Ellis Island <i>during</i> ten hours.
before vs. by	a. <b>Before</b> 1990, Ellis Island was closed. b. <b>By</b> 1990, restoration of Ellis Island was complete.	a. In the example to the left, if you use <i>before</i> , 1990 is not included. b. If you use <i>by</i> , 1990 is included.
before vs. ago	a. She got married <b>before</b> she came to the U.S. b. She got married three years <b>ago</b> .	a. Use <i>before</i> with a date, time, or event. b. Use <i>ago</i> to mean <i>before now</i> .
from . . . to till until	Ellis Island was open <b>from</b> 1892 <b>to</b> 1924. Ellis Island is open <b>from</b> 9:30 A.M. <b>till</b> 5:15 P.M. You can take a boat to Ellis Island <b>from</b> 9 A.M. <b>until</b> 4:30 P.M.	Use <i>from</i> with the starting time. Use <i>to</i> , <i>till</i> , or <i>until</i> with the ending time.

### EXERCISE 7 Circle the correct time word to fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** He lived with his parents (*during* / until / *by*) he was 19 years old.

- (*When* / *During* / *Whenever*) he was a child, he lived with his grandparents.
- (*During* / *For* / *While*) several years, he lived with his grandparents.
- (*For* / *While* / *During*) his childhood, he lived with his grandparents.

4. (*While / Until / When*) he got married, he lived with his grandparents.  
Then he found an apartment with his wife.
5. (*While / During / Whenever*) he was in elementary school, he lived with his grandparents.
6. (*Whenever / While / When*) he was ten years old, his grandparents gave him a bike.
7. She worked for her father (*during / while / whenever*) she was in college.
8. She worked for her father (*for / during / while*) her free time.
9. She worked for her father (*during / whenever / when*) she was single.
10. She worked for her father (*for / during / while*) three years.
11. She worked for her father full-time (*while / when / during*) her summer vacation.
12. She worked for her father (*when / until / while*) she got married. Then she quit her job to take care of her husband and children.
13. She worked for her father 12 years (*before / ago / after*).
14. (*Until / Whenever / During*) her husband needs help in his business, she helps him out.
15. She can't help you now. She's busy. She'll help you (*by / after / in*) an hour.
16. Please finish this exercise (*by / in / until*) 8:30.
17. Please finish this exercise (*by / before / until*) you go home. The teacher wants it today.
18. Please finish this exercise (*in / after / by*) ten minutes.
19. He'll retire (*after / in / by*) two years.
20. He'll retire (*when / while / until*) he's 65 years old.
21. He'll work (*when / while / until*) he's 65 years old. Then he'll retire.
22. I'm not going to eat dinner (*when / while / until*) my wife gets home.  
Then we'll eat together.
23. The Ellis Island Museum is open every day (*for / from / by*) 9:30 A.M.  
(*at / by / till*) 5:15 P.M.
24. The Ellis Island Museum is not open (*in / at / on*) December 25.



## 7.4 The Past Continuous Tense—Forms

We use the past continuous tense to show that something was in progress at a particular moment in the past.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
In 2007, I <b>was living</b> in the U.S. In 2007, my parents <b>were living</b> in Ecuador.	To form the past continuous tense, we use <i>was</i> or <i>were</i> + verb <i>-ing</i> <sup>3</sup> . I, he, she, it → <i>was</i> you, we, they → <i>were</i>
In 2007, they <b>were living</b> in California. They <b>weren't living</b> in New York. <b>Were</b> they <b>living</b> in Los Angeles? No, they <b>weren't</b> . Where <b>were</b> they <b>living</b> ? Why <b>weren't</b> they <b>living</b> in Los Angeles? Who <b>was living</b> in New York?	Compare the affirmative, negative, <i>yes/no</i> question, <i>wh-</i> question, negative question, and subject question with the past continuous tense.

## Terence and Charlotte—Refugees

Before

You Read

1. Do you know the difference between an immigrant and a refugee?
2. Do you know anyone who is a refugee?



CD 2, TR 26

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to sentences with the past continuous tense.**

### Did You Know?

*In 2007, more than 14 million people worldwide fled their homes because of war and persecution. In 2008 alone, the U.S. took in more than 60,000 refugees.*

In addition to immigrants, the U.S. takes refugees from many countries. A refugee is a person who runs away from his country because his or her life is in danger. The U.S. takes in more refugees than any other country in the world.



Terence and Charlotte and their children are refugees from Burundi, Africa. Burundi has two major tribes: the Hutus and the Tutsis. Terence is a Hutu and his wife Charlotte is a Tutsi. Terence **was working** in a hospital when he **heard** the news: Someone killed the president of Burundi. When they heard the news, violence began. Members of the Hutu tribe started killing members of the Tutsi tribe. Because the family was in danger, they ran from their country. First they ran to Congo. But their lives were in danger there. Then they ran to Zambia. While they **were living** in a Zambian refugee camp, they didn't have enough food and their children didn't go to school. Life was very hard. They applied to the UNHCR (United Nations

<sup>3</sup>To review the spelling of the *-ing* form, see Appendix A.

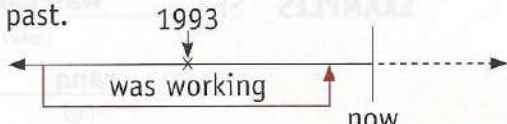


High Commissioner for Refugees) for permission to come to the U.S. In 2006, when they heard that they got permission, they were so happy.

When they **arrived** in Chicago, a volunteer from a refugee agency **was waiting** to meet them at the airport. She took them to their new apartment and helped them get settled. Volunteers helped them learn about life in the U.S. They helped them enroll their children in school and get medical attention. At first everything was very strange for them, but little by little life became easier. Charlotte found a job cleaning hotel rooms. Terence found a job in a factory.

When they become American citizens, they want to go back to Burundi to search for their family.

## 7.5 The Past Continuous Tense—with Specific Times

EXAMPLE	EXPLANATION
Terence <b>was working</b> in a hospital in 1993. Charlotte and Terence <b>were living</b> in Zambia in 2003.	We use the past continuous tense to show what was in progress at a specific moment in the past. 

**EXERCISE 8** **ABOUT YOU** Tell if the following things were happening in **January 2008**.

**EXAMPLE** go to school  
 I was (not) going to school in January 2008.

- |                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. work          | 4. live in the U.S.     |
| 2. go to school  | 5. live with my parents |
| 3. study English | 6. take a vacation      |

**EXERCISE 9** **ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with *“What were you doing . . . ?”* at these times. Another student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** at six o'clock this morning  
**A:** What were you doing at six o'clock this morning?  
**B:** I was sleeping.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. at ten o'clock last night           | 4. at this time yesterday              |
| 2. at four o'clock this morning        | 5. at this time last year <sup>4</sup> |
| 3. at five o'clock yesterday afternoon |  |

<sup>4</sup>At this time last year is very general; it does not refer to a specific hour.



## 7.6 The Past Continuous Tense + a *When* Clause

EXAMPLE	EXPLANATION
Terence <b>was working</b> in a hospital when he <b>heard</b> the news. They <b>were living</b> in Zambia when they <b>got</b> permission to come to the U.S.	We use the past continuous tense with the simple past to show the relationship of a longer past action to a shorter past action.

### Language Notes:

- If the main clause precedes the time clause, do not separate the two clauses with a comma. If the time clause precedes the main clause, separate the two clauses with a comma.  
 He was working in a hospital when he heard the news. (No comma)  
 When he heard the news, he was working in a hospital. (Comma)
- To form a question with two clauses, only the verb in the main clause is in question form.  
 Where **was he living** when he got the news?

**EXERCISE 10** Decide which of the two verbs has the longer action (past continuous) and which has the shorter action (simple past). Fill in the blanks with the correct tense.

**EXAMPLES** She was taking a shower when the telephone rang.

(take) (ring)

When it started to rain, I was walking to school.

(start) (walk)

1. Mary was shopping in a department store when she lost her purse.

(shop) (lose)

2. I was doing my homework when my friend came over.

(do) (come)

3. When he arrived at the airport, his friends waited for him.

(arrive) (wait)

4. When my neighbor knocked on the door, we ate dinner.

(knock) (eat)

5. She \_\_\_\_\_ dinner when the smoke alarm

(cook)

\_\_\_\_\_ off.<sup>5</sup>

(go)

6. He \_\_\_\_\_ snow when he \_\_\_\_\_

(shovel)

(lose)

his glove.

7. She \_\_\_\_\_ when the baby \_\_\_\_\_

(sleep)

(start)

to cry.

8. When I \_\_\_\_\_ to class, the teacher

(get)

\_\_\_\_\_ out the tests.

(pass)

9. I \_\_\_\_\_ to a friend when the baby

(talk)

\_\_\_\_\_.

(interrupt)

## Albert Einstein—Refugee from Germany

Before

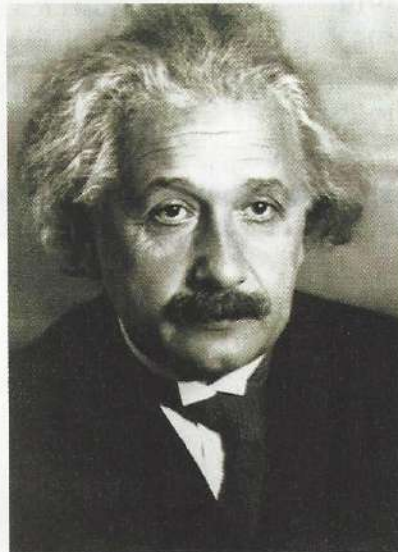
You Read

1. Can you name any famous immigrants or refugees to the U.S.?
2. Did anyone from your native culture become famous in the U.S.?



CD 2, TR 27

**Read the textbook article on the next page. Pay special attention to the relationship of the simple past and the past continuous tenses.**



Albert Einstein, 1879–1955

<sup>5</sup>When an alarm goes off, it starts to sound.



Of the many refugees who came to the U.S., one will always be remembered throughout the world: Albert Einstein. Einstein changed our understanding of the universe.

Einstein was born in Germany in 1879 to Jewish parents. When he graduated from college in Switzerland in 1900, he was planning to become a teacher of physics and math but could not find a job in those fields. Instead, he went to work in a patent<sup>6</sup> office as a technical expert from 1902 to 1909. While he **was working** at this job, he **studied** and **wrote** in his spare time. In 1905, when he was only 26 years old, he published three papers that explained the basic structure of the universe. His theory of relativity explained the relationship of space and time. He returned to Germany to accept a research position at the University of Berlin. However, in 1920, while he **was lecturing** at the university, anti-Jewish groups often **interrupted** his lectures, saying they were “un-German.”

In 1920, Einstein visited the United States for the first time. During his visits, he talked not only about his scientific theories, but also about world peace. While he **was visiting** the U.S. again in 1933, the Nazis came to power in Germany. They took his property, burned his books, and removed him from his university job. In 1933 Einstein helped establish the International Rescue Committee to assist anti-Nazi opponents of Hitler. The U.S. offered Einstein refugee status, and in 1940, he became a U.S. citizen. He received many job offers from all over the world, but he decided to accept a position at Princeton University in New Jersey. He lived and worked there until he died in 1955.

### Did You Know?

*When Einstein was a student, his teachers thought that he wasn't very intelligent. In fact, when he tried to enter college, he failed the entrance exam on his first attempt.*

#### Einstein's Life

1879	Born in Germany
1902-1909	Worked in a Swiss patent office
1905	Published his theory of relativity
1919	Scientists recognized his theory to be correct
1933	Visited the U.S.
1940	Became a U.S. citizen
1955	Died

<sup>6</sup>A patent is a document that identifies the owner of a new invention. Only the person or company who has the patent can sell the invention.



## 7.7 The Past Continuous Tense in a *While* Clause

EXAMPLE	EXPLANATION
While Einstein <b>was living</b> in Switzerland, he developed his theory of relativity. While Einstein <b>was visiting</b> the U.S., the Nazis took power in Germany.	Use <i>while</i> + the past continuous with the longer action.
<b>Compare:</b> Einstein was living in the U.S. <b>when</b> he <b>died</b> . <b>While</b> he <b>was living</b> in the U.S., he wrote many papers.	Use <i>when</i> + the simple past with the shorter action. Use <i>while</i> + the past continuous with the longer action.
<b>Language Notes:</b> 1. You can use <i>when</i> in place of <i>while</i> with a continuous action. <b>While</b> Einstein was living in Switzerland, he developed his theory. <b>When</b> Einstein was living in Switzerland, he developed his theory. 3. You cannot use <i>while</i> with an action that has no continuation. <i>Wrong:</i> I was running <i>while</i> I fell. <i>Right:</i> I was running <i>when</i> I fell.	

**EXERCISE 11** Decide which of the two verbs has the longer action (past continuous) and which has the shorter action (simple past). Fill in the blanks with the correct tense.

**EXAMPLE** It started to rain while I was walking to school.  
(start) (walk)

1. While the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ on the blackboard, she \_\_\_\_\_ the chalk.  
(write) (drop)

2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his arm while he \_\_\_\_\_ a tree.  
(break) (climb)

3. She \_\_\_\_\_ her husband while she \_\_\_\_\_ college.  
(meet) (attend)

4. While I \_\_\_\_\_ to work, I \_\_\_\_\_ out of gas.<sup>7</sup>  
(drive) (run)

5. While I \_\_\_\_\_ my bike, I \_\_\_\_\_ a flat tire.  
(ride) (get)

<sup>7</sup>To *run out of* means to use something up completely.



6. I \_\_\_\_\_ my tooth while I \_\_\_\_\_ a nut.  
(break) (eat)

7. I \_\_\_\_\_ an old friend while I \_\_\_\_\_  
(meet) (walk)

in the park.

8. While he \_\_\_\_\_ dishes, he \_\_\_\_\_  
(wash) (break)

a plate.

**EXERCISE 12** Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past continuous form of the verb in parentheses ( ) in the following conversations.



CD 2, TR 28

**Conversation 1, between a wife (W) and husband (H)**

**W:** Look what I found today! Your favorite watch!

**H:** Where did you find it?  
(example: find)

**W:** In your top drawer. I \_\_\_\_\_ away your socks when  
(I put)  
I \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
(2 find)

**H:** I wonder how it got there.

**W:** Probably while you \_\_\_\_\_ something in that drawer,  
(3 put)  
it \_\_\_\_\_ off your wrist.  
(4 fall)

**Conversation 2, between two students**

**A:** When did you come to the U.S.?

**B:** Two months ago.

**A:** Really? But you speak English so well.

**B:** While I \_\_\_\_\_ in a refugee camp in Kenya, I studied  
(1 live)  
English.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ to come to the U.S.?  
(2 you/plan)

**B:** Not really. I had no plans at all. I \_\_\_\_\_ in the  
(3 just/wait)  
refugee camp.

**A:** Are you from Kenya?

**B:** No. I'm from Sudan. But while I \_\_\_\_\_ in Sudan, a  
(4 live)  
war \_\_\_\_\_ there and I had to leave my country.  
(5 start)

**A:** Are you here with your family?

**B:** No. I'm alone. When the war \_\_\_\_\_, (6 start)

I \_\_\_\_\_ far away from my family. I escaped to Kenya. (7 live)

**Conversation 3, between a granddaughter (GD) and grandmother (GM)**

**GD:** I \_\_\_\_\_ through some old boxes when I (1 look)

\_\_\_\_\_ this picture of you and Grandpa when you were (2 find)

young. By the way, how \_\_\_\_\_ Grandpa? (3 you/meet)

**GM:** One day I \_\_\_\_\_ in the park in my hometown (4 walk)

when he \_\_\_\_\_ me to ask what time it was. We (5 stop)

\_\_\_\_\_ to talk, and then he \_\_\_\_\_ (6 start) (7 ask)

me to go out with him.

**GD:** Did you date for a long time?

**GM:** We \_\_\_\_\_ for ten months. A few months after we (8 date)

met, his family \_\_\_\_\_ for the green card lottery in the (9 apply)

U.S. While we \_\_\_\_\_, they \_\_\_\_\_ a (10 date) (11 receive)

letter that gave them permission to immigrate to the U.S.

**GD:** What \_\_\_\_\_? (12 happen)

**GM:** At first, I was worried that I'd never see your grandfather again. But he

\_\_\_\_\_ to me often and \_\_\_\_\_ me (13 write) (14 call)

whenever he could. About a year later, he \_\_\_\_\_ back (15 go)

to our country to visit me. While we \_\_\_\_\_ in a (16 eat)

beautiful restaurant, he \_\_\_\_\_ me to marry him. (17 ask)

**GD:** \_\_\_\_\_ him right away? (18 you/marry)

**GM:** Yes, we got married a few weeks later and then he

\_\_\_\_\_ to the U.S. But I couldn't go to the U.S. with (19 return)

him. I \_\_\_\_\_ to wait for permission. (20 have)

Finally, I \_\_\_\_\_ permission to come. (21 get)





## 7.8 Was/Were Going To

We use *was/were going to* + the base form to describe a plan that we didn't carry out. It means the same thing as *was/were planning to*.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. Einstein <b>was going to</b> return to Germany, but the Nazis came to power.	a. Einstein was planning to return, but didn't.
b. I <b>was going to</b> call you, but I lost your phone number.	b. I was planning to call, but didn't.

**EXERCISE 13** Fill in the blanks with *was going to* + one of the verbs from the box below.

use	write ✓	go
say	call	



CD 2, TR 29

**A:** What did you write for your composition today?

**B:** I was going to write about Einstein, but I couldn't find any information.  
(example)

**A:** What? There's tons of<sup>8</sup> information. Did you go to the library?

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ to the library, but the library near my house is closed for construction.  
(1)

**A:** How about the college library?

**B:** I didn't think of it.

**A:** Why didn't you use the Internet? You can find plenty of information there.

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet, but my computer crashed.  
(2)

**A:** Why didn't you call me? You're welcome to use my computer.

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ you, but I lost your phone number.  
(3)

**A:** I'm beginning to think you didn't really want to do your homework.

**B:** Maybe you're right. I'm kind of lazy.

**A:** I \_\_\_\_\_ that, but I didn't want to hurt your feelings.  
(4)

<sup>8</sup>Tons of means a lot of.

**EXERCISE 14** Fill in the blanks to tell what prevented a plan from happening.**EXAMPLE** He was going to return to his country, but he couldn't get permission.

1. My cousin was going to come to the U.S., but \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. He was going to work in the U.S. for only three months, but \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. We were going to return to our country, but \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I was going to call my grandparents last night, but \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. We were going to rent an apartment in this city, but \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 7.9 Simple Past vs. Past Continuous with *When*

Both the simple past and the past continuous can be used in a sentence that has a *when* clause. However, the time sequence is completely different.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. <i>When</i> Einstein graduated from college, he <b>tried</b> to get a job as a teacher. b. <i>When</i> Einstein entered college, he <b>was living</b> in Switzerland.	In sentences (a), the simple past in the main clause shows what happened <b>after</b> an action.
a. Einstein <b>came</b> to live in the U.S. <i>when</i> he lost his German citizenship. b. Einstein <b>was living</b> in the U.S. <i>when</i> he died.	In sentences (b), the past continuous in the main clause shows what was happening <b>at the same time</b> a shorter action occurred.
a. <i>When</i> Terence got permission, he <b>came</b> to the U.S. b. <i>When</i> Terence got permission, he <b>was living</b> in Zambia.	

**EXERCISE 15** Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past continuous of the verb in parentheses ( ).**EXAMPLES** Terence was living (live) in a refugee camp when he got his visa.When he got to the U.S., he needed (need) to find a job.1. When he \_\_\_\_\_ (get) permission, he left Zambia.He \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in a hospital when he heard the news.



2. When they arrived in the U.S., volunteers \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
(help)
- When they arrived in the U.S., a volunteer \_\_\_\_\_ for them at the airport.  
(wait)
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S. when their fourth child was born.  
(live)
- When their fourth child was born, they \_\_\_\_\_ to a bigger apartment.  
(move)
4. When Charlotte learned English well enough, she \_\_\_\_\_ to work in a hotel.  
(start)
- She \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel when her daughter was born.  
(work)
5. Terence \_\_\_\_\_ morning English classes when he found a job.  
(take)
- Terence \_\_\_\_\_ to night classes when he found a job.  
(change)
6. When Einstein entered college, he \_\_\_\_\_ to become a teacher.  
(want)
- When Einstein entered college, he \_\_\_\_\_ in Switzerland.  
(live)
7. Einstein \_\_\_\_\_ a resident of the U.S. when he lost his German citizenship.  
(become)
- Einstein \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S. when he died.  
(live)

## 7.10 Simple Past vs. Past Continuous

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>While</b> they <b>lived</b> in the refugee camp, they <b>studied</b> English.</p> <p><b>While</b> Einstein <b>worked</b> at a patent office, he <b>studied</b> and <b>wrote</b>.</p>	<p>We can connect two past actions that happened in the same time period with <i>while</i> and use the simple past tense in both clauses.</p>
<p><b>While</b> I <b>was reading</b> the story about Terence and Charlotte, I <b>was underlining</b> the verbs.</p> <p><b>While</b> we <b>were doing</b> the last exercise, the teacher <b>was helping</b> us.</p>	<p>We can connect two past actions that happened in the <i>exact</i> same time period with <i>while</i> and use the past continuous tense in both clauses.</p>
<p><b>When</b> they <b>got</b> permission, they came to the U.S.</p> <p><b>When</b> they <b>came</b> to the U.S., they started to study English.</p>	<p>Use <i>when</i> to mean <i>at a specific time</i>. Use the simple past tense.</p>

**EXERCISE 16** Fill in the blanks with *when* for an action at a specific time or *while* for an action that continues over time.

**EXAMPLE** While Terence was working in a factory, he practiced English with his coworkers.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Terence left his country, he went to Congo.
- \_\_\_\_\_ I was reading the story, I was paying attention to the verbs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Charlotte cleaned hotel rooms, she listened to music.
- \_\_\_\_\_ their youngest daughter was born, Charlotte stopped working.
- Charlotte started to work again \_\_\_\_\_ her daughter was a year old.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Charlotte worked, her baby was in day care.
- Terence worked in a factory \_\_\_\_\_ Charlotte worked in a hotel.

## 7.11 Using the *-ing* Form After Time Words

When the main clause and the time clause have the same subject, we can delete the subject of the time clause and use a present participle (verb + *-ing*) after the time word.

**EXAMPLES**

Einstein left high school **before he finished** his studies.

Einstein left high school **before finishing** his studies.

**After Einstein left** high school, he studied mathematics and physics.

**After leaving** high school, Einstein studied mathematics and physics.

Terence and Charlotte studied English **while they lived** in a refugee camp.

Terence and Charlotte studied English **while living** in a refugee camp.



**EXERCISE 17** Change these sentences. Use a present participle after the time word. Make any necessary changes.

**EXAMPLE** After ~~Einstein entered~~ <sup>entering</sup> the university, ~~he~~ <sup>Einstein</sup> developed his theory.

1. Einstein passed an exam before he entered the university.
2. He left high school before he received his diploma.
3. After Einstein developed his theory of relativity, he became famous.
4. He became interested in physics after he received books on science.
5. After Einstein came to the U.S., he got a job at Princeton.
6. Before they came to the U.S., Terence and Charlotte lived in Zambia.
7. While they lived in the refugee camp, the children didn't go to school.
8. Charlotte listened to music while she cleaned hotel rooms.
9. The parents were working and going to school while they were raising a family.

## Summary of Lesson 7

### 1. Time Words

Time Word	Examples
When	<b>When</b> immigrants came to America, they passed through Ellis Island.
While	They waited <b>while</b> inspectors checked their health.
Until	Ellis Island remained closed <b>until</b> 1990.
Before	<b>Before</b> 1920, many immigrants came to America.
After	<b>After</b> 1920, Congress limited the number of immigrants.
From . . . to, until, or till	The Ellis Island Museum is open <b>from</b> 9:30 <b>till</b> 5:15. <b>From</b> 1892 to 1924, Ellis Island was an immigrant processing center.
During	<b>During</b> that time, 12 million immigrants passed through Ellis Island.
For	New arrivals had to wait <b>for</b> hours.
In	<b>In</b> 1905, Einstein wrote about relativity. We will finish the test <b>in</b> an hour.
By	Restoration of Ellis Island was finished <b>by</b> 1990.
Ago	One hundred years <b>ago</b> , new arrivals passed through Ellis Island.
On	We came to the U.S. <b>on</b> Wednesday.

2. Uses of the past continuous tense:

- A. To describe a past action that was in progress at a specific moment:  
He **was sleeping** at six o'clock this morning.  
Where **were you living** in December 2001?
- B. With the past tense, to show the relationship of a longer past action to a shorter past action:  
Terence **was living** in Zambia when he **got** permission to come to the U.S.  
Einstein **was living** in New Jersey when he **died**.  
**While** I **was reading** the story, I **had** to use my dictionary.
- C. To show past intentions:  
I **was going to call** you, but I lost your phone number.  
She **was going to cook** dinner, but she didn't have time.

## Editing Advice

1. Put the subject before the verb in all clauses.

*the teacher entered*

When ~~entered~~ the teacher, the students stood up.

2. Use *when*, not *while*, if the action has no duration.

*When*

~~While~~ she spilled the milk, she started to cry.

3. Don't confuse *during* and *for*.

*for*

He watched TV ~~during~~ three hours.

4. Don't confuse *until* and *when*.

*when*

She will eat dinner ~~until~~ her husband comes home.

5. Don't confuse *before* and *ago*.

*ago*

They came to the U.S. three years ~~before~~.

6. After a time word, use an *-ing* form, not a base form.

*finding*

After ~~find~~ a job, he bought a car.



## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

I left my country three years ago. But my husband didn't come with me.

He wanted to stay in our country <sup>(example)</sup> ~~during~~ <sup>for</sup> two more years <sup>(1)</sup> ~~until~~ he

finished college. <sup>(2)</sup> ~~While~~ I got here, I started to study English right away.

<sup>(3)</sup> ~~While~~ I <sup>(4)</sup> ~~was going~~ to school, I <sup>(5)</sup> ~~was work~~ in the school library.

My husband <sup>(6)</sup> ~~was going~~ to get a degree in engineering <sup>(7)</sup> ~~when~~ a war <sup>(8)</sup> ~~broke~~ out in our country. <sup>(9)</sup> ~~When~~ ~~started the war~~, he fled the country quickly

and went to a neighboring country. He was in a refugee camp <sup>(10)</sup> ~~during~~ one

year. <sup>(11)</sup> ~~While~~ he was in the camp, he started to study English. He applied

for permission to come to the U.S. After <sup>(12)</sup> ~~wait~~ for one year, he finally got

permission. <sup>(13)</sup> ~~When~~ he <sup>(14)</sup> ~~was getting~~ here, we were so excited to see each other again.

He's learning English quickly. After he learns English well enough, he's going to enter an engineering program. I know he'll be happy <sup>(15)</sup> ~~until~~ he gets his engineering degree.

## Lesson 7 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the past continuous form of the verb in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** He was walking <sup>(walk)</sup> to his car when he lost <sup>(lose)</sup> his glove.

1. What \_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(you/do)</sup> at 4 P.M. yesterday afternoon? I tried to call you, but you weren't home.

2. She \_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(study)</sup> to be an engineer when the war \_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(start)</sup>.

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(find)</sup> your necklace while I \_\_\_\_\_ <sup>(look)</sup> for my watch.

4. She \_\_\_\_\_ a house three years ago.  
(buy)
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ his wife while he \_\_\_\_\_ in a restaurant.  
(meet) (work)
6. When my grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ to America, he \_\_\_\_\_ a job in a factory.  
(come) (find)
7. When he \_\_\_\_\_ at Ellis Island, his uncle \_\_\_\_\_ for him.  
(arrive) (wait)
8. While she \_\_\_\_\_ the computer, it \_\_\_\_\_.  
(use) (crash)
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ dinner when the fire \_\_\_\_\_.  
(cook) (start)
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ my car and \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio when I \_\_\_\_\_ about the plane crash.  
(drive) (listen) (hear)

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate time word. Choose *when, whenever, while, until, before, after, by, ago, in, for, on, from, till, to, or during*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**EXAMPLE** I will continue to work \_\_\_\_\_ *until* I am 65 years old. Then I will retire.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ it snows, there are a lot of traffic accidents.
2. I was walking to my friend's house \_\_\_\_\_ it started to rain. I was glad I had my umbrella with me.
3. The teacher was watching the students \_\_\_\_\_ the test.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ I finished my homework last night, I watched the news on TV.
5. I got my visa \_\_\_\_\_ coming to the U.S.
6. He must stay in his country \_\_\_\_\_ he gets permission to come to the U.S.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ he dropped his glasses, they broke.
8. We have to finish this lesson \_\_\_\_\_ ten o'clock.
9. He found a job two months \_\_\_\_\_.
10. He found a job three weeks \_\_\_\_\_ coming to the U.S.
11. He found a job \_\_\_\_\_ April.



12. It's 7:50. The movie will begin \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes, at 8:00.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the movie began, everyone became quiet.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ she was watching the sad movie, she started to cry.
15. Einstein was 61 years old \_\_\_\_\_ he became a U.S. citizen.
16. Einstein lived in the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ 22 years.
17. I had a doctor's appointment \_\_\_\_\_ Monday.
18. I work every day \_\_\_\_\_ 9:00 A.M. \_\_\_\_\_ 5:00 P.M.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ the summer, many teenagers get jobs.

## Expansion

### Classroom Activities

- 1 Pick an important event in your life (*immigrating to a new country, moving to a new town, going to a new school, getting married, etc.*) and make a list of things you did before, during, and after the event. Discuss your sentences with a small group.

Event: \_\_\_\_\_

Before	
During	
After	

**2 Form a small group. Turn to the person next to you and say a year or a specific time of the year. The person next to you tells what was happening in his or her life at that time.**

**EXAMPLES** 1996

I was living with my parents.

January 2004

I was studying to be a nurse.

## Talk

### About It

**1 Read these quotes by Einstein. Discuss their meaning.**

- “Imagination is more important than knowledge.”
- “The only real valuable thing is intuition.”
- “A person starts to live when he can live outside himself.”
- “I never think of the future. It comes soon enough.”
- “Anyone who has never made a mistake has never tried anything new.”
- “Science is a wonderful thing if one does not have to earn one’s living at it.”
- “Peace cannot be kept by force. It can only be achieved by understanding.”
- “Education is what remains after one has forgotten everything he learned in school.”
- “Not everything that counts can be counted, and not everything that can be counted counts.” (Sign hanging in Einstein’s office at Princeton)

**2 Einstein is often called a genius. Can you think of any other famous people who are geniuses?**

**3 In a small group or with the entire class, discuss your experience of immigration. Was the process difficult? How did you feel during the process?**



## Write

### About It

- 1 Write a paragraph about the changes that took place after a major historical event in your country or elsewhere in the world.
- 2 Write about the reasons people leave your country or the reasons you left your country.
- 3 Write about your arrival in the U.S.

#### EXAMPLE

#### My Arrival in the U.S.

My family and I arrived in the U.S. in September 2008.  
When we arrived, our cousins were waiting for us at the airport.  
They took us to their house and gave us something to eat. But  
we were tired and we just wanted to sleep for a while...



For more practice using grammar in context,  
please visit our Web site.

## Lesson

# 8

### Grammar

### Modals

### Related Expressions

### Context

### Renting an Apartment





## 8.1 Modals and Related Expressions—An Overview

A modal adds meaning to the verb that follows it.

List of Modals	Modals are different from other verbs in several ways.
can could should will would may might must	<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. The base form of a verb follows a modal.<sup>1</sup> You <b>must</b> pay your rent. (<i>Not</i>: You must <u>to</u> pay your rent.) He <b>should</b> clean his apartment now. (<i>Not</i>: He should <u>cleaning</u> his apartment now.)</li><li>2. Modals never have an <i>-s</i>, <i>-ed</i>, or <i>-ing</i> ending. He <b>can</b> rent an apartment. (<i>Not</i>: He <u>can</u>s rent an apartment.)</li></ol>

Related Expressions	Some verbs are like modals in meaning.
have to be able to be supposed to  be permitted/allowed to	He <b>must</b> sign the lease. = He <b>has to</b> sign the lease. He <b>can</b> pay the rent. = He <b>is able to</b> pay the rent. I <b>must</b> pay my rent by the first of the month. = I'm <b>supposed to</b> pay my rent by the first of the month. You <b>can't</b> change the locks in your apartment. = You <b>are not permitted to</b> change the locks in your apartment. = You <b>are not allowed to</b> change the locks in your apartment.

### An Apartment Lease

Before  
You Read

1. Do you live in an apartment? Do you have a lease? Did you understand the lease when you signed it?
2. What kinds of things are not allowed in your apartment?



<sup>1</sup>Do not follow a modal with an infinitive. There is one exception: *ought to*. *Ought to* means *should*.



When people rent an apartment, they often **have to** sign a lease. A lease is an agreement between the owner (landlord<sup>2</sup>) and the renter (tenant). A lease states the period of time for the rental, the amount of the rent, and the rules the renter **must** follow. Some leases contain the following rules:

- Renters **must not** have a water bed.
- Renters **must not** have a pet.
- Renters **must not** change the locks without the owner's permission.
- Renters **must** pay a security deposit.

Many owners ask the renters to pay a security deposit in case there are damages. When the renters move out, the owners **are supposed to** return the deposit plus interest if the apartment is in good condition. If there is damage, the owners **can** use part or all of the money to repair the damage. However, they **may not** keep the renters' money for normal wear and tear (the normal use of the apartment).

Renters **do not have to** agree to all the terms of the lease. They **can** ask for changes before they sign. A pet owner, for example, **can** ask for permission to have a pet by offering to pay a higher security deposit.

There are laws that protect renters. For example, owners **must** provide heat during the winter months. In most cities, they **must** put a smoke detector in each apartment and in the halls. In addition, owners **can't** refuse to rent to a person because of sex, race, religion, nationality, or disability.

When the lease is up for renewal, owners **can** offer the renters a new lease or they **can** ask the renters to leave. The owners **are supposed to** notify the renters (usually at least 30 days in advance) if they want the renters to leave.

<sup>2</sup>A landlord is a man. A landlady is a woman.



## 8.2 Negatives with Modals

To form the negative of a modal, put *not* after the modal. You can make a negative contraction with some, but not all, modals.

Negatives and Negative Contractions	Examples
cannot → can't could not → couldn't should not → shouldn't will not → won't would not → wouldn't may not → (no contraction) might not → (no contraction) must not → mustn't	We <b>cannot</b> pay the rent. You <b>can't</b> have a dog in your apartment.  We <b>will not</b> renew our lease. We <b>won't</b> stay here.  You <b>may not</b> know legal terms. You <b>might not</b> understand the lease.

**Language Note:** Write *cannot* as one word.

**EXERCISE 1** Write the negative form of the underlined words. Use a contraction whenever possible.

**EXAMPLE** You must pay a security deposit. You mustn't have a water bed.

1. I can have a cat in my apartment. I \_\_\_\_\_ have a dog.
2. You should read the lease carefully. You \_\_\_\_\_ sign it without reading it.
3. The landlord must install a smoke detector. You \_\_\_\_\_ remove it.
4. You may have visitors in your apartment. You \_\_\_\_\_ make a lot of noise and disturb your neighbors.
5. If you damage something, the landlord can keep part of your security deposit. He \_\_\_\_\_ keep your deposit without proof of damages.
6. You might get back all of your security deposit. If you leave your apartment in bad condition, you \_\_\_\_\_ get all of it back.

## 8.3 Statements and Questions with Modals

Compare affirmative statements and questions with a modal.

Wh- Word	Modal	Subject	Modal	Verb (base form)	Complement	Short Answer
		He	<b>can</b>	have	a cat in his apartment.	
What	<b>Can</b> <b>can</b>	he		have	a water bed?	No, he <b>can't</b> .
		he		have	in his apartment?	
		Who	<b>can</b>	have	a dog?	

Compare negative statements and questions with a modal.

Wh- Word	Modal	Subject	Modal	Verb (base form)	Complement
Why	<b>shouldn't</b>	He	<b>shouldn't</b>	pay	his rent late.
		he		pay	his rent late?

**EXERCISE 2** Read each statement. Fill in the blanks to complete the question.

**EXAMPLE** You should read the lease before you sign it. Why should I read the lease before I sign it?

- You can't have a water bed. Why \_\_\_\_\_ a water bed?
- We must pay a security deposit. How much \_\_\_\_\_?
- Someone must install a smoke detector. Who \_\_\_\_\_ a smoke detector?
- The landlord can't refuse to rent to a person because of race, religion, or nationality. Why \_\_\_\_\_ to rent to a person for these reasons?
- Tenants shouldn't make a lot of noise in their apartments. Why \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of noise?
- I may have a cat in my apartment. \_\_\_\_\_ have a dog in my apartment?
- The landlord can have a key to my apartment. \_\_\_\_\_ enter my apartment when I'm not home?



## 8.4 Must, Have To, Have Got To

The modal *must* has a very official tone. For nonofficial situations, we usually use *have to* or *have got to*.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
The landlord <b>must</b> give you a smoke detector. The tenant <b>must</b> pay the rent on the first of each month.	For formal obligations, use <i>must</i> . <i>Must</i> is often used in legal contracts, such as apartment leases.
The landlord <b>has to</b> give you a smoke detector. The landlord <b>has got to</b> give you a smoke detector.	We can also use <i>have to</i> or <i>have got to</i> , for obligations.
You <b>must</b> leave the building immediately. It's on fire! You <b>have to</b> leave the building immediately. It's on fire! You've <b>got to</b> leave the building immediately. It's on fire!	<i>Must</i> , <i>have to</i> , and <i>have got to</i> express a sense of urgency. All three sentences to the left have the same meaning. <i>Have got to</i> is usually contracted: I have got to = I've got to He has got to = He's got to
Our apartment is too small. We <b>have to</b> move. Our apartment is too small. We've <b>got to</b> move.	Avoid using <i>must</i> for personal obligations. It sounds very official or urgent and is too strong for most situations. Use <i>have to</i> or <i>have got to</i> .
At the end of my lease last May, I <b>had to</b> move. I <b>had to</b> find a bigger apartment.	<i>Must</i> has no past form. The past of both <i>must</i> and <i>have to</i> is <i>had to</i> . <i>Have got to</i> has no past form.

**Language Note:** We don't usually use *have got to* for questions and negatives.

**Pronunciation Note:** In fast, informal speech, *have to* is often pronounced "hafta." *Has to* is often pronounced "hasta." *Got to* is often pronounced "gotta." Often *have* is omitted before "gotta." Listen to your teacher pronounce the sentences in the above chart.

### EXERCISE 3 Fill in the blanks with an appropriate verb. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** The landlord must provide heat in cold weather.

1. You must \_\_\_\_\_ the lease with a pen. A pencil is not acceptable.
2. The landlord must \_\_\_\_\_ your security deposit if you leave your apartment in good condition.

3. The landlord must \_\_\_\_\_ you if he wants you to leave at the end of your lease.

4. You must \_\_\_\_\_ quiet in your apartment at night. Neighbors want to sleep.

**EXERCISE 4** **ABOUT YOU** Make a list of personal obligations you have.

**EXAMPLE** I have to help my parents on the weekend.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 5** **ABOUT YOU** Make a list of things you had to do last weekend.

**EXAMPLE** I had to do my laundry.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 6** Finish these statements. Practice *have got to*. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** When you live in the U.S., you've got to learn English.

1. When I don't know the meaning of a word, I've got to \_\_\_\_\_

2. English is so important in the U.S. We've got to \_\_\_\_\_

3. For this class, you've got to \_\_\_\_\_

4. If you rent an apartment, you've got to \_\_\_\_\_

5. If you want to drive a car, you've got to \_\_\_\_\_



## 8.5 Obligation with *Must* or *Be Supposed To*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>Landlord to tenant: "You <b>must</b> pay your rent on the first of each month."</p> <p>Judge to landlord: "You have no proof of damage. You <b>must</b> return the security deposit to your tenant."</p> <p>Wording on a lease: The tenant <b>must not</b> change the locks.</p>	<p><i>Must</i> has an official, formal tone. A person in a position of authority (like a landlord or judge) can use <i>must</i>.</p> <p>Legal documents use <i>must</i>.</p>
<p>You're <b>supposed to</b> put your name on your mailbox.</p> <p>The landlord <b>is supposed to</b> give you a copy of the lease.</p>	<p>Avoid using <i>must</i> if you are not in a position of authority. Use <i>be supposed to</i>.</p>
<p>We're <b>not supposed to</b> have cats in my building, but my neighbor has one.</p> <p>The landlord <b>was supposed to</b> return my security deposit, but he didn't.</p> <p>I'm <b>supposed to</b> pay my rent on the first of the month, but sometimes I forget.</p>	<p><i>Be supposed to</i>, not <i>must</i>, is used when reporting on a law or rule that was broken or a task that wasn't completed.</p>
<p><b>Pronunciation Note:</b> The <i>d</i> in <i>supposed to</i> is usually not pronounced.</p>	

### EXERCISE 7 Make these sentences less formal by changing from *must* to *be supposed to*.

**EXAMPLE** You must wear your seat belt.  
 You're supposed to wear your seat belt.

1. You must carry your driver's license with you when you drive.
2. You must stop at a red light.
3. We must put money in the parking meter during business hours.
4. Your landlord must notify you if he wants you to leave.
5. The landlord must give me a smoke detector.
6. The teacher must give a final grade at the end of the semester.
7. We must write five compositions in this course.
8. We must bring our books to class.

**EXERCISE 8** Finish these statements. Use *be supposed to* plus a verb. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** I 'm supposed to pay my rent \_\_\_\_\_ on the first of the month.

1. Pets are not permitted in my apartment. I (not) \_\_\_\_\_ a pet.
2. The landlord \_\_\_\_\_ heat in the winter months.
3. The tenants \_\_\_\_\_ before they move out.
4. The landlord \_\_\_\_\_ a smoke detector in each apartment.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ my rent last week, but I forgot.
6. My stove isn't working. My landlord \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. We're going to move out next week. Our apartment is clean and in good condition. The landlord \_\_\_\_\_ our security deposit.
8. The janitor \_\_\_\_\_ the garbage every day.
9. The janitor \_\_\_\_\_ the hallway twice a week.
10. When we move furniture, we \_\_\_\_\_ the back stairs, not the front stairs.

**EXERCISE 9** **ABOUT YOU** Write three sentences to tell what you are supposed to do for this course. You may work with a partner.

**EXAMPLE** We're supposed to write three compositions this semester.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_



## 8.6 Can, May, Could, and Alternate Expressions

EXAMPLE WITH A MODAL	ALTERNATE EXPRESSION	EXPLANATION
I <b>can</b> clean the apartment by Friday.	It <b>is possible</b> (for me) <b>to</b> clean the apartment by Friday.	Possibility
I <b>can't</b> understand the lease.	I <b>am not able to</b> understand the lease.	Ability
I <b>can't</b> have a pet in my apartment.	I <b>am not permitted to</b> have a pet. I <b>am not allowed to</b> have a pet.	Permission
The landlord <b>may not</b> keep my deposit if my apartment is clean and in good condition.	The landlord <b>is not permitted to</b> keep my deposit. The landlord <b>is not allowed to</b> keep my deposit.	Permission
I <b>couldn't</b> speak English five years ago, but I can now.	I <b>wasn't able to</b> speak English five years ago, but I can now.	Past Ability
I <b>could</b> have a dog in my last apartment, but I can't have one in my present apartment.	I <b>was permitted to</b> have a dog in my last apartment, but I can't have one in my present apartment.	Past Permission

**Language Note:** We use *can* in the following common expression:

*I can't afford* a bigger apartment. I don't have enough money.

**Pronunciation Note:** *Can* is not usually stressed in affirmative statements. In negative statements, *can't* is stressed but it is hard to hear the final *t*. So we must pay attention to the vowel sound to hear the difference between *can* and *can't*. Listen to your teacher pronounce these sentences:

I can go. /kɪn/

I can't go. /kænt/

In a short answer, we pronounce *can* as /kæn/.

Can you help me later?

Yes, I can. /kæn/

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate permission word to talk about what is or isn't permitted at this school. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLES** We aren't allowed to bring food into the classroom.

We can leave the room without asking the teacher for permission.

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ eat in the classroom.
2. Students \_\_\_\_\_ talk during a test.

3. Students \_\_\_\_\_ use their dictionaries when they write compositions.
4. Students \_\_\_\_\_ write a test with a pencil.
5. Students \_\_\_\_\_ sit in any seat they want.
6. Students \_\_\_\_\_ use their textbooks during a test.

**EXERCISE 11** Complete each statement. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLES** The landlord may not refuse to rent to a person because of his or her nationality.

The tenants may use the washing machines in the basement.

1. The tenants may not \_\_\_\_\_ the locks without the landlord's permission.
2. Each tenant in my building has a parking space. I may not \_\_\_\_\_ in another tenant's space.
3. Students may not \_\_\_\_\_ during a test.
4. Teacher to students: "You don't need my permission to leave the room. You may \_\_\_\_\_ the room if you need to."
5. Some teachers do not allow cell phones in class. In Mr. Klein's class, you may not \_\_\_\_\_ during class.
6. My teacher says that after we finish a test, we may \_\_\_\_\_ . We don't have to stay in class.

**EXERCISE 12** **ABOUT YOU** Write statements to tell what is or is not permitted in this class, in the library, at this school, or during a test. If you have any questions about what is permitted, write a question for the teacher. You may work with a partner.

**EXAMPLES** We aren't allowed to talk in the library.

May we use our textbooks during a test?

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



**EXERCISE 13**

**ABOUT YOU** Write three sentences telling about what you couldn't do in another class or school that you attended.

**EXAMPLE** *In my school, I couldn't call a teacher by his first name, but I can do it here.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 14**

**ABOUT YOU** If you come from another country, write three sentences telling about something that was prohibited there that you can do in the U.S.

**EXAMPLE** *I couldn't criticize the political leaders in my country, but I can do it in the U.S.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

## Tenants' Rights

Before  
You Read

1. What are some complaints you have about your apartment? Do you ever tell the landlord about your complaints?
2. Is your apartment warm enough in the winter and cool enough in the summer?



CD 3, TR 02

Read the following conversation. Pay special attention to *should* and *had better*.

- A:** My apartment is always too cold in the winter. I've got to move.
- B:** You don't have to move. The landlord is supposed to provide enough heat.
- A:** But he doesn't.
- B:** You **should** talk to him about this problem.
- A:** I did already. The first time I talked to him, he just told me I **should** put on a sweater. The second time I said, "You'd **better** give me heat, or I'm going to move."
- B:** You **shouldn't** get so angry. That's not the way to solve the problem. You know, there are laws about heat. You **should** get information from the city so you can know your rights.
- A:** How can I get information?
- B:** You **should** go online and get information about tenants' rights from the city's Web site. When you know exactly what the law is, you **should** present this information to your landlord.
- A:** And what if he doesn't want to do anything about it?
- B:** Then you **should** report the problem to the mayor's office.
- A:** I'm afraid to do that.
- B:** Don't be afraid. You have rights. Maybe you **should** talk to other tenants and see if you can do this together.



## 8.7 Should; Had Better

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
You <b>should</b> talk to the landlord about the problem. You <b>should</b> get information about tenants' rights. You <b>shouldn't</b> get so angry.	For advice, use <i>should</i> . <i>Should</i> = It's a good idea. <i>Shouldn't</i> = It's a bad idea.
<b>Compare:</b> Your landlord <b>must</b> give you a smoke detector. You <b>should</b> check the battery in the smoke detector occasionally.	Remember, <i>must</i> is very strong and is not for advice. It is for rules and laws. For advice, use <i>should</i> .
You <b>had better</b> give me heat, or I'm going to move. We'd <b>better not</b> make so much noise, or our neighbors will complain.	For a warning, use <i>had better (not)</i> . Something bad can happen if you don't follow this advice. The contraction for <i>had</i> (in <i>had better</i> ) is 'd. I'd you'd he'd she'd we'd they'd
<b>Pronunciation Note:</b> Native speakers often don't pronounce the <i>had</i> or 'd in <i>had better</i> . You will hear people say, "You <b>better</b> be quiet; <b>you better</b> not make so much noise."	

### EXERCISE 15 Give advice using *should*. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** I'm going to move next week, and I hope to get my security deposit back.

Advice: You should clean the apartment completely.

1. I just rented an apartment, but the rent is too high for me alone.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

2. My upstairs neighbors make a lot of noise.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

3. The battery in the smoke detector is old.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

4. I want to paint the walls.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

5. The rent was due last week, but I forgot to pay it.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

6. My landlady doesn't provide enough heat in the winter.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

7. I can't understand my lease.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

8. I broke a window in my apartment.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

9. My landlord doesn't want to return my security deposit.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

10. The landlord is going to raise the rent by 40 percent.

Advice: \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 16** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate verb (phrase) to complete this conversation. Answers may vary.



**A:** My mother is such a worrier.

**B:** What does she worry about?

**A:** Everything. Especially me.

**B:** For example?

**A:** Even if it's warm outside, she always says, "you'd better

take a sweater because it might get cold later," or "You'd

better \_\_\_\_\_ because it might rain." When I drive,

she always tells me, "You'd better \_\_\_\_\_, or you might

get a ticket." If I stay out late with my friends, she tells me, "You'd

better \_\_\_\_\_, or you won't get enough sleep." If I read

a lot, she says, "You'd better not \_\_\_\_\_, or you'll ruin

your eyesight."

**B:** Well, she's your mother. So naturally she worries about you.

**A:** But she worries about other things too.

**B:** Like what?

**A:** "You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes when you enter the apartment, or the neighbors downstairs will hear us walking around.

We'd better \_\_\_\_\_, or the neighbors will complain about the noise in our apartment."

**B:** It sounds like she's a good neighbor.



(continued)



**A:** That's not all. She unplugs the TV every night. She says, "I'd better \_\_\_\_\_, or the apartment will fill up with radiation."  
(7)

And she doesn't want to use a cell phone. She says it has too much radiation. I think that's so silly.

**B:** I don't think that's silly. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ some articles about cell phones, because they do produce radiation.  
(8)

**A:** I don't even use my cell phone very much. But my mother always tells me, "You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ in case I need to call you."  
(9)

**B:** Do you live with your mother?

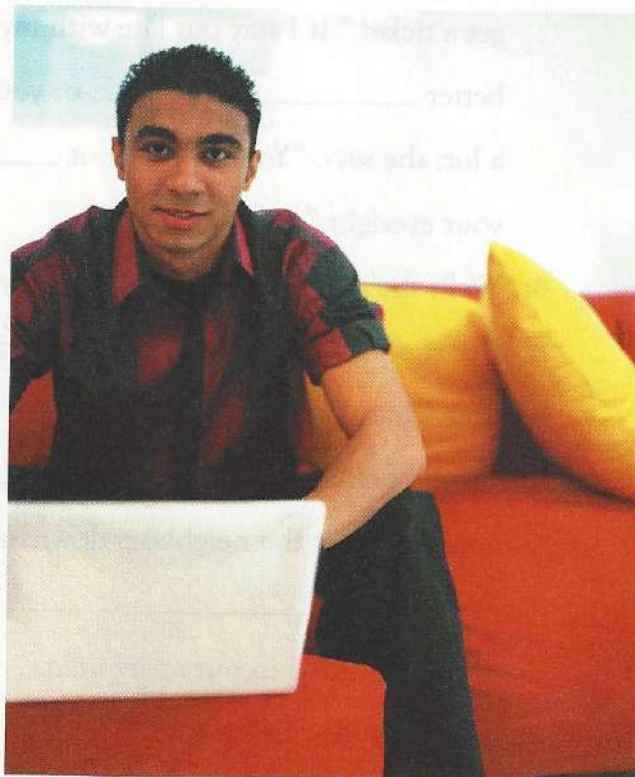
**A:** Yes, I do. I think I'd better \_\_\_\_\_ to my own apartment, or she'll drive me crazy.  
(10)

## Using Craigslist.org to Find a Roommate

Before

You Read

1. Do you ever use the Internet to find an apartment?
2. How did you find your current apartment?



- A:** I'm looking for a new roommate. My roommate moved out last month, and I **can't** pay the rent by myself.
- B:** You can put an ad on Craigslist.
- A:** What's that?
- B:** It's a Web site where you can advertise. You can sell, buy, rent, find jobs, look for roommates—you can do a lot of things on Craigslist.org.
- A:** How much does it cost to put an ad on this site?
- B:** It's free. You **don't have to** pay anything. Let's go to the computer. I'll show you. . . . [*looking at the Web site*]
- A:** These ads all have pictures.
- B:** You **don't have to** include pictures, but it's a good idea. You get more responses if you include pictures.
- A:** This is great. Can you help me write an ad?
- B:** Sure. You included your phone number.
- A:** What's wrong with that?
- B:** You **shouldn't** include it. It's better if you get e-mail.
- A:** OK. Now let's take pictures of my apartment. I'll get my camera.
- B:** You'd **better not** take pictures yet. Your apartment is a mess. You need to clean it up first.
- A:** Oh, right.
- B:** You know, I just thought of something. My cousin, Lisa, needs a roommate.
- A:** Lisa? She has a dog. We **can't** have dogs in the apartment.
- B:** Are you sure? Look at your lease.
- A:** Here it is. It says, "Renters **may not** have a pet." Besides, Lisa's a woman. In my country, men and women **aren't supposed to** live together. My parents wouldn't like it.
- B:** They **don't have to** know. They don't even live in this country.
- A:** I'd **better not** do it. I can't lie to my parents.



## 8.8 Negatives of Modals

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Renters <b>may not</b> have a pet. Renters <b>must not</b> change the locks without the owner's permission.	Prohibition in documents is often expressed with <i>may not</i> or <i>must not</i> . These modals sound very formal or official.
a. I <b>can't</b> have a dog in my apartment. a. We <b>can't</b> leave our bikes in the hallway. b. I <b>can't</b> pay the rent by myself. b. I <b>can't</b> carry my bike up the stairs. It's too heavy.	a. <i>Cannot</i> , in these examples, shows prohibition. It is less formal than <i>may not</i> or <i>must not</i> . b. <i>Cannot</i> , in these examples, shows inability.
a. You're <b>not supposed to</b> have a dog in your apartment. b. In my country, men and women <b>are not supposed to</b> live together if they're not married.	a. <i>You're not supposed to</i> is a less formal way of showing prohibition than <i>you may not</i> . b. <i>Be not supposed to</i> , in this example, shows a custom.
You <b>shouldn't</b> include your phone number in the ad. In case of fire, you <b>shouldn't</b> use the elevator. You <b>shouldn't</b> leave your door unlocked. It's not safe.	<i>Shouldn't</i> gives advice.
a. You'd <b>better not</b> take pictures now. Your apartment is a mess. b. I'd <b>better not</b> get a female roommate. My parents wouldn't like it.	a. <i>Had better not</i> is used for a warning. b. <i>Had better not</i> can be an emotional response to a suggestion to do something wrong.
a. You <b>don't have to</b> tell your parents. b. You <b>don't have to</b> include pictures on Craigslist, but it's a good idea.	a. <i>Don't have to</i> means not necessary. b. <i>Don't have to</i> sometimes means that you have an option (include picture or not).
<b>Compare:</b> a. We're <b>not supposed to</b> leave our bikes near the door, but someone always does it. b. You <b>shouldn't</b> lie to your parents. c. You <b>don't have to</b> include pictures on Craigslist. It's your choice. d. Tenants <b>must not</b> change the locks.	Sentence (a) shows that a rule is violated. Sentence (b) gives advice. Sentence (c) shows that something is not necessary. Sentence (d) shows that something is not permitted. In affirmative statements, <i>must</i> and <i>have to</i> have very similar meanings. However, in negative statements, the meaning is very different: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• not have to = not necessary</li> <li>• must not = prohibited</li> </ul>

**EXERCISE 17** Practice using *must not* for prohibition. Use *you* in the impersonal sense. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** Name something you must not do.  
You must not steal.

1. Name something you must not do on the bus.
2. Name something you mustn't do during a test.
3. Name something you mustn't do in the library.
4. Name something you must not do in the classroom.
5. Name something you mustn't do on an airplane.

**EXERCISE 18** **ABOUT YOU** Tell if you *have to* or *don't have to* do the following. For affirmative statements, you can also use *have got to*.

**EXAMPLES** work on Saturdays  
I have to work on Saturdays. OR I've got to work on Saturdays.  
wear a suit to work  
I don't have to wear a suit to work.

1. speak English every day
2. use a dictionary to read the newspaper
3. pay rent on the first of the month
4. type my homework
5. work on Saturdays
6. come to school every day
7. pay my rent in cash
8. use public transportation
9. talk to the teacher after class
10. cook every day

**EXERCISE 19** Ask a student who comes from another country these questions.

1. In your native country, does a citizen have to vote?
2. Do men have to serve in the military?
3. Do schoolchildren have to wear uniforms?
4. Do people have to get permission to travel?
5. Do students have to pass an exam to get their high school or university diploma?



6. Do students have to pay for their own books?
7. Do citizens have to pay taxes?
8. Do people have to make an appointment to see a doctor?

**EXERCISE 20** Fill in the blanks with *be not supposed to* (when there is a rule) or *don't have to* (when something is not necessary).

CD 3, TR 05



**A:** Would you like to see my new apartment?

**B:** Yes.

**A:** I'll take you there after class today. The teacher says we

don't have to go to the lab this afternoon. We can take  
(example)  
the day off today.

(At the apartment)

**B:** Why do you carry your bicycle up to the third floor? Wouldn't it be better to leave it near the front door?

**A:** The landlord says we \_\_\_\_\_ leave anything near the  
(1)  
door. The rule is to leave the front lobby empty. Besides, I can take it up in the elevator. I \_\_\_\_\_ use the stairs, but  
(2)  
I don't mind carrying it. My bicycle is light.

**B:** This is a great apartment. But it's so big. Isn't it expensive?

**A:** Yes, but I \_\_\_\_\_ pay the rent alone. I have a  
(3)  
roommate.

**B:** I see you have lots of nice pictures on the walls. In my apartment, we \_\_\_\_\_ make holes in the walls.  
(4)

**A:** You can't even put up pictures? If you use picture hooks, you \_\_\_\_\_ make big holes. Why don't you ask your  
(5)  
landlord if you can do it? If you can, I can give you some picture hooks.

**B:** Thanks. In my apartment, the landlord has so many rules. For example, we \_\_\_\_\_ hang our laundry out the  
(6)  
window. We have to use the clothes dryer in the basement.

And we \_\_\_\_\_ use electric heaters.  
(7)



**A:** An electric heater can sometimes cause a fire. I'm sure the apartment has heaters for each room. And in the U.S. people don't usually hang clothes to dry out the window. People use dryers.

**B:** There are so many different rules and customs here.

**A:** Don't worry. If you do something wrong, someone will tell you.

**EXERCISE 21** Students (S) are asking the teacher (T) questions about the final exam. Fill in the blanks with the negative form of *have to*, *should*, *must*, *had better*, *can*, *may*, or *be supposed to*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.



CD 3, TR 06

**S:** Do I have to sit in a specific seat for the test?

**T:** No, you don't have to. You can choose any seat you want.  
(example)

**S:** Is it OK if I talk to another student during a test?

**T:** No. Absolutely not. You \_\_\_\_\_ talk to another student during a test.  
(1)

**S:** Is it OK if I use my book?

**T:** Sorry. You \_\_\_\_\_ use your book.  
(2)

**S:** What if I don't understand something on the test? Can I ask another student?

**T:** You \_\_\_\_\_ talk to another student, or I'll think you're getting an answer. Ask me if you have a question.  
(3)

**S:** What happens if I'm late for the test? Will you let me in?

**T:** Of course I'll let you in. But you \_\_\_\_\_ come late. You'll need a lot of time for the test.  
(4)

**S:** Do I have to bring my own paper for the final test?

**T:** If you want to, you can. But you \_\_\_\_\_ bring paper. I'll give you paper if you need it.  
(5)

**S:** Must I use a pen?

**T:** You can use whatever you want. You \_\_\_\_\_ use a pen.  
(6)

**S:** Do you have any advice on test-taking?

(continued)



**T:** Yes. If you see an item that is difficult for you, go on to the next item.

You \_\_\_\_\_ (7) spend too much time on a difficult item, or you won't finish the test.

**S:** Can I bring coffee into the classroom?

**T:** The school has a rule about eating or drinking in the classroom. You \_\_\_\_\_ (8) bring food or drinks into the classroom.

**S:** If I finish the test early, must I stay in the room?

**T:** No, you \_\_\_\_\_ (9) stay. You can leave.

## The New Neighbors

Before

You Read

1. Are people friendly with their neighbors in your community?
2. Do you know any of your neighbors now?





CD 3, TR 07

Read the following conversation. Pay special attention to *must*.

Lisa (L) knocks on the door of her new upstairs neighbor, Paula (P).

- L:** Hi. You **must be** the new neighbor. I saw the moving truck out front this morning. Let me introduce myself. My name is Lisa. I live downstairs from you.
- P:** Nice to meet you, Lisa. My name is Paula. We just moved in.
- L:** I saw the movers carrying a crib upstairs. You **must have** a baby.
- P:** We do. We have a 10-month-old son. He's sleeping now. Do you have any kids?
- L:** Yes. I have a 16-year-old-daughter and an 18-year-old son.
- P:** It **must be** hard to raise teenagers.
- L:** Believe me, it is! I **must spend** half my time worrying about where they are and what they're doing. My daughter talks on the phone all day. She **must spend** half of her waking hours on the phone with her friends. They're always whispering to each other. They **must have** some big secrets.
- P:** I know what you mean. My brother has a teenage daughter.
- L:** Listen, I don't want to take up any more of your time. You **must be** very busy. I just wanted to bring you these cookies.
- P:** Thanks. That's very nice of you. They're still warm. They **must be** right out of the oven.
- L:** They are. Maybe we can talk some other time when you're all unpacked.

## 8.9 *Must* for Conclusions

In Section 8.4, we studied *must* to express necessity. *Must* has another use: we use it to show a logical conclusion or deduction based on information we have or observations we make. *Must*, in this case, is for the present only, not the future.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>a. The new neighbors have a crib. They <b>must have</b> a baby.</p> <p>b. Paula just moved in. She <b>must be</b> very busy.</p> <p>c. The teenage girls whisper all the time. They <b>must have</b> secrets.</p>	<p>a. You see the crib, so you conclude that they have a baby.</p> <p>b. You know how hard it is to move, so you conclude that she is busy.</p> <p>c. You see them whispering, so you conclude that they are telling secrets.</p>
<p>I didn't see Paula's husband. He <b>must not be</b> home.</p>	<p>For a negative deduction, use <i>must not</i>. Do not use a contraction.</p>



**EXERCISE 22** A week later, Paula goes to Lisa's apartment and notices certain things. Use *must* + base form to show Paula's conclusions about Lisa's life. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** There is a bowl of food on the kitchen floor.

*Lisa must have a pet.*

---

1. There are pictures of Lisa and her two children all over the house.

There is no picture of a man.

---

2. There is a nursing certificate on the wall with Lisa's name on it.

---

3. There are many different kinds of coffee on a kitchen shelf.

---

4. There are a lot of classical music CDs.

---

5. In Lisa's bedroom, there's a sewing machine.

---

6. In the kitchen, there are a lot of cookbooks.

---

7. There's a piano in the living room.

---

8. On the bookshelf, there are a lot of books about modern art.

---

9. On the kitchen calendar, there's an activity filled in for almost every day of the week.

---

10. There are pictures of cats everywhere.

---

**EXERCISE 23** Two neighbors, Alma (A) and Eva (E), meet in the hallway of their building. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate verb to show deduction.



CD 3, TR 08

**A:** Hi. My name's Alma. I live on the third floor. You must

be new in this building.

(example)

**E:** I am. We just moved in last week. My name's Eva.

**A:** I noticed your last name on the mailbox. It's Ković. That sounds like a Bosnian name. You must \_\_\_\_\_ from Bosnia.  
(1)

**E:** I am. How did you know?

**A:** I'm from Bosnia too. Did you come directly to the U.S. from Bosnia?

**E:** No. I stayed in Germany for three years.

**A:** Then you must \_\_\_\_\_ German.  
(2)

**E:** I can speak it pretty well, but I can't write it well.

**A:** Are you going to school now?

**E:** Yes, I'm taking English classes at Washington College.

**A:** What level are you in?

**E:** I'm in Level 5.

**A:** Then you must \_\_\_\_\_ my husband. He takes classes there too.  
(3)  
He's in Level 5 too.

**E:** There's only one guy with a Bosnian last name. That must \_\_\_\_\_ your husband.  
(4)

**A:** His name is Hasan.

**E:** Oh, yes, I know him. I didn't know he lived in the same building. I never see him here. He must not \_\_\_\_\_ home very much.  
(5)

**A:** He isn't. He has two jobs.

**E:** Do you take English classes?

**A:** Not anymore. I came here 15 years ago.

**E:** Then your English must \_\_\_\_\_ perfect.  
(6)

**A:** I don't know if it's perfect, but it's good enough.



## 8.10 Will and May/Might

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
My lease <b>will</b> expire on April 30. We <b>won't</b> sign another lease.	For certainty about the future, use <i>will</i> . The negative contraction for <i>will not</i> is <i>won't</i> .
a. My landlord <b>might</b> raise my rent at that time. a. I <b>may</b> move. b. I don't know what "tenant" means. Let's ask the teacher. She <b>might</b> know. b. The teacher <b>may</b> have information about tenants' rights.	<i>May</i> and <i>might</i> both have about the same meaning: possibility or uncertainty.  a. about the future b. about the present
He <b>may not</b> renew our lease. He <b>might not</b> renew our lease.	We don't use a contraction for <i>may not</i> and <i>might not</i> .
<b>Compare:</b> a. <b>Maybe</b> I will move. b. I <b>might</b> move.  a. <b>Maybe</b> he doesn't understand the lease. b. He <b>might</b> not understand the lease.  a. <b>Maybe</b> the apartment is cold in winter. ( <i>maybe</i> = adverb) b. The apartment <b>may</b> be cold in winter. ( <i>may + be</i> = modal + verb)	<i>Maybe</i> is an adverb. It is one word. It usually comes at the beginning of the sentence and means <i>possibly</i> or <i>perhaps</i> . <i>May</i> and <i>might</i> are modals. They follow the subject and precede the verb. Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning.  <i>Wrong:</i> I <i>maybe</i> will move. <i>Wrong:</i> He <i>maybe</i> doesn't understand. <i>Wrong:</i> The apartment <i>maybe</i> is cold.

**EXERCISE 24** The following sentences contain *maybe*. Take away *maybe* and use *may* or *might* + base form.

**EXAMPLE** Maybe your neighbors will complain if your music is loud.  
 Your neighbors might complain if your music is loud.

1. Maybe my sister will come to live with me.
2. Maybe she will find a job in this city.
3. Maybe my landlord will raise my rent.
4. Maybe I will get a dog.
5. Maybe my landlord won't allow me to have a dog.
6. Maybe I will move next year.
7. Maybe I will buy a house soon.
8. Maybe I won't stay in this city.
9. Maybe I won't come to class tomorrow.
10. Maybe the teacher will review modals if we need more help.

**EXERCISE 25** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with a possibility.

**EXAMPLES** If I don't pay my rent on time, I might have to pay a late fee.

If I make a lot of noise in my apartment, the neighbors may complain.

1. When my lease is up, \_\_\_\_\_
2. If I don't clean my apartment before I move out, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. If I don't study for the next test, \_\_\_\_\_
4. If we don't register for classes early, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. If I don't pass this course, \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 26** Fill in the blanks with possibilities. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE A:** I'm going to move on Saturday. I might need help. Can you help me?



CD 3, TR 09

**B:** I'm not sure. I may go to the country with my family if the weather is nice. If I stay here, I'll help you.

- 1. A:** My next door neighbor's name is Terry Karson. I see her name on the doorbell but I never see her.

**B:** Why do you say "her"? Your neighbor may \_\_\_\_\_ a man. Terry is sometimes a man's name.
- 2. A:** I need coins for the laundry room. Do you have any?

**B:** Let me look. I might \_\_\_\_\_ some. No, I don't have any. Look in the laundry room. There might \_\_\_\_\_ a dollar-bill changer there.
- 3. A:** Do you know the landlord's address?

**B:** No, I don't. Ask the manager. She might \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** Where's the manager now?

**B:** I'm not sure. She might \_\_\_\_\_ in a tenant's apartment.
- 4. A:** Do they allow cats in this building?

**B:** I'm not sure. I know they don't allow dogs, but they might \_\_\_\_\_ cats.

(continued)



5. **A:** We'd better close the windows before going out.  
**B:** Why? It's a hot day today.  
**A:** Look how gray the sky is. It might \_\_\_\_\_.
6. **A:** Are you going to stay in this apartment for another year?  
**B:** I'm not sure. I may \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A:** Why?  
**B:** The landlord might \_\_\_\_\_ the rent. If the rent goes up more than 25 percent, I'll move.



7. **A:** I have so much stuff in my closet. There's not enough room for my clothes.  
**B:** There might \_\_\_\_\_ lockers in the basement where you can store your things.  
**A:** Really? I didn't know that.  
**B:** Let's look. I may \_\_\_\_\_ a key to the basement with me.  
**A:** That would be great.  
**B:** Hmm. I don't have one on me. Let's go to my apartment. My basement keys might \_\_\_\_\_ there.

## At A Garage Sale

### Before You Read

1. People often have a garage sale or yard sale or an apartment sale before they move. At this kind of sale, people sell things that they don't want or need anymore. Do you ever go to garage sales?
2. At a garage or yard sale, it is usually not necessary to pay the asking price. You may be able to bargain<sup>3</sup> with the seller. Can you bargain the price in other places?

<sup>3</sup>When a buyer *bargains* with the seller, the buyer makes an offer lower than the asking price and hopes that he or she and the seller will agree on a lower price.

This is a conversation at a garage sale between a seller (S) and a buyer (B). Read the conversation. Pay special attention to modals and related expressions.

- S:** I see you're looking at my microwave oven. **May** I answer any questions?
- B:** Yes. I'm interested in buying one. Does it work well?
- S:** It's only two years old, and it's in perfect working condition. **Would** you like to try it out?
- B:** Sure. **Could** you plug it in somewhere?
- S:** I have an outlet right here. **Why don't** we boil a cup of water so you can see how well it works?  
(A few minutes later)
- B:** It seems to work well. **Would** you tell me why you're selling it, then?
- S:** We're moving next week. Our new apartment already has one.
- B:** How much do you want for it?<sup>4</sup>
- S:** \$40.
- B:** **Will** you take \$30?
- S:** **Can** you wait a minute? I'll ask my wife.  
(A few minutes later)
- S:** My wife says she'll let you have it for \$35.
- B:** OK. **May** I write you a check?
- S:** I'm sorry. I'd **rather** have cash.
- B:** **Would** you hold it for me for an hour? I can go to the ATM<sup>5</sup> and get cash.
- S:** **Could** you leave me a small deposit? Ten dollars, maybe?
- B:** Yes, I can.
- S:** Fine. I'll hold it for you.



<sup>4</sup>We ask "How much is it?" when the price is fixed. We ask "How much do you want for it?" when the price is negotiable—you can bargain for it.

<sup>5</sup>An ATM is an Automatic Teller Machine. You can use this machine to get cash from your bank account.



## 8.11 Using Modals and Questions for Politeness

	EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
To ask permission	<b>May</b> <b>Can</b> <b>Could</b>	<i>May</i> and <i>could</i> are considered more polite than <i>can</i> by some speakers of English.
To request that someone do something	<b>Can</b> <b>Could</b> <b>Will</b> <b>Would</b>	
To express want or desire	<b>Would</b> you <b>like</b> to try out the microwave oven? Yes, I <b>would like</b> to see if it works. I'd <b>like</b> to boil a cup of water.	<i>Would like</i> has the same meaning as <i>want</i> . <i>Would like</i> is softer than <i>want</i> . The contraction for <i>would</i> after a pronoun is 'd.
To express preference	I <b>would rather</b> buy a used microwave <b>than</b> a new one. <b>Would</b> you <b>rather</b> pay with cash <b>or</b> by check? I'd <b>rather</b> pay by check.	Use <i>than</i> in statements with <i>would rather</i> to show options. Use <i>or</i> in questions. The second option can be omitted if it's obvious.
To offer a suggestion	<b>Why don't you</b> go to the ATM to get cash? <b>Why don't we</b> boil a cup of water? <b>Compare:</b> Go to the ATM. Boil a cup of water.	We can make a suggestion more polite by using a negative question.
<b>Language Note:</b> Modals and questions are often used to make direct statements more polite. <b>Compare:</b> Plug it in. (very direct) Would you plug it in? (more polite)		

**EXERCISE 27** Change each request to make it more polite. Practice *may*, *can*, and *could* + *I*.

**EXAMPLES** I want to use your phone.  
 May I use your phone?  
 I want to borrow a quarter.  
 Could I borrow a quarter?

- I want to help you.
- I want to close the door.
- I want to leave the room.
- I want to write you a check.

**EXERCISE 28** Change these commands to make them more polite. Practice *can you, could you, will you, and would you*.

**EXAMPLES** Call the doctor for me.  
Would you call the doctor for me?  
Give me a cup of coffee.  
Could you give me a cup of coffee, please?

1. Repeat the sentence.
2. Give me your paper.
3. Spell your name.
4. Tell me your phone number.

**EXERCISE 29** Make these sentences more polite by using *would like*.

**EXAMPLE** Do you want some help?  
Would you like some help?

1. I want to ask you a question.
2. The teacher wants to speak with you.
3. Do you want to try out the oven?
4. Yes. I want to see if it works.

**EXERCISE 30** Make each suggestion more polite by putting it in the form of a negative question.

**EXAMPLES** Plug it in.  
Why don't you plug it in?  
Let's eat now.  
Why don't we eat now?

1. Take a sweater.
2. Let's turn off the light.
3. Turn left here.
4. Let's leave early.

**EXERCISE 31** **ABOUT YOU** Make a statement of preference using *would rather*.

**EXAMPLE** own a house / a condominium  
I'd rather own a condominium than a house.

1. live in the U.S. / in another country
2. own a condominium / rent an apartment
3. have young neighbors / old neighbors
4. have wood floors / carpeted floors
5. live in the center of the city / in a suburb
6. drive to work / take public transportation
7. pay my rent by check / with cash
8. have nosy neighbors / noisy neighbors



**EXERCISE 32** **ABOUT YOU** Ask a question of preference with the words given.  
Another student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** eat Chinese food / Italian food

**A:** Would you rather eat Chinese food or Italian food?

**B:** I'd rather eat Italian food.

1. read fact / fiction
2. watch funny movies / serious movies
3. listen to classical music / popular music
4. visit Europe / Africa
5. own a large luxury car / a small sports car
6. watch a soccer game / take part in a soccer game
7. write a letter / receive a letter
8. cook / eat in a restaurant

**EXERCISE 33** This is a conversation between a seller (S) and a buyer (B) at a garage sale. Make this conversation more polite by using modals and other polite expressions in place of the underlined words.

Answers may vary.

May I help you?



CD 3, TR 11

**S:** What do you want?  
(example)

**B:** I'm interested in that lamp. Show it to me. Does it work?  
(1)

**S:** I'll go and get a light bulb. Wait a minute.  
(2)

(A few minutes later)

**B:** Plug it in.  
(3)

**S:** You see? It works fine.

**B:** How much do you want for it?

**S:** This is one of a pair. I have another one just like it. They're \$10 each.

I prefer to sell them together.  
(4)

**B:** Give them both to me for \$15.  
(5)

**S:** I'll have to ask my husband.

(A few seconds later)

My husband says he'll sell them to you for \$17.

**B:** Fine. I'll take them. Will you take a check?

**S:** I prefer to have cash.  
(6)



**B:** I only have five dollars on me.

**S:** OK. I'll take a check. Show me some identification.

(7)

**B:** Here's my driver's license.

**S:** That's fine. Just write the check to James Kucinski.

**B:** Spell your name for me.

(8)

**S:** K-U-C-I-N-S-K-I.

## Summary of Lesson 8

### Modals

MODAL	EXAMPLE	EXPLANATION
can	I <b>can</b> stay in this apartment until March. I <b>can</b> carry my bicycle up to my apartment. You <b>can't</b> paint the walls without the landlord's permission. <b>Can</b> I borrow your pen? <b>Can</b> you turn off the light, please?	Permission Ability/Possibility Prohibition Asking permission Request
should	You <b>should</b> be friendly with your neighbors. You <b>shouldn't</b> leave the air conditioner on. It wastes electricity.	A good idea A bad idea
may	<b>May</b> I borrow your pen? You <b>may</b> leave the room. You <b>may not</b> talk during a test. I <b>may</b> move next month. The landlord <b>may</b> have an extra key.	Asking permission Giving permission Prohibition Future possibility Present possibility
might	I <b>might</b> move next month. The landlord <b>might</b> have an extra key.	Future possibility Present possibility
must	The landlord <b>must</b> install smoke detectors. You <b>must not</b> change the locks. Mary has a cat carrier. She <b>must</b> have a cat.	Rule or law: Official tone Prohibition: Official tone Conclusion/Deduction
would	<b>Would</b> you help me move?	Request
would like	I <b>would like</b> to use your phone.	Want
would rather	I <b>would rather</b> live in Florida than in Maine.	Preference
could	In my country, I <b>couldn't</b> choose my own apartment. The government gave me one. In my country, I <b>could</b> attend college for free. <b>Could</b> you help me move? <b>Could</b> I borrow your car?	Past permission Past ability Request Asking permission



## Related Expressions

EXPRESSION	EXAMPLE	EXPLANATION
have to	She <b>has to</b> leave. He <b>had to</b> leave work early today.	Necessity Past necessity
have got to	She <b>has got to</b> see a doctor. I've <b>got to</b> move.	Necessity
not have to	You <b>don't have to</b> pay your rent with cash. You can pay by check.	No necessity
had better	You <b>had better</b> pay your rent on time, or the landlord will ask you to leave. You'd <b>better</b> get permission before changing the locks.	Warning
be supposed to	We're <b>not supposed to</b> have a dog here. I <b>was supposed to</b> pay my rent by the fifth of the month, but I forgot.	Reporting a rule or obligation
be able to	The teacher <b>is able to</b> use modals correctly.	Ability
be permitted to be allowed to	We're <b>not permitted to</b> park here overnight. We're <b>not allowed to</b> park here overnight.	Permission

## Editing Advice

1. After a modal, use the base form.

I must ~~to~~ study.

I can helping you now.

2. A modal has no ending.

He cans cook.

3. Don't put two modals together. Change the second modal to another form.

She will <sup>have to</sup> ~~must~~ take the test.

4. Don't forget *to* after *be permitted*, *be allowed*, *be supposed*, and *be able*.

We're not permitted <sup>to</sup> ~~talk~~ during a test.

5. Don't forget *be* before *permitted to*, *allowed to*, *supposed to*, and *able to*.

<sup>am</sup>  
I <sup>^</sup>not supposed to pay my rent late.

6. Use the correct word order in a question.

<sup>should I</sup>  
What I ~~should~~ do about my problem?

7. Don't use *can* for past. Use *could* + a base form.

<sup>couldn't go</sup>  
I ~~can't~~ went to the party last week.

8. Don't forget *would* before *rather*.

<sup>'d</sup>  
I <sup>^</sup>rather live in Canada than in the U.S.

9. Don't forget *had* before *better*.

<sup>'d</sup>  
You <sup>^</sup>better take a sweater. It's going to get cold.

10. Don't forget *have* before *got to*.

<sup>'ve</sup>  
It's late. I <sup>^</sup>got to go.

11. Don't use *maybe* before a verb.

<sup>may</sup>  
It ~~maybe~~ will rain later.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

<sup>'ve</sup>  
A: I <sup>^</sup>got to move when my lease is up.  
(example) C

B: Why <sup>do you have to</sup> move? You have a great apartment.  
(example)

A: I want to get a dog, but <sup>we not permitted to</sup> have dogs in my building.  
(1)

B: Maybe your landlord won't find out.

A: Of course he'll find out. I <sup>will have to</sup> take the dog out for a walk a few times a day.  
(2)

B: How <sup>will he</sup> know? My landlord only comes once a month on the day we <sup>supposed to</sup> pay the rent.  
(3)  
(4)



- A:** My landlord lives on the first floor.
- B:** Oh. That's a problem. What about a cat? Cats are allow in your building, right? He maybe will let you have a cat.
- A:** Cats are permit, but I can't be around cats.
- B:** Why you can't be around cats?
- A:** I'm allergic to them. Anyway, I rather have a dog. Dogs are better companions.
- B:** If you want a companion, maybe you should find a roommate.
- A:** I used to have a roommate, but we can't agreed on a lot of things. So when he moved out, I decided that I better not to have another roommate.

## Lesson 8 Test/Review

**PART 1** This is a conversation between two friends. Circle the correct expression in parentheses ( ) to complete the conversation.

- A:** I'm moving on Saturday. (Could / May) you help me?
- B:** I (should / would) like to help you, but I have a bad back. I went to my doctor last week, and she told me that I (shouldn't / don't have to) lift anything heavy for a while. (Can / Would) I help you any other way besides moving?
- A:** Yes. I don't have enough boxes. (Should / Would) you help me find some?
- B:** Sure. I (have to / must) go shopping this afternoon. I'll pick up some boxes while I'm at the supermarket.
- A:** Boxes can be heavy. You (would / had) better not lift them yourself.
- B:** Don't worry. I'll have someone put them in my car for me.
- A:** Thanks. I don't have a free minute. I (couldn't go / can't went) to class all last week. There's so much to do.

**B:** I know what you mean. You (*might* / *must*)<sup>(8)</sup> be tired.

**A:** I am. I have another favor to ask. (*Can* / *Would*)<sup>(9)</sup> I borrow your van on Saturday?

**B:** I (*should* / *have to*)<sup>(10)</sup> work on Saturday. How about Sunday? I (*must not* / *don't have to*)<sup>(11)</sup> work on Sunday.

**A:** That's impossible. I (*'ve got to* / *should*)<sup>(12)</sup> move out on Saturday. The new tenants are moving in Sunday morning.

**B:** Let me ask my brother. He has a van too. He (*must* / *might*)<sup>(13)</sup> be able to let you use his van. He (*has to* / *should*)<sup>(14)</sup> work Saturday too, but only for half a day.

**A:** Thanks. I'd appreciate it if you could ask him.

**B:** Why are you moving? You have a great apartment.

**A:** We decided to move to the suburbs. It's quieter there. And I want to have a dog. I (*shouldn't* / *'m not supposed to*)<sup>(15)</sup> have a dog in my present apartment. But my new landlord says I (*might* / *may*)<sup>(16)</sup> have a dog.

**B:** I (*had* / *would*)<sup>(17)</sup> rather have a cat. They're easier to take care of.

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks to complete the sentences. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

1. I don't like my apartment. I have such noisy neighbors. I can<sup>(example)</sup> hear their music all the time. Sometimes I \_\_\_\_\_ study or sleep at night because it's so loud. I don't know why they play the music so loud. They \_\_\_\_\_ be deaf!
2. I take my bike upstairs because we're not \_\_\_\_\_ to leave our bikes in the hallway.
3. Stop! Put down that hammer. You'd \_\_\_\_\_ not make a hole in the wall to put up that picture, or the landlord will get angry. He \_\_\_\_\_ even keep your security deposit.
4. I'd \_\_\_\_\_ take public transportation \_\_\_\_\_ go to work by car. That's why I moved close to the train.



5. Your brother lives alone. He \_\_\_\_\_ be lonely. Maybe he \_\_\_\_\_ get a roommate.
6. My lease says, "Tenants \_\_\_\_\_ not have a water bed."
7. My landlady is raising my rent. I've \_\_\_\_\_ to find a new apartment.
8. My mother's coming to visit, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to clean my apartment.
9. I can help you move on Saturday because I don't \_\_\_\_\_ to work that day.
10. Do you see that sign? It says "No Parking in Front of Building." You're not \_\_\_\_\_ to park here. Park in the back.

## Expansion

### Classroom

**Activities** ① **A student will read one of the following problems out loud to the class, pretending that this is his or her problem. Other students will ask for more information and give advice about this problem.**

**EXAMPLE** My mother-in-law comes to visit all the time. When she's here, she always criticizes everything we do. I told my wife that I don't want her here, but she says, "It's my mother, and I want her here." What should I do?

**A:** How long does she usually stay?

**B:** She might stay for about two weeks or longer.

**C:** How does she criticize you? What does she say?

**B:** She says I should help my wife more.

**D:** Well, I agree with her. You should help with housework. What other problems are you having with her?

**B:** My children aren't allowed to watch TV after 8.00 P.M. But my mother-in-law lets them watch TV as long as they want.

**E:** You'd better have a talk with her and tell her your rules.

**Problem 1.** My mother is 80 years old, and she lives with us. It's very hard on my family to take care of her. We'd like to put her in a nursing home, where she can get better care. Mother refuses to go. What can we do?

**Problem 2.** I'm sixteen years old. I want to get a part-time job after school. I want to save money to buy a car. My parents say I won't have enough time to study. But I think I can do both. How can I convince my parents?

**Problem 3.** I have a nice one-bedroom apartment with a beautiful view of a park and a lake. I live with my wife and one child. My friends from out of town often come to visit and want to stay at my apartment. In the last year, ten people came to visit us. I like to have visitors, but sometimes they stay for weeks. It's hard on my family with such a small apartment. What should I tell my friends when they want to visit?

**Problem 4.** My upstairs neighbors make noise all the time. I can't sleep at night. I have asked them three times to be quieter, and each time they said they would. But the noise still continues. What should I do?

**Problem 5.** My roommate brings friends home all the time. They eat pizza, drink sodas, and watch TV. When they leave, the apartment is a mess. What should I do?

**② Work with a partner from your own country, if possible. Talk about some laws in your country that are different from laws in the U.S. Present this information to the class.**

**EXAMPLE** Citizens must vote in my country. In the U.S., they don't have to vote. People are supposed to carry identification papers at all times. In the U.S., people don't have to carry identification papers.

## Talk

### About It

- ① Compare renting an apartment here with renting an apartment in another country or city.**
- ② How did you find your present apartment?**
- ③ What are some of the things you like about the place where you live? What are some of the things you dislike?**



## Write

### About It

- 1 Write a short composition comparing rules in an apartment in this city with rules in an apartment in your hometown or native country.
- 2 Find out what a student has to do to register for the first time at this school. You may want to visit the registrar's office to interview a worker there. Write a short composition explaining to a new student the steps for admission and registration.
- 3 Write about the differences between rules at this school and rules at another school you attended. Are students allowed to do things here that they can't do in another school?

#### Comparing School Rules

The rules and customs at this school, Harper College, and my college back home in the Philippines are different. At this school, we don't have to call our teachers "Mr." or "Ms." We can call them by their first names. In the Philippines, students must call teachers by their title, "Professor"...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.



## Lesson

# 9

### Grammar

The Present Perfect

The Present Perfect  
Continuous<sup>1</sup>

### Context

The Internet



<sup>1</sup>The present perfect continuous is sometimes called the present perfect progressive.



## 9.1 The Present Perfect Tense—An Overview

We form the present perfect with *have* or *has* + the past participle.

Subject	<i>have</i>	Past Participle	Complement	Explanation
I	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b>	in the U.S. for three years.	Use <i>have</i> with <i>I</i> , <i>you</i> , <i>we</i> , <i>they</i> , and plural nouns.
You	<b>have</b>	<b>used</b>	your computer a lot.	
We	<b>have</b>	<b>written</b>	a job résumé.	
They	<b>have</b>	<b>bought</b>	a new computer.	
Computers	<b>have</b>	<b>changed</b>	the world.	
Subject	<i>has</i>	Past Participle	Complement	Explanation
My sister	<b>has</b>	<b>gotten</b>	her degree.	Use <i>has</i> with <i>he</i> , <i>she</i> , <i>it</i> , and singular nouns.
She	<b>has</b>	<b>found</b>	a job as a programmer.	
My father	<b>has</b>	<b>helped</b>	me.	
The computer	<b>has</b>	<b>changed</b>	a lot over the years.	
<i>There</i>	<i>has/have</i>	<i>been</i>	Complement	Explanation
There	<b>has</b>	<b>been</b>	a problem with my computer.	After <i>there</i> , we use <i>has</i> or <i>have</i> , depending on the noun that follows. Use <i>has</i> with a singular noun. Use <i>have</i> with a plural noun.
There	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b>	many changes with personal computers.	

## Google

Before

You Read

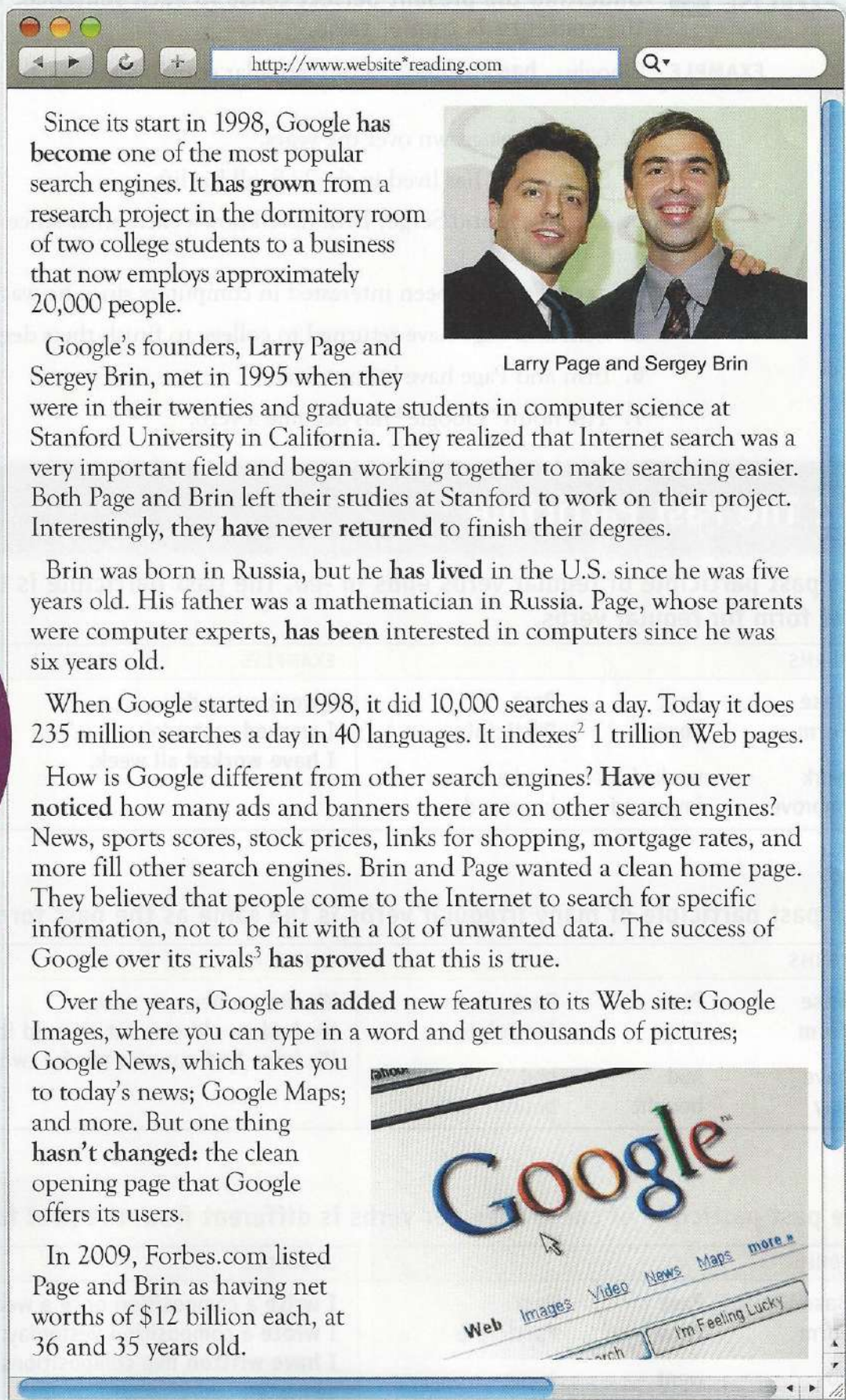
1. Do you use the Internet a lot? Why?
2. What search engine do you usually use?



CD 3, TR 12

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to the present perfect tense.





Since its start in 1998, Google has become one of the most popular search engines. It has grown from a research project in the dormitory room of two college students to a business that now employs approximately 20,000 people.



Larry Page and Sergey Brin

Google's founders, Larry Page and Sergey Brin, met in 1995 when they were in their twenties and graduate students in computer science at Stanford University in California. They realized that Internet search was a very important field and began working together to make searching easier. Both Page and Brin left their studies at Stanford to work on their project. Interestingly, they have never returned to finish their degrees.

Brin was born in Russia, but he has lived in the U.S. since he was five years old. His father was a mathematician in Russia. Page, whose parents were computer experts, has been interested in computers since he was six years old.

When Google started in 1998, it did 10,000 searches a day. Today it does 235 million searches a day in 40 languages. It indexes<sup>2</sup> 1 trillion Web pages.

How is Google different from other search engines? Have you ever noticed how many ads and banners there are on other search engines? News, sports scores, stock prices, links for shopping, mortgage rates, and more fill other search engines. Brin and Page wanted a clean home page. They believed that people come to the Internet to search for specific information, not to be hit with a lot of unwanted data. The success of Google over its rivals<sup>3</sup> has proved that this is true.

Over the years, Google has added new features to its Web site: Google Images, where you can type in a word and get thousands of pictures; Google News, which takes you to today's news; Google Maps; and more. But one thing hasn't changed: the clean opening page that Google offers its users.



In 2009, Forbes.com listed Page and Brin as having net worths of \$12 billion each, at 36 and 35 years old.

**Did You Know?**  
The word "Google" started as a noun, the company's name. Today people use it as a verb: "I'm going to Google the Civil War to get more information about it."

<sup>2</sup>To index means to sort, organize, and categorize information.

<sup>3</sup>Rivals are competitors.



**EXERCISE 1** Underline the present perfect tense in each sentence. Then tell if the sentence is true or false.

**EXAMPLE** Google has become a very popular search engine. T

1. Google has grown over the years.
2. Sergey Brin has lived in the U.S. all his life.
3. Larry Page and Sergey Brin have known each other since they were children.
4. Larry Page has been interested in computers since he was a child.
5. Brin and Page have returned to college to finish their degrees.
6. Brin and Page have become rich.
7. The noun "Google" has become a verb.

## 9.2 The Past Participle

The past participle of regular verbs ends in *-ed*. The past participle is the same as the past form for regular verbs.

FORMS			EXAMPLES
Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle	
work	worked	worked	I <b>work</b> every day.
improve	improved	improved	I <b>worked</b> yesterday.
			I <b>have worked</b> all week.

The past participle of many irregular verbs is the same as the past form.

FORMS			EXAMPLES
Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle	
have	had	had	We <b>have</b> a new car now.
buy	bought	bought	We <b>had</b> an old car, but we sold it.
			We <b>have had</b> our new car for two months.

The past participle of some irregular verbs is different from the past form.

FORMS			EXAMPLES
Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle	
go	went	gone	I <b>write</b> a composition once a week.
write	wrote	written	I <b>wrote</b> a composition yesterday.
			I <b>have written</b> five compositions this semester.



For the following verbs, the base form, past form, and past participle are all different.

Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle
become	became	become
come	came	come
run	ran	run
blow	blew	blown
draw	drew	drawn
fly	flew	flown
grow	grew	grown
know	knew	known
throw	threw	thrown
swear	swore	sworn
tear	tore	torn
wear	wore	worn
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen
freeze	froze	frozen
speak	spoke	spoken
steal	stole	stolen
begin	began	begun
drink	drank	drunk
ring	rang	rung
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
swim	swam	swum

Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle
arise	arose	arisen
bite	bit	bitten
drive	drove	driven
ride	rode	ridden
rise	rose	risen
write	wrote	written
be	was/were	been
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
forgive	forgave	forgiven
give	gave	given
mistake	mistook	mistaken
see	saw	seen
shake	shook	shaken
take	took	taken
do	did	done
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	gotten
go	went	gone
lie	lay	lain
prove	proved	proven (or proved)
show	showed	shown (or showed)

**EXERCISE 2** Write the past participle of these verbs.

**EXAMPLE** eat eaten

- |                 |                  |                 |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. go _____     | 11. live _____   | 21. write _____ |
| 2. see _____    | 12. know _____   | 22. put _____   |
| 3. look _____   | 13. like _____   | 23. begin _____ |
| 4. study _____  | 14. fall _____   | 24. want _____  |
| 5. bring _____  | 15. feel _____   | 25. get _____   |
| 6. take _____   | 16. come _____   | 26. fly _____   |
| 7. say _____    | 17. break _____  | 27. sit _____   |
| 8. be _____     | 18. wear _____   | 28. drink _____ |
| 9. find _____   | 19. choose _____ | 29. grow _____  |
| 10. leave _____ | 20. drive _____  | 30. give _____  |



## 9.3 The Present Perfect—Contractions and Negatives

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>I've</b> had a lot of experience with computers.  <b>We've</b> read the story about Google.  <b>He's</b> been interested in computers since he was a child.  <b>There's</b> been an increase in searching over the years.</p>	<p>We can make a contraction with subject pronouns and <i>have</i> or <i>has</i>.</p> <p>I have = I've      He has = He's            You have = You've      She has = She's            We have = We've      It has = It's            They have = They've      There has = There's</p>
<p><b>Larry's</b> lived in the U.S. all his life.  <b>Sergey's</b> been in the U.S. since he was five years old.</p>	<p>Most singular nouns can contract with <i>has</i>.</p>
<p>I <b>haven't</b> studied programming.            Brin <b>hasn't</b> returned to college.</p>	<p>Negative contractions:  <i>have not</i> = <i>haven't</i>  <i>has not</i> = <i>hasn't</i></p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> The 's in <i>he's</i>, <i>she's</i>, <i>it's</i>, and <i>there's</i> can mean <i>has</i> or <i>is</i>. The word following the contraction will tell you what the contraction means.</p> <p>He's working. = He <b>is</b> working.            He's worked. = He <b>has</b> worked.</p>	

### EXERCISE 3 Fill in the blanks to form the present perfect. Make a contraction if possible.

**EXAMPLE** You **'ve** \_\_\_\_\_ bought a new computer.

- I \_\_\_\_\_ learned a lot about computers.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ read the story about Google.
- Larry \_\_\_\_\_ known Sergey since they were at Stanford University.
- They (not) \_\_\_\_\_ known each other since they were children.
- It \_\_\_\_\_ been easy for me to learn about computers.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ used the Internet many times.
- Larry and Sergey (not) \_\_\_\_\_ finished their degrees.

## 9.4 Adding an Adverb

Subject	has/ have	Adverb	Past Participle	Complement	Explanation
Page and Brin	have	never	finished	their degrees.	You can put an adverb between the auxiliary verb ( <i>have/has</i> ) and the past participle.
They	have	already*	made	a lot of money.	
They	have	even	become	billionaires.	
Larry Page	has	always	been	interested in computers.	
You	have	probably	used	a search engine.	

**Language Note:** \**Already* frequently comes at the end of the verb phrase.  
They have made a lot of money **already**.

### EXERCISE 4 Add the word in parentheses ( ) to the sentence.

**EXAMPLE** You have gotten an e-mail account. (probably)

You have probably gotten an e-mail account.

1. The teacher has given a test on Lesson 8. (already)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. We have heard of Page and Brin. (never)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. They have been interested in search technology. (always)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. You have used Google. (probably)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Brin hasn't finished his degree. (even)

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Brin and Page have become billionaires. (already)

\_\_\_\_\_



## 9.5 The Present Perfect—Statements and Questions

Compare affirmative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	have/ has	Subject	have/ has	Past Participle	Complement	Short Answer
		Larry	has	lived	in the U.S. all his life.	
	Has	Sergey		lived	in the U.S. all his life?	No, he <b>hasn't</b> .
How long	has	Sergey		lived	in the U.S.?	Since 1979.

**Language Note:** For a short yes answer, we cannot make a contraction.  
 Has Larry lived in the U.S. all his life? Yes, he has. (Not: *he's*)

Compare negative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	haven't/ hasn't	Subject	haven't/ hasn't	Past Participle	Complement
		They	haven't	finished	their degrees.
Why	haven't	they		finished	their degrees?

**EXERCISE 5** Change the statement to a question, using the word(s) in parentheses.

**EXAMPLE** Google has changed the way people search. (how)  
*How has Google changed the way people search?*

- I have used several search engines. (which ones)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Larry and Sergey haven't finished their degrees. (why)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- They have made a lot of money. (how much)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Sergey has been in the U.S. for many years. (how long)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- Larry and Sergey have hired many people to work for Google.  
 (how many)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
- We have used the computer lab several times this semester. (how many times)  
 \_\_\_\_\_

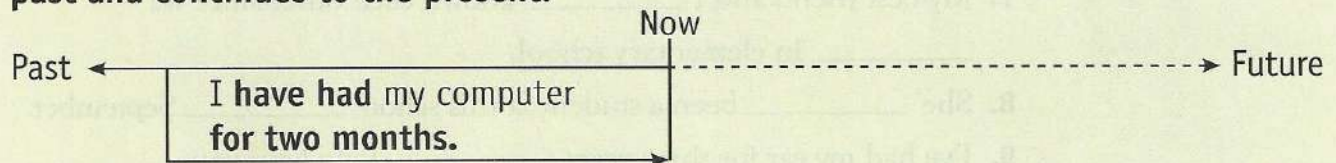


7. The memory and speed of computers have increased. (why)

8. Computers have become part of our daily lives. (how)

## 9.6 Continuation from Past to Present

We use the present perfect tense to show that an action or state started in the past and continues to the present.



EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Larry Page <b>has been</b> interested in computers <b>for many years</b> . My sister <b>has been</b> a programmer <b>for three years</b> .	Use <i>for</i> + an amount of time: <i>for two months</i> , <i>for three years</i> , <i>for one hour</i> , <i>for a long time</i> , etc.
Brin's family <b>has been</b> in the U.S. <b>since 1979</b> . I <b>have had</b> my computer <b>since March</b> . Personal computers <b>have been</b> popular <b>since the 1980s</b> .	Use <i>since</i> with the date, month, year, etc., that the action began.
Brin <b>has been</b> interested in computers since he <b>was</b> a child. I <b>have had</b> an e-mail account since I <b>bought</b> my computer.	Use <i>since</i> with the beginning of the continuous action or state. The verb in the <i>since</i> clause is simple past.
<b>How long</b> has Brin's family been in the U.S.? <b>How long</b> have you had your computer?	Use <i>how long</i> to ask about the amount of time from the past to the present.
Larry Page has <b>always</b> lived in the U.S. He has <b>always</b> been interested in computers.	We use the present perfect with <i>always</i> to show that an action began in the past and continues to the present.
My grandmother has <b>never</b> used a computer. Google has <b>never</b> put advertising on its opening page.	We use the present perfect with <i>never</i> to show that something has not occurred from the past to the present.



**EXERCISE 6** Fill in the blanks with the missing words.

**EXAMPLE** I've known my best friend since we were in high school.

1. My brother has been in the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ 1998.
2. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ never been in the U.S.
3. How \_\_\_\_\_ have you been in the U.S.?
4. I've known the teacher since I \_\_\_\_\_ to study at this school.
5. My sister's \_\_\_\_\_ married for two years.
6. She's had the same job \_\_\_\_\_ ten years.
7. My best friend and I \_\_\_\_\_ known each other since we \_\_\_\_\_ in elementary school.
8. She' \_\_\_\_\_ been a student at this school \_\_\_\_\_ September.
9. I've had my car for three years. \_\_\_\_\_ long have you \_\_\_\_\_ your car?
10. I'm interested in computers. I' \_\_\_\_\_ interested in computers since I was in high school.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ always wanted to have my own business.

**EXERCISE 7** **ABOUT YOU** Write true statements using the present perfect with the words given and *for*, *since*, *always*, or *never*. Share your sentences with the class.

**EXAMPLES** know My parents have known each other for over 40 years.

have I've had my cell phone since March.

want I've always wanted to learn English.

1. have \_\_\_\_\_

2. be \_\_\_\_\_

3. want \_\_\_\_\_

4. know \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 8** **ABOUT YOU** Make statements with *always*.

**EXAMPLE** Name something you've always thought about.  
I've always thought about my future.

1. Name something you've always enjoyed.
2. Name a person you've always liked.

3. Name something you've always wanted to do.
4. Name something you've always wanted to have.
5. Name something you've always been interested in.

**EXERCISE 9** **ABOUT YOU** Make statements with *never*.

**EXAMPLE** Name a machine you've never used.  
I've never used a fax machine.

1. Name a movie you've never seen.
2. Name a food you've never liked.
3. Name a subject you've never studied.
4. Name a city you've never visited.
5. Name a sport you've never played.
6. Name a food you've never tasted.

**EXERCISE 10** **ABOUT YOU** Write four sentences telling about things you've always done (or been). Share your sentences with the class.

**EXAMPLES** *I've always cooked the meals in my family.*

*I've always been lazy.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 11** **ABOUT YOU** Write four sentences telling about things you've never done (or been) but would like to. Share your sentences with the class.

**EXAMPLES** *I've never studied photography, but I'd like to.*

*I've never acted in a play, but I'd like to.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_



## 9.7 The Simple Present vs. the Present Perfect

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>a. Larry Page <b>is</b> in California.                      b. Larry Page <b>has been</b> in California since he was in his twenties.</p> <p>a. He <b>loves</b> computers.                      b. He <b>has</b> always <b>loved</b> computers.</p> <p>a. Google <b>doesn't have</b> advertising on its home page.                      b. Google <b>has</b> never <b>had</b> advertising on its home page.</p> <p>a. <b>Do you work</b> at a computer company? Yes, I <b>do</b>.                      b. <b>Have you</b> always <b>worked</b> at a computer company? Yes, I <b>have</b>.</p>	<p>Sentences (a) refer only to the present.</p> <p>Sentences (b) connect the past to the present.</p>

**EXERCISE 12** Read each statement about your teacher. Then ask the teacher a question beginning with the words given. Include *always* in your question. Your teacher will answer.

**EXAMPLE** You're a teacher. Have you always been a teacher ?

No. I was an accountant before I became a teacher. I've only been a teacher for five years.

1. You teach English. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

2. You work at this college/school. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

3. You think about grammar. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

4. English is easy for you. Has English \_\_\_\_\_ ?

5. Your last name is \_\_\_\_\_. Has your last name \_\_\_\_\_ ?

6. You're interested in languages. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

7. You live in this city. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**EXERCISE 13** Fill in the blanks with the missing words.



CD 3, TR 13

Two students meet by chance in the computer lab.

**A:** Have you been in the U.S. for long?  
*(example) (example)*

**B:** No, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
*(1)*

**A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ you been in the U.S.?  
*(2) (3)*

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ here for about a year.  
*(4) (5)*

**A:** Where do you come from?

**B:** Burundi.

**A:** Burundi? I \_\_\_\_\_ never \_\_\_\_\_ of it. Where is it?  
*(6) (7)*

**B:** It's a small country in Central Africa.

**A:** Do you have a map? Can you show me where it is?

**B:** Let's go on the Internet. We can do a search.

**A:** Did you learn to use a computer in your country?

**B:** No. When I came here, a volunteer at my church gave me her old computer. Before, I didn't know anything about computers. I've \_\_\_\_\_ a lot about computers since I came here.  
*(8)*

**A:** Oh, now I see Burundi. It's very small. It's near Congo.

**B:** Yes, it is.

**A:** Why did you come to the U.S.?

**B:** My country \_\_\_\_\_ political problems for many years.  
*(9)*  
It wasn't safe to live there. My family left in 1995.

**A:** So you \_\_\_\_\_ here since 1995?  
*(10) (11)*

**B:** No. First we lived in a refugee camp in Zambia.

**A:** I \_\_\_\_\_ never \_\_\_\_\_ of Zambia either.  
*(12) (13)*  
Can we search for it on the Internet?

**B:** Here it is.

**A:** You speak English very well. Is English the language of Burundi?

**B:** No. Kirundi is the official language. Also French. I \_\_\_\_\_  
*(14)*  
\_\_\_\_\_ French since I was a small child. Where are you from?  
*(15)*

*(continued)*





- A:** I'm from North Dakota.
- B:** I \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(16)</sup> never \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(17)</sup> of North Dakota. Is it in the U.S.?
- A:** Yes, it is. Let's search for an American map on the Internet. Here it is.  
Winter in North Dakota is very cold. It's cold here too.
- B:** I don't know how people live in a cold climate. I \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(18)</sup>  
never \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(19)</sup> in a cold climate before. I \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(20)</sup>  
always \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(21)</sup> near the Equator.
- A:** Don't worry. You'll be OK. You just need warm clothes for the winter.
- B:** I have class now. I've got to go.
- A:** I \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(22)</sup> \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(23)</sup> so much about your country in such a  
short time.
- B:** It's easy to learn things fast using a computer and a search engine.

## 9.8 The Present Perfect vs. the Simple Past

Do not confuse the present perfect with the simple past.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Compare:</b></p> <p>a. Sergey Brin <b>came</b> to the U.S. in 1979.</p> <p>b. Sergey Brin <b>has been</b> in the U.S. since 1979.</p> <p>a. Brin and Page <b>started</b> Google in 1998.</p> <p>b. Google <b>has been</b> popular since 1998.</p>	<p>Sentences (a) show a single action in the past. This action does not continue.</p> <p>Sentences (b) show the continuation of an action or state from the past to the present.</p>
<p>a. When <b>did</b> Brin <b>come</b> to the U.S.?</p> <p>b. How long <b>has</b> Brin <b>been</b> in the U.S.?</p>	<p>Question (a) with <i>when</i> uses the simple past tense. Question (b) with <i>how long</i> uses the present perfect tense.</p>

**EXERCISE 14** Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the present perfect of the verb in parentheses ( ).



CD 3, TR 14

**A:** Do you like to surf the Internet?

**B:** Of course, I do. I **'ve had** \_\_\_\_\_  
(example: have)  
my Internet connection since 1999,  
and I love it. A couple of months ago, I \_\_\_\_\_  
(1 buy)  
a new computer  
with lots of memory and speed. And last month I \_\_\_\_\_  
(2 change)  
to a better service provider. Now I can surf much faster.

**A:** What kind of things do you search for?

**B:** Lots of things. I \_\_\_\_\_ to learn about the stock market, and with the Web, I can start to learn. Last week I \_\_\_\_\_ my first investment in the stock market.

**A:** Do you ever buy products online?

**B:** Sometimes I do. Last month, I \_\_\_\_\_ a great Web site where

I can download music for 99¢. So far

I \_\_\_\_\_ about a hundred songs,

and I \_\_\_\_\_ several CDs. My old

computer \_\_\_\_\_ a CD burner,

so I'm very happy with my new one.



**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ your old computer?

**B:** No. It was about eight years old. I just \_\_\_\_\_ the hard drive

and \_\_\_\_\_ the computer on top of the garbage dumpster.

When I \_\_\_\_\_ by a few hours later, it was gone.

Someone \_\_\_\_\_ it.

**A:** Was your new computer expensive?

**B:** Yes, but I \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal online.

**A:** I \_\_\_\_\_ my computer for three years, and it seems so old by comparison to today's computers. But it's too expensive to buy a new one every year.

**B:** There's a joke about computers: "When is a computer old?"

**A:** I don't know. When?

**B:** As soon as you get it out of the box!



## 9.9 The Present Perfect Continuous—An Overview

We use the present perfect continuous for a continuous action that started in the past and continues to the present.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I <b>have been using</b> the Internet since 9 A.M. I <b>have been surfing</b> the Web for 2 hours. We <b>have been learning</b> a lot about computers.	A continuous action started in the past and continues to the present.

### Genealogy

Before  
You Read

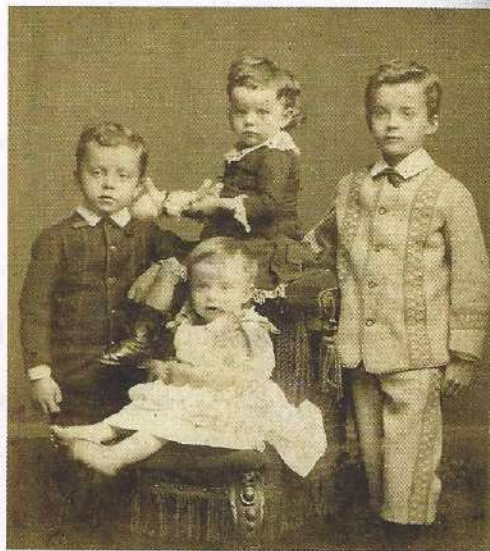
1. Do you think it's important to know your family's history? Why or why not?
2. What would you like to know about your ancestors?



**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the present perfect and the present perfect continuous tenses.**

In the last 30 years, genealogy **has become** one of America's most popular hobbies. If you type *genealogy* in a search engine, you can find about 90 million hits. If you type *family history*, you will get about 50 million hits. The percentage of the U.S. population interested in family history **has been increasing** steadily. This increase probably has to do with the ease of searching on the Internet.

The number of genealogy Web sites **has been growing** accordingly as people ask themselves: Where does my family come from? How long **has** my family **been** in the U.S.? Why did they come here? How did they come here? What kind of people were they?





Genealogy is a lifelong hobby for many. The average family historian **has been doing** genealogy for 14 years, according to a 2001 study. Most family historians are over 40. Cyndi Howells, from Washington State, quit her job in 1992 and **has been working** on her family history ever since. She **has created** a Web site called Cyndi's List to help others with their search. Her Web site has over 260,000 resources. Since its start in 1992, her Web site **has had** millions of visitors. Every day it gets about 15,000 visitors. Over the years, she **has added** many new links and **deleted** old ones.

Although the Internet **has made** research easier for amateur genealogists, it is only the beginning for serious family historians. Researchers still need to go to courthouses and libraries to find public records, such as land deeds,<sup>4</sup> obituaries,<sup>5</sup> wedding notices, and tax records. Another good source of information is the U.S. Census. Early census records are not complete, but since the mid-1800s, the U.S. Census **has been keeping** detailed records of family members, their ages, occupations, and places of birth.

Are you interested in knowing more about your ancestors and their stories, their country or countries, and how you fit into the history of your family? Maybe genealogy is a good hobby for you.

## 9.10 The Present Perfect Continuous—Forms

Subject	<i>have/has</i>	<i>been</i>	Present Participle	Complement
I	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>using</b>	the Internet for two hours.
We	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>reading</b>	about search engines.
You	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>studying</b>	computers.
They	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>living</b>	in California.
He	<b>has</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>writing</b>	since 1:00 P.M.
She	<b>has</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>surfing</b>	the Internet all day.
It	<b>has</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>raining</b>	all day.

**Language Note:** To form the negative, put *not* between *have* or *has* and *been*.

You **have not been** listening.

She **hasn't been** working hard.

<sup>4</sup>A *land deed* is a document that shows who the owner of the land is.

<sup>5</sup>*Obituaries* are death notices posted in the newspaper.

(continued)



## Compare affirmative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	have/ has	Subject	have/ has	been + Verb -ing	Complement	Short Answer
		Cyndi	has	been working	on her family history.	
	Has	she		been working	on her Web site?	Yes, she <b>has</b> .
How long	has	she		been working	on her Web site?	Since 1992.

## Compare negative statements and questions.

Wh- Word	haven't/ hasn't	Subject	haven't/ hasn't	been + Verb -ing	Complement
		They	haven't	been using	the public library.
Why	haven't	they		been using	the public library?

**EXERCISE 15** Fill in the blanks with the present perfect continuous form of the verb in parentheses ( ).

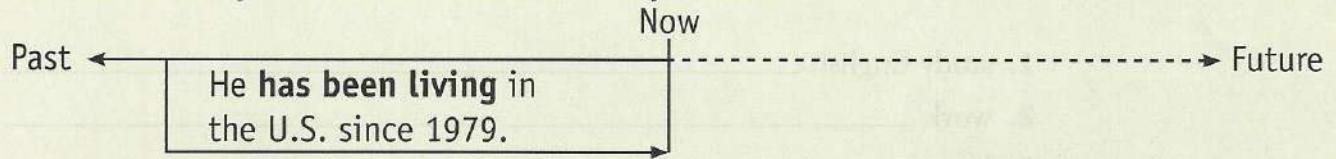
**EXAMPLE** How long \_\_\_\_\_ **has** \_\_\_\_\_ Cyndi \_\_\_\_\_ **been managing** \_\_\_\_\_ a genealogy Web site?  
(example: manage)

- Interest in genealogy \_\_\_\_\_.  
(grow)
- Cyndi \_\_\_\_\_ on her family history since 1992.  
(work)
- Cyndi \_\_\_\_\_ all over the U.S. to genealogy groups.  
(lecture)
- The number of genealogy Web sites \_\_\_\_\_.  
(increase)
- How long \_\_\_\_\_ the U.S. Census \_\_\_\_\_ records?  
(keep)
- \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ on a family tree for your family?  
(work)
- People \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet to do family research since the 1990s.  
(use)
- My family \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S. for many generations.  
(not/live)



## 9.11 The Present Perfect Continuous—Use

We use the present perfect continuous tense to show that an action or state started in the past and continues to the present.



EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION																		
<p>Cyndi <b>has been working</b> on her family tree since 1992.</p> <p>Sergey Brin <b>has been living</b> in the U.S. for more than 30 years.</p>	<p>We use <i>for</i> and <i>since</i> to show the time spent on an activity from past to present.</p>																		
<p>He <b>has been living</b> in the U.S. since 1979.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p>He <b>has lived</b> in the U.S. since 1979.</p>	<p>With some verbs (<i>live, work, study, teach, and wear</i>), we can use either the present perfect or the present perfect continuous with actions that began in the past and continue to the present. The meaning is the same.</p>																		
<p>My father <i>is working</i> on the family tree right now. He <b>has been working</b> on it since 9 A.M.</p>	<p>If the action is still happening, use the present perfect continuous, not the present perfect.</p>																		
<p>Google <b>has become</b> one of the most popular search engines.</p> <p>I <b>have had</b> my computer for three months.</p>	<p>We do not use the continuous form with nonaction verbs. See below for a list of nonaction verbs.</p>																		
<p>I <b>have</b> always <b>loved</b> computers.</p> <p>My grandmother <b>has</b> never <b>used</b> a computer.</p>	<p>Do not use the continuous form with <i>always</i> and <i>never</i>.</p>																		
<p><b>Action:</b> I <b>have been thinking</b> <i>about</i> doing a family tree.</p> <p><b>Nonaction:</b> I <b>have</b> always <b>thought</b> <i>that</i> genealogy is an interesting hobby.</p>	<p><i>Think</i> can be an action or nonaction verb, depending on its meaning.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Think about</i> = action verb</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>Think that</i> = nonaction verb</p>																		
<p><b>Nonaction:</b> Some people <b>have had</b> a lot of success in locating information.</p> <p><b>Action:</b> We <b>have been having</b> a hard time locating information about our ancestors.</p>	<p><i>Have</i> is usually a nonaction verb. However, <i>have</i> is an action verb in these expressions: <i>have experience, have a hard time, have a good time, have difficulty, and have trouble.</i></p>																		
<p><b>Nonaction verbs:</b></p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;">like</td> <td style="width: 33%;">know</td> <td style="width: 33%;">see</td> </tr> <tr> <td>love</td> <td>believe</td> <td>seem</td> </tr> <tr> <td>hate</td> <td>think (that)</td> <td>cost</td> </tr> <tr> <td>want</td> <td>care (about)</td> <td>own</td> </tr> <tr> <td>need</td> <td>understand</td> <td>become</td> </tr> <tr> <td>prefer</td> <td>remember</td> <td>have (for possession)</td> </tr> </table>		like	know	see	love	believe	seem	hate	think (that)	cost	want	care (about)	own	need	understand	become	prefer	remember	have (for possession)
like	know	see																	
love	believe	seem																	
hate	think (that)	cost																	
want	care (about)	own																	
need	understand	become																	
prefer	remember	have (for possession)																	



**EXERCISE 16** **ABOUT YOU** Write true statements using the present perfect continuous with the words given and *for* or *since*. Share your sentences with the class.

**EXAMPLE** work My brother has been working as a waiter for six years.

1. study English \_\_\_\_\_
2. work \_\_\_\_\_
3. live \_\_\_\_\_
4. use \_\_\_\_\_
5. study \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 17** **ABOUT YOU** Read aloud each of the following present tense questions. Another student will answer. If the answer is *yes*, add a present perfect continuous question with "*How long have you . . . ?*"

**EXAMPLE** Do you play a musical instrument?

**A:** Do you play a musical instrument?

**B:** Yes. I play the piano.

**A:** How long have you been playing the piano?

**B:** I've been playing the piano since I was a child.

1. Do you drive?
2. Do you work?
3. Do you use the Internet?
4. Do you wear glasses?
5. Do you play a musical instrument?

**EXERCISE 18** Ask the teacher questions with "*How long . . . ?*" and the present perfect continuous form of the verb given. The teacher will answer your questions.

**EXAMPLE** speak English

**A:** How long have you been speaking English?

**B:** I've been speaking English all<sup>6</sup> my life.

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. teach English       | 4. use this book                |
| 2. work at this school | 5. live at your present address |
| 3. live in this city   |                                 |

<sup>6</sup>We do not use the preposition *for* before *all*.

**EXERCISE 19** Fill in the blanks in the following conversations. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE A:** Do you wear glasses?

**B:** Yes, I do.

**A:** How long have you been wearing glasses?

**B:** I 've been wearing glasses since I was in high school.

1. **A:** Are you working on your family history?

**B:** Yes, I am.

**A:** How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ on your family history?

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ on it for about ten years.

2. **A:** Is your sister surfing the Internet?

**B:** Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** How long \_\_\_\_\_ she \_\_\_\_\_ surfing the Internet?

**B:** Since she woke up this morning!

3. **A:** Does your father live in the U.S.?

**B:** Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** How long \_\_\_\_\_ he been \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S.?

**B:** He \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S. since he \_\_\_\_\_ 25 years old.

4. **A:** Are you studying for the test now?

**B:** Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** How long \_\_\_\_\_ for the test?

**B:** For \_\_\_\_\_.

5. **A:** Is your teacher teaching you the present perfect lesson?

**B:** Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ long \_\_\_\_\_ you this lesson?

**B:** Since \_\_\_\_\_.

(continued)



6. A: Are the students using the computers now?

B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ them?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ they started to write their compositions.

7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you using the Internet?

B: Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.

A: How \_\_\_\_\_?

B: \_\_\_\_\_ for two hours.

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ your grandparents live in the U.S.?

B: Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.

A: How \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S.?

B: Since they \_\_\_\_\_ born.

9. A: Is she studying her family history?

B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_.

A: How long \_\_\_\_\_?

B: Since she \_\_\_\_\_.



# E-Books

Before

You Read

1. Do you read a lot? What kind of books do you like to read?
2. Have you ever shopped for books on the Internet?



CD 3, TR 16

**Read the following conversation. Pay special attention to the present perfect tense.**

**A:** Do you have any hobbies?

**B:** Yes. I love to read.

**A:** How many books **have you read** this year?

**B:** I've read about 20 books so far this year. Last month I went on vacation for two weeks and I read 10 books while I was at the beach.

**A:** How did you carry so many books on your vacation? They're heavy.

**B:** I carried only one: my e-book. **Have you ever heard** of e-books?

**A:** No, I **haven't**. What's an e-book?

**B:** It's an electronic device that holds a lot of books. It can hold over 1,500 books.

**A:** Cool! Is it expensive?

**B:** The electronic device is a bit expensive. Then you have to pay to download each book. But I've spent a lot more money on paper books.

**A:** How many books **have you downloaded**?

**B:** So far I've **downloaded** about 100 books.

**A:** Can you get every book in electronic form?

**B:** One popular Web site **has made** about 250,000 books available so far. But that number is growing all the time.

**A:** I've **never seen** how you can download a book. Let's go to my computer and you can show me.

**B:** We don't need a computer. It works like a cell phone. We can download a book wherever we are.

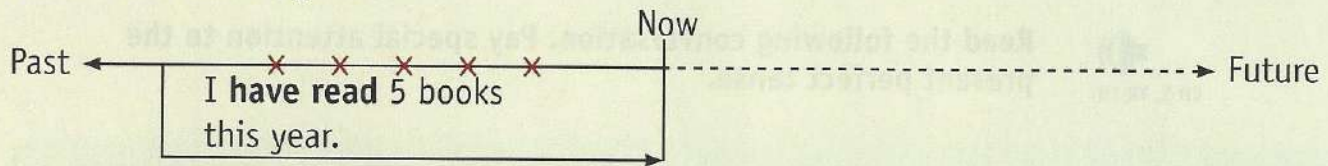
**A:** Wow!





## 9.12 The Present Perfect with Repetition from Past to Present

We use the present perfect to talk about the repetition of an action in a time period that started in the past and includes the present. There is a probability that this action will occur again.



EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. I <b>have read</b> 20 books this year. b. He <b>has downloaded</b> over 100 books.	a. I may read more books. b. He will probably download more books.
Up to now, one Web site <b>has made</b> about 250,000 books available. I <b>have read</b> ten chapters in my book up to now.	Adding the words "so far" and "up to now" indicate that we are counting up to the present and that more is expected.
How much money <b>have</b> you <b>spent</b> on books this year? I've <b>spent</b> about \$500 on books this year. How many books <b>have</b> you <b>bought</b> from a bookstore this year? I <b>haven't bought</b> any books from a bookstore <b>at all</b> this year.	We can ask a question about repetition with <i>how much</i> and <i>how many</i> . To indicate zero times, we use a negative verb + <i>at all</i> . There is a probability that this action may still happen.
<b>Compare:</b> a. Google <b>had</b> 10,000 searches a day in 1998. b. Google <b>has had</b> billions of searches since 1998. a. Cyndi's List <b>appeared</b> for the first time in 1996. b. Many new genealogy Web sites <b>have appeared</b> in the last fifteen years.	a. We use the simple past with a time period that is finished or closed: <i>1998, 50 years ago, last week, etc.</i> b. We use the present perfect in a time period that is open. There is a probability of more repetition.
<b>Language Note:</b> Do not use the continuous form for repetition. <i>Right:</i> I <b>have downloaded</b> six books this year. <i>Wrong:</i> I <i>have been downloading</i> six books this year.	

**EXERCISE 20****ABOUT YOU** Ask a *yes/no* question with *so far* or *up to now* and the words given. Another student will answer.**EXAMPLE** you/come to every class**A:** Have you come to every class so far?**B:** Yes, I have.

OR

**B:** No, I haven't. I've missed three classes.

1. we / have any tests
2. this lesson / be difficult
3. the teacher / give a lot of homework
4. you / understand all the explanations
5. you / have any questions about this lesson

**EXERCISE 21****ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with "*How many . . . ?*" and the words given. Talk about this month. Another student will answer.**EXAMPLE** times / go to the post office**A:** How many times have you gone to the post office this month?**B:** I've gone to the post office once this month.

OR

**B:** I haven't gone to the post office at all this month.

- |                                |                             |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. letters / write             | 5. books / buy              |
| 2. times / eat in a restaurant | 6. times / go to the movies |
| 3. times / get paid            | 7. movies / rent            |
| 4. international calls / make  | 8. times / cook             |

**EXERCISE 22****ABOUT YOU** Write four questions to ask another student or your teacher about repetition from the past to the present. Use *how much* or *how many*. The other person will answer.**EXAMPLE** How many cities have you lived in?

How many English courses have you taken at this school?

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_



## 9.13 The Simple Past vs. the Present Perfect with Repetition

We use the present perfect with repetition in a present time period. There is an expectation of more repetition. We use the simple past with repetition in a past time period. There is no possibility of any more repetition during that period.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>How many hits <b>has</b> your Web site <b>had</b> today? It <b>has had</b> over 100 hits today.</p> <p>How many times <b>have</b> you <b>been</b> absent this semester? <b>I've been</b> absent twice so far.</p>	<p>To show that there is an expectation of more repetition, use the present perfect. In the examples on the left, <i>today</i> and <i>this semester</i> are not finished. <i>So far</i> indicates that the number given may not be final.</p>
<p>Last month my Web site <b>had</b> 5,000 hits. How many times <b>were</b> you absent last semester?</p>	<p>The number of occurrences cannot increase in a past time frame, such as <i>yesterday</i>, <i>last week</i>, <i>last month</i>, <i>last semester</i>, etc. Use the simple past tense.</p>
<p>Brin and Page <b>have added</b> new features to Google over the years.</p> <p>A popular Web site <b>has made</b> thousands of e-books available.</p>	<p>Brin and Page are still alive. They can (and probably will) add new features to Google in the years to come. This Web site continues to make e-books available.</p>
<p>Before she died, my grandmother <b>added</b> many details to our family tree. My grandmother <b>loved</b> to read.</p>	<p>Grandmother died. Therefore, all her actions are final. Nothing can be added to them.</p>
<p><b>Compare:</b></p> <p>a. I <b>have checked</b> my e-mail twice today. b. I <b>checked</b> my e-mail twice today.</p> <p>a. I <b>have downloaded</b> two books this month. b. I <b>downloaded</b> two books this month.</p>	<p>With a present time expression (such as <i>today</i>, <i>this week</i>, <i>this month</i>, etc.), you may use either the present perfect or the simple past. In sentences (a), the number may not be final. In sentences (b), the number seems final.</p>
<p><b>Compare:</b></p> <p>a. In the U.S., I <b>have had</b> two jobs. b. In my native country, I <b>had</b> five jobs.</p> <p>a. In the U.S., I <b>have lived</b> in three apartments so far. b. In my native country, I <b>lived</b> in two apartments.</p>	<p>a. To talk about your experiences in this phase of your life, you can use the present perfect tense if there is an expectation for more. b. To talk about a closed phase of your life, use the simple past tense. For example, if you do not plan to live in your native country again, use the simple past tense to talk about your experiences there.</p>



**EXERCISE 23 ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with the simple past or the present perfect to ask a question. A student from another country will answer.

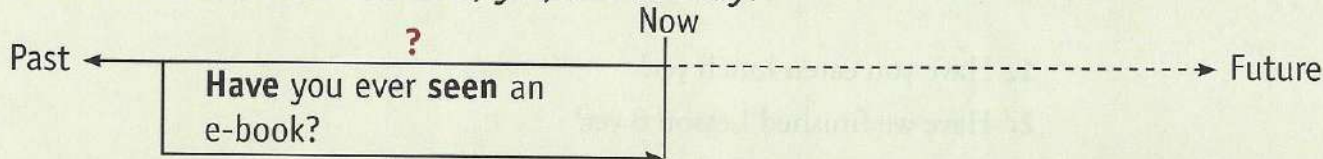
**EXAMPLES** How many schools have you attended in the U.S.?  
I've attended two schools in the U.S.

How many schools did you attend in your country?  
I attended only one school in my country.

1. How many apartments \_\_\_\_\_ back home?
2. How many apartments \_\_\_\_\_ here?
3. How many schools \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?
4. How many schools \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S.?
5. How many jobs \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S.?
6. How many jobs \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?

## 9.14 The Present Perfect with Indefinite Past Time

We use the present perfect to refer to an action that occurred at an indefinite time in the past that still has importance to the present situation. Words that show indefinite time are: *ever*, *yet*, and *already*.



EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Have you ever downloaded</b> a book? No, I <b>haven't</b>.</p> <p><b>Have you ever "Googled"</b> your own name? Yes, I <b>have</b>.</p>	<p>A question with <i>ever</i> asks about any time between the past and the present. Put <i>ever</i> between the subject and the main verb.</p>
<p><b>Have you finished</b> your book <b>yet</b>? No, not <b>yet</b>.</p> <p><b>Have</b> Larry and Sergey <b>become</b> billionaires <b>yet</b>? Yes, they <b>have</b>.</p> <p><b>Have</b> you <b>read</b> the story about genealogy <b>yet</b>? Yes, I <b>already</b> <b>have</b>.</p>	<p><i>Yet</i> and <i>already</i> refer to an indefinite time in the near past. There is an expectation that an activity took place a short time ago.</p>
<p>The computer <b>has made</b> it possible to do many new things. E-books <b>have changed</b> the way we read books. Cyndi Howells <b>has created</b> a very useful Web site for family historians.</p>	<p>We can use the present perfect to talk about the past without any reference to time. The time is not important, not known, or is imprecise. Using the present perfect, rather than the simple past, shows that the past is relevant to a present situation.</p>



**EXERCISE 24** **ABOUT YOU** Answer the following questions with: *Yes, I have;* *No, I haven't;* or *No, I never have.*

**EXAMPLE** Have you ever studied programming? No, I never have.

1. Have you ever "Googled" your own name?
2. Have you ever researched your family history?
3. Have you ever made a family tree?
4. Have you ever used the Web to look for a person you haven't seen in a long time?
5. Have you ever added hardware to your computer?
6. Have you ever downloaded music from the Internet?
7. Have you ever used a search engine in your native language?
8. Have you ever sent photos by e-mail?
9. Have you ever received a photo by e-mail?
10. Have you ever bought something online?
11. Have you ever built a computer?

**EXERCISE 25** **ABOUT YOU** Answer the questions.

**EXAMPLE** Have we had a test on the present perfect yet? No, not yet.

1. Have you eaten lunch yet?
2. Have we finished Lesson 8 yet?
3. Have you done today's homework yet?
4. Have we written any compositions yet?
5. Have you learned the names of all the other students yet?
6. Have you visited the teacher's office yet?
7. Have we done Exercise 22 yet?
8. Have you learned the present perfect yet?
9. Have you learned all the past participles yet?

## 9.15 Answering a Present Perfect Question

We can answer a present perfect question with the simple past tense when a specific time is introduced in the answer. If a specific time is not known or necessary, we answer with the present perfect.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Have</b> you ever <b>used</b> Google?</p> <p><b>Answer A:</b> Yes. I've <b>used</b> Google many times.</p> <p><b>Answer B:</b> Yes. I <b>used</b> Google a few hours ago.</p>	<p>Answer A, with <i>many times</i>, shows repetition at an indefinite time.</p> <p>Answer B, with <i>a few hours ago</i>, shows a specific time in the past.</p>
<p><b>Have</b> you ever <b>heard</b> of Larry Page?</p> <p><b>Answer A:</b> No. I've <b>never</b> heard of him.</p> <p><b>Answer B:</b> Yes. We <b>read</b> about him yesterday.</p>	<p>Answer A, with <i>never</i>, shows continuation from past to present.</p> <p>Answer B, with <i>yesterday</i>, shows a specific time in the past.</p>
<p><b>Have</b> you <b>done</b> your homework yet?</p> <p><b>Answer A:</b> Yes. I've <b>done</b> it already.</p> <p><b>Answer B:</b> Yes. I <b>did</b> it this morning.</p>	<p>Answer A, with <i>already</i>, is indefinite.</p> <p>Answer B, with <i>this morning</i>, shows a specific time.</p>
<p><b>Have</b> Brin and Page <b>become</b> rich?</p> <p><b>Answer A:</b> Yes, they <b>have</b>.</p> <p><b>Answer B:</b> Yes. They <b>became</b> rich before they were 30 years old.</p>	<p>Answer A shows no time reference.</p> <p>Answer B, with <i>before they were 30 years old</i>, refers to a specific time.</p>

**EXERCISE 26 ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with “*Have you ever . . . ?*” and the present perfect tense of the verb in parentheses ( ). Another student will answer. To answer with a specific time, use the past tense. To answer with a frequency response, use the present perfect tense. You may work with a partner.

**EXAMPLES** (go) to the zoo  
**A:** Have you ever gone to the zoo?  
**B:** Yes. I've gone there many times.

(go) to Disneyland  
**A:** Have you ever gone to Disneyland?  
**B:** Yes. I went there last summer.

1. (work) in a factory
2. (lose) a glove
3. (see) an e-book
4. (fall) out of bed
5. (make) a mistake in English grammar
6. (tell) a lie
7. (eat) raw<sup>7</sup> fish
8. (study) calculus
9. (meet) a famous person
10. (go) to an art museum
11. (download) a book
12. (break) a window
13. (buy) a book online

<sup>7</sup>Raw means not cooked.



14. (download) music

17. (be) in love

15. (go) to Las Vegas

18. (write) a poem

16. (travel) by ship

19. (send) a text message

**EXERCISE 27**

**ABOUT YOU** Write five questions with *ever* to ask your teacher. Your teacher will answer.

**EXAMPLES**

Have you ever gotten a parking ticket?

Have you ever visited Poland?

1. \_\_\_\_\_

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 28**

**ABOUT YOU** Ask a student from another country questions using the words given. The other student will answer.

**EXAMPLE**

your country / have a woman president

**A:** Has your country ever had a woman president?

**B:** Yes, it has. We had a woman president from 1975 to 1979.

1. your country / have a civil war

2. your country's leader / visit the U.S.

3. an American president / visit your country

4. your country / have a woman president

5. you / go back to visit your country

6. there / be an earthquake in your hometown

**EXERCISE 29**

**ABOUT YOU** Ask a student who has recently arrived in this country if he or she has done these things yet. The other student will answer.

**EXAMPLE**

buy a car

**A:** Have you bought a car yet?

**B:** Yes, I have. OR No, I haven't. OR I bought a car last month.

1. find a doctor

6. write to your family

2. make any new friends

7. get a credit card

3. open a bank account

8. buy a computer

4. save any money

9. get a telephone

5. think about your future

10. get a Social Security card

**EXERCISE 30** Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verb in parentheses ( ). Also fill in other missing words.



**A:** Your Spanish is a little different from my Spanish. Where are you from?

**B:** I'm from Guatemala.

**A:** How long have you been here?  
(example: you/be)

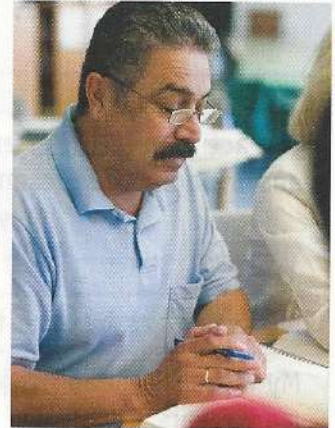
**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ here for about six months. Where are you from?  
(1 only/be)

**A:** Miami. My family comes from Cuba. They

\_\_\_\_\_ Cuba in 1962, after the revolution.  
(2 leave)

I \_\_\_\_\_ born in the U.S. I'm starting  
(3 be)  
to become interested in my family's history.

I \_\_\_\_\_ several magazine articles about  
(4 read)  
genealogy so far. It's fascinating. Are you  
interested in your family's history?



**B:** Of course I am. I \_\_\_\_\_ interested in it \_\_\_\_\_ a long time.  
(5 be) (6)

I \_\_\_\_\_ on a family tree for many years.  
(7 work)

**A:** When \_\_\_\_\_?  
(8 you/start)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ when I \_\_\_\_\_ 16 years old. Over the years,  
(9 start) (10 be)

I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of interesting information about my family.  
(11 find)

Some of my ancestors were Mayans and some were from Spain and France. In fact, my great-great grandfather was a Spanish prince.

**A:** How \_\_\_\_\_ all that information?  
(12 you/find)

**B:** I \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet a lot. I \_\_\_\_\_ to many  
(13 use) (14 also/go)  
libraries to get more information.

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain or France to look at records there?  
(15 you/ever/go)

**B:** Last summer I \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain, and I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of  
(16 go) (17 find)  
information while I was there.

**A:** How many ancestors \_\_\_\_\_ so far?  
(18 you/find)

**B:** So \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ about 50, but I'm still looking.  
(19) (20 find)

(continued)


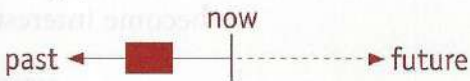



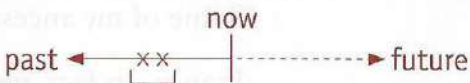
**A:** How can I get started?


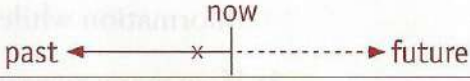
**B:** There's a great Web site called Cyndi's List. I'll give you the Web address, and you can get started there.

## Summary of Lesson 9

### 1. Compare the present perfect and the simple past.

PRESENT PERFECT	SIMPLE PAST
The action of the sentence began in the past and includes the present: 	The action of the sentence is completely past: 
My father <b>has been</b> in the U.S. since 2002.	My father <b>came</b> to the U.S. in 2002.
My father <b>has had</b> his job in the U.S. for many years.	My father <b>was</b> in Canada for two years before he came to the U.S.
How long <b>have</b> you been interested in genealogy?	When <b>did</b> you <b>start</b> your family tree?
I've always <b>wanted</b> to learn more about my family's history.	When I was a child, I always <b>wanted</b> to spend time with my grandparents.

PRESENT PERFECT	SIMPLE PAST
Repetition from past to present: 	Repetition in a past time period: 
We <b>have had</b> four tests so far.	We <b>had</b> two tests last semester.
She <b>has used</b> the Internet three times today.	She <b>used</b> the Internet three times yesterday.

PRESENT PERFECT	SIMPLE PAST
The action took place at an indefinite time between the past and the present: 	The action took place at a definite time in the past: 
<b>Have</b> you ever <b>made</b> a family tree?	<b>Did</b> you <b>make</b> a family tree last month?
I've <b>done</b> the homework already.	I <b>did</b> the homework last night.
<b>Have</b> you <b>visited</b> the art museum yet?	<b>Did</b> you <b>visit</b> the art museum last month?

2. Compare the present perfect and the present perfect continuous.

PRESENT PERFECT—USE WITH:	PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS—USE WITH:
A continuous action (nonaction verbs): I <b>have had</b> my car for five years.	A continuous action (action verbs): I've <b>been driving</b> a car for 20 years.
A repeated action: Cyndi's Web site <b>has won</b> several awards.	A nonstop action: The U.S. Census <b>has been keeping</b> records since the 1880s.
Question with <i>how many</i> : How many times <b>have you gone</b> to New York?	Question with <i>how long</i> : How long <b>has he been living</b> in New York?
An action that is at an indefinite time, completely in the past: Cyndi <b>has created</b> a Web site.	An action that started in the past and is still happening: Cyndi <b>has been working</b> on her family history since 1992.

## Editing Advice

1. Don't confuse the *-ing* form and the past participle.

She has been <sup>taking</sup> ~~taken~~ a test for two hours.

She has <sup>given</sup> ~~giving~~ him a present.

2. Use the present perfect, not the simple present, to describe an action or state that started in the past and continues to the present.

He <sup>had</sup> ~~has~~ a car for two years.

How long <sup>have</sup> ~~do~~ you <sup>ed</sup> ~~work~~ in a factory?

3. Use *for*, not *since*, with the amount of time.

I've been studying English <sup>for</sup> ~~since~~ three months.

4. Use the simple past, not the present perfect, with a specific past time.

He <sup>came</sup> ~~has come~~ to the U.S. five months ago.

When <sup>did</sup> ~~have~~ you come to the U.S.?



5. Use the simple past, not the present perfect, in a *since* clause.

He has learned a lot of English since he <sup>came</sup> ~~has come~~ to the U.S.

6. Use the correct word order. Put the adverb between the auxiliary and the main verb.

He has <sup>never seen</sup> ~~seen never~~ a French movie.

Have you <sup>ever gone</sup> ~~gone ever~~ to France?

7. Use the correct word order in questions.

How long <sup>have you</sup> ~~you have~~ been a teacher?

8. Use *yet* for negative statements; use *already* for affirmative statements.

I haven't eaten dinner <sup>yet</sup> ~~already~~.

9. Don't forget the verb *have* in the present perfect (continuous).

I <sup>have</sup> ~~been~~ living in New York for two years.

10. Don't forget the *-ed* of the past participle.

He's <sup>ed</sup> ~~listen~~ to that CD many times.

11. Use the present perfect, not the continuous form, with *always*, *never*, *yet*, *already*, *ever*, and *how many*.

How many times have you <sup>gone</sup> ~~been going~~ to Paris?

I've never <sup>visited</sup> ~~been visiting~~ Paris.

12. Don't use *time* after *how long*.

How long ~~time~~ have you had your job?

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

“How many changes ~~have you~~ <sup>C</sup> ~~you have~~ <sup>(example)</sup> made since you ~~came~~ <sup>(example)</sup> to the U.S.?” For our journal, our teacher asked us to answer this question. I ~~have come~~ <sup>(1)</sup> to the U.S. two and a half years ago. Things ~~have changing~~ <sup>(2)</sup> a lot for me since I’ve ~~come~~ <sup>(3)</sup> to the U.S. Here’s a list of some of the changes:

1. Since <sup>(4)</sup> the past two years I ~~am studying~~ <sup>(5)</sup> English. I ~~knew~~ <sup>(6)</sup> a little English before I ~~came~~ <sup>(7)</sup> here, but my English has ~~improve~~ <sup>(8)</sup> a lot.
2. Now I have a driver’s permit and I’m learning how to drive. I ~~haven’t took~~ <sup>(9)</sup> the driver’s test yet because I’m not ready. I haven’t ~~practiced~~ <sup>(10)</sup> ~~already~~ <sup>(11)</sup>.
3. I’ve ~~been eaten~~ <sup>(12)</sup> a lot of different foods like hamburgers and pizza. I never ~~ate~~ <sup>(13)</sup> those in my country. Unfortunately, I ~~been gaining~~ <sup>(14)</sup> weight.
4. I ~~started~~ <sup>(15)</sup> to work in a factory three months ~~ago~~ <sup>(16)</sup>. Since I ~~have started~~ <sup>(17)</sup> my job, I ~~haven’t have~~ <sup>(18)</sup> much time for fun.
5. I’ve ~~gone~~ <sup>(19)</sup> to several museums in this city. But I’ve ~~taken never~~ <sup>(20)</sup> a trip to another American city. I’d like to visit New York, but I ~~haven’t saved~~ <sup>(21)</sup> enough money ~~yet~~ <sup>(22)</sup>.
6. I’ve ~~been living~~ <sup>(23)</sup> in three apartments so far. In my country, I ~~lived~~ <sup>(24)</sup> in a house with my family.
7. I’ve ~~answered~~ <sup>(25)</sup> the following questions about a thousand times so far: “Where do you come from?” and “~~How long time~~ <sup>(26)</sup> ~~you have~~ <sup>(27)</sup> been in the U.S.?” I’m getting tired of always answering the same question.



## Lesson 9 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with the simple past, the present perfect, or the present perfect continuous form by using the words in parentheses ( ). In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

### Conversation 1

**A:** Have you ever studied computer programming?  
(example: study)

**B:** Yes. I studied it in college. And I worked as a programmer for five years. But my job is boring.

**A:** Have you ever thought about changing jobs?  
(3 think)

**B:** Yes. Since I was a child, I have always wanted to be an actor. When I was in college, I acted in a few plays, but since I graduated, I don't have time to act.

### Conversation 2

**A:** How long have you been in the U.S.?  
(1 you/be)

**B:** For about two years.

**A:** Has your life changed a lot since you came to the U.S.?  
(2 your life/change) (3 come)

**B:** Oh, yes. Before I came here, I lived with my family. Since I came here, I live alone.  
(4 come) (5 live) (6 live)

**A:** Do you always live in the same apartment in this city?  
(7 always/live)

**B:** No. I have moved three times so far. And I plan to move again at the end of the year.  
(8 move)

**A:** Do you plan to have a roommate?

**B:** Yes, but I can't find one yet.  
(9 not/find)

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with the simple present, the simple past, the present perfect, or the present perfect continuous form of the verb in parentheses ( ). In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**Paragraph 1**

I \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet every day. I \_\_\_\_\_ it for many years.  
(1 use) (2 use)

I \_\_\_\_\_ to use it when I \_\_\_\_\_ interested in genealogy.  
(3 start) (4 become)

I \_\_\_\_\_ on my family tree for three years. Last month,  
(5 work)

I \_\_\_\_\_ information about my father's ancestors. My grandfather  
(6 find)

\_\_\_\_\_ with us now and likes to tell us about his past. He \_\_\_\_\_  
(7 live) (8 be)

born in Italy, but he \_\_\_\_\_ here when he was very young, so he  
(9 come)

\_\_\_\_\_ here most of his life. He doesn't remember much about Italy.  
(10 live)

I \_\_\_\_\_ any information about my mother's ancestors yet.  
(11 not/find)

**Paragraph 2**

I \_\_\_\_\_ to the U.S. when a war \_\_\_\_\_ out in my country.  
(1 come) (2 break)

I \_\_\_\_\_ in the U.S. for five years. At first, everything  
(3 live)

\_\_\_\_\_ very hard for me. I \_\_\_\_\_ any English when  
(4 be) (5 not/know)

I \_\_\_\_\_. But I \_\_\_\_\_ English for the past five years,  
(6 arrive) (7 study)

and now I \_\_\_\_\_ it pretty well. I \_\_\_\_\_ my college  
(8 speak) (9 not/start)

education yet, but I plan to next semester.



## Classroom

### Activities

**1** Form a group of between four and six students. Find out who in your group has done each of these things. Write that person's name in the blank.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_ has made a family tree.
- b. \_\_\_\_\_ has found a good job.
- c. \_\_\_\_\_ has been on a ship.
- d. \_\_\_\_\_ has never eaten Mexican food.
- e. \_\_\_\_\_ hasn't done today's homework yet.
- f. \_\_\_\_\_ has never seen a French movie.
- g. \_\_\_\_\_ has taken a trip to Canada.
- h. \_\_\_\_\_ has acted in a play.
- i. \_\_\_\_\_ has gone swimming in the Pacific Ocean.
- j. \_\_\_\_\_ has flown in a helicopter.
- k. \_\_\_\_\_ has served in the military.
- l. \_\_\_\_\_ has worked in a hotel.
- m. \_\_\_\_\_ has never studied chemistry.
- n. \_\_\_\_\_ has taken the TOEFL<sup>8</sup> test.
- o. \_\_\_\_\_ has just gotten a "green card."
- p. \_\_\_\_\_ has downloaded music from the Internet.

**2** Draw your family tree for the past three generations, if you can. Form a small group and tell the others in your group a little about your family.

## Talk

### About It

- 1** Why do you think so many people are interested in genealogy? What is valuable about finding your family's history?
- 2** What are the advantages of an e-book over a paper book? What are the disadvantages?
- 3** Do you think people spend too much time surfing the Internet?

<sup>8</sup>The TOEFL<sup>TM</sup> is the Test of English as a Foreign Language. Many U.S. colleges and universities require foreign students to take this test.

## Write

### About It

① Write about new technology that you've started using recently. How has that made your life different?

② Write a composition about one of the following:

How your life has changed since (*choose one*):

- a. you came to the U.S.
- b. you got married
- c. you had a baby
- d. you graduated from high school
- e. you started to study here

#### Changes in My Life

My life has changed a lot since I started college. When I was in high school, I didn't have many responsibilities. Since I started college, I've had to work and study at the same time. When I was in high school, I used to hang out with my friends. Now that I'm in college, I haven't had much time for my friends . . .



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.



## Lesson

# 10

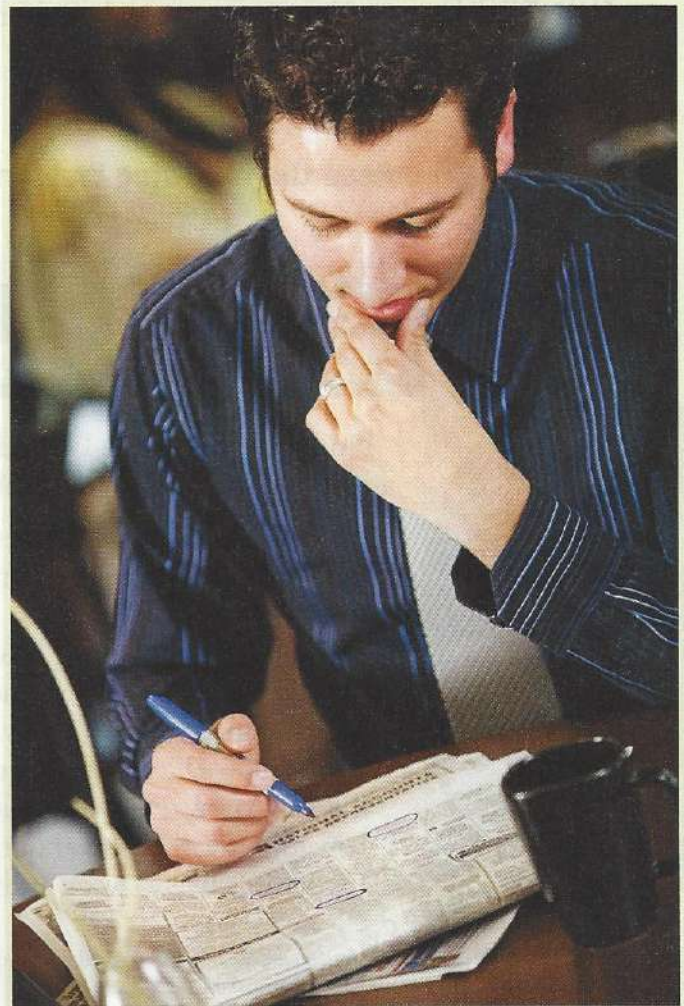
### Grammar

#### Gerunds

#### Infinitives

### Context

#### Finding a Job





## 10.1 Gerunds—An Overview

To form a gerund, we use the *-ing* form of a verb (*finding, learning, eating, running*). A *gerund phrase* is a gerund + a noun phrase (*finding a job, learning English*). A gerund (phrase) can appear in several positions in a sentence.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. <b>Finding</b> a job is hard. b. I don't enjoy <b>talking</b> about myself. c. I thought about <b>changing</b> my career. d. I got help <b>by talking</b> with my counselor. e. I like to <b>go shopping</b> .	a. The gerund is the subject. b. The gerund is the object. c. The gerund is the object of the preposition. d. The gerund is part of an adverbial phrase. e. The gerund is in many expressions with <i>go</i> .
<b>Not having</b> a job is frustrating. You can impress the boss by <b>not being</b> late.	We can put <i>not</i> in front of a gerund to make it negative.

## Finding a Job

Before

You Read

1. Have you ever had a job interview in this city?
2. What is your profession or job? What profession or job do you plan to have in the future?



CD 3, TR 18

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to gerunds.

### Did You Know?

According to the Bureau of Labor Statistics, computer scientists and dental hygienists are among the fastest growing occupations. Between 2006 and 2016, these careers are expected to grow 37% and 30%, respectively.

**Finding** a job in the United States takes specific skills. The following advice will help you find a job.

- Write a good résumé. Describe your accomplishments.<sup>1</sup> Avoid **including** unnecessary information. Your résumé should be one page, if possible.
- Find out about available jobs. One way is by **looking** in the newspaper or on the Internet. Another way is by **networking**. **Networking** means **exchanging** information with anyone you know—family, friends, neighbors, classmates, former coworkers, professional groups—who might know of a job. These people might also be able to give you insider information about a company, such as who is in charge and what it is like to work at their company. According to an article in

<sup>1</sup>Accomplishments are the unusual good things you have done, such as awards you have won or projects you have successfully managed.



the *Wall Street Journal*, 94 percent of people who succeed in **finding** a job say that **networking** was a big help.

- Practice the interview. The more prepared you are, the more relaxed you will feel. If you are worried about **saying** or **doing** the wrong thing, practice will help.
- Learn something about the company. You can find information by **going** to the company's Web site. **Getting** information takes time, but it pays off.

You can get help in these skills—**writing** a résumé, **networking**, **preparing** for an interview, **researching** a company—by **seeing** a career counselor. Most high schools and colleges have one who can help you get started.

**Finding** a job is one of the most difficult jobs. Some people send out hundreds of résumés and go on dozens of interviews before **finding** a job. And it isn't something you do just once or twice in your lifetime. For most Americans, **changing** jobs many times in a lifetime is not uncommon.



## Tips For Getting a Job

### Preparation:

1. Learn about the organization and have a specific job or jobs in mind.
2. Review your résumé.
3. Practice an interview with a friend or relative.
4. Arrive at least 15 minutes before the scheduled time of your interview.

### Personal appearance:

1. Be well-groomed<sup>2</sup> and dress appropriately.
2. Do not chew gum.

### The interview:

1. Relax and answer each question concisely.
2. Use good manners. Shake hands and smile when you meet someone.
3. Be enthusiastic. Tell the interviewer why you are a good candidate for the job.
4. Ask questions about the position and the organization.
5. Thank the interviewer when you leave and in writing as a follow-up.

### Information to bring to an interview:

1. Social Security card.
2. Government-issued identification (driver's license).
3. Résumé or application. Include information about your education, training, and previous employment.
4. References. Employers typically require three references. Get permission before using anyone as a reference. Make sure that each will give you a good reference. Avoid using relatives as references.

<sup>2</sup>When you are *well-groomed*, your appearance is neat and clean.



## 10.2 Gerund as Subject

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>Gerund Phrase</b> <b>Finding a good job</b> takes time. <b>Writing a résumé</b> isn't easy. <b>Not preparing</b> for an interview could have a bad result.	We can use a gerund or gerund phrase as the subject of the sentence.
<b>Exchanging</b> ideas with friends <b>is</b> helpful. <b>Visiting</b> company Web sites <b>takes</b> time.	A gerund subject takes a singular verb.

**EXERCISE 1** The following things are important before a job interview. Make a sentence with each one, using a gerund phrase as the subject.

**EXAMPLE** get a good night's sleep  
*Getting a good night's sleep will help you feel rested and alert for an interview.*

- take a bath or shower
- select serious-looking clothes
- prepare a résumé
- check your résumé carefully
- get information about the company
- prepare answers to possible questions

**EXERCISE 2** Complete each statement with a gerund (phrase) as the subject.

**EXAMPLE** \_\_\_\_\_ *Learning a foreign language* \_\_\_\_\_ takes a long time.

- \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the most difficult jobs.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the best ways to find a job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is not permitted in this classroom.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ is difficult for a foreign student.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ takes a long time.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is not polite.

**EXERCISE 3 ABOUT YOU** In preparing for an interview, it is good to think about the following questions. Answer these questions. Use a gerund in some of your answers, but do *not* try to use a gerund in every answer. It won't work. Give a lot of thought to your answers and compare them with your classmates' answers.

**EXAMPLES** What are your strengths?

Working with others; learning quickly; thinking fast in difficult situations

What are your strong and weak subjects in school?

I'm strong in math. I'm weak in history.

1. What are your strengths?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What are some of your weaknesses?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. List your accomplishments and achievements. (They can be achievements in jobs, sports, school, etc.)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What are your interests?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. What are your short-term goals?

\_\_\_\_\_

6. What are your long-term goals?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. What are some things you like? Think about personalities, tasks, environments, types of work, and structure.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. What are some things you dislike? Think about personalities, tasks, environments, types of work, and structure.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. Why should we hire you?

\_\_\_\_\_



**EXERCISE 4** Write a list of personal behaviors during an interview that would hurt your chances of getting a job. You may work with a partner or in a small group.

**EXAMPLES** Chewing gum during the interview looks bad.

Not looking directly at the interviewer can hurt your chances.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_

## 10.3 Gerund after Verb

Some verbs are commonly followed by a gerund (phrase). The gerund (phrase) is the object of the verb.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION																				
<p>Have you <b>considered going</b> to a job counselor?</p> <p>Do you <b>appreciate getting</b> advice?</p> <p>You can <b>discuss improving</b> your skills.</p> <p>You should <b>practice answering</b> interview questions.</p> <p>If you don't find a job immediately, <b>keep trying</b>.</p>	<p>The verbs below can be followed by a gerund:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>admit</td> <td>discuss</td> <td>mind</td> <td>put off</td> </tr> <tr> <td>appreciate</td> <td>dislike</td> <td>miss</td> <td>quit</td> </tr> <tr> <td>avoid</td> <td>enjoy</td> <td>permit</td> <td>recommend</td> </tr> <tr> <td>can't help</td> <td>finish</td> <td>postpone</td> <td>risk</td> </tr> <tr> <td>consider</td> <td>keep</td> <td>practice</td> <td>suggest</td> </tr> </table>	admit	discuss	mind	put off	appreciate	dislike	miss	quit	avoid	enjoy	permit	recommend	can't help	finish	postpone	risk	consider	keep	practice	suggest
admit	discuss	mind	put off																		
appreciate	dislike	miss	quit																		
avoid	enjoy	permit	recommend																		
can't help	finish	postpone	risk																		
consider	keep	practice	suggest																		
<p>I have many hobbies:</p> <p>I like to <b>go fishing</b> in the summer.</p> <p>I <b>go skiing</b> in the winter.</p> <p>I like indoor sports too. I <b>go bowling</b> once a month.</p>	<p><i>Go + gerund</i> is used in many idiomatic expressions.</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>go boating</td> <td>go jogging</td> </tr> <tr> <td>go bowling</td> <td>go sailing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>go camping</td> <td>go shopping</td> </tr> <tr> <td>go dancing</td> <td>go sightseeing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>go fishing</td> <td>go skating</td> </tr> <tr> <td>go hiking</td> <td>go skiing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>go hunting</td> <td>go swimming</td> </tr> </table>	go boating	go jogging	go bowling	go sailing	go camping	go shopping	go dancing	go sightseeing	go fishing	go skating	go hiking	go skiing	go hunting	go swimming						
go boating	go jogging																				
go bowling	go sailing																				
go camping	go shopping																				
go dancing	go sightseeing																				
go fishing	go skating																				
go hiking	go skiing																				
go hunting	go swimming																				
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. I don't <b>mind wearing</b> a suit to work.</li> <li>b. Don't <b>put off writing</b> your résumé. Do it now.</li> <li>c. I have an interview tomorrow morning. I <b>can't help feeling</b> nervous.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>I mind</i> means that something bothers me. <i>I don't mind</i> means that something is OK with me; it doesn't bother me.</li> <li>b. <i>Put off</i> means postpone.</li> <li>c. <i>Can't help</i> means to have no control over something.</li> </ol>																				

**EXERCISE 5 ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate gerund (or noun) to complete these statements. Share your answers with the class.

**EXAMPLE** I don't mind shopping for food, but I do<sup>3</sup> mind cooking it.

1. I usually enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ during the summer.
2. I don't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_, but I do mind \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I appreciate \_\_\_\_\_ from my friends.
5. I need to practice \_\_\_\_\_ if I want to improve.
6. I often put off \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I need to keep \_\_\_\_\_ if I want to be successful.
8. I should avoid \_\_\_\_\_ if I want to improve my health.
9. I miss \_\_\_\_\_ from my hometown.

**EXERCISE 6 ABOUT YOU** Make a list of suggestions and recommendations for a tourist who is about to visit your hometown. Read your list to a partner, a small group, or the entire class.

**EXAMPLES** I recommend taking warm clothes for the winter.

You should avoid drinking tap water.

1. I recommend:

---



---



---

2. You should avoid:

---



---



---

**EXERCISE 7 ABOUT YOU** Tell if you like or don't like the following activities. Explain why.

**EXAMPLES** go hunting  
I don't like to go hunting because I don't like to kill animals.

go bowling  
I like to go bowling because I think it's a fun activity.

- |               |                |                |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. go fishing | 3. go jogging  | 5. go hunting  |
| 2. go camping | 4. go swimming | 6. go shopping |

<sup>3</sup>Do makes the verb more emphatic. In this sentence, it shows contrast with don't mind.



## 10.4 Gerund after Preposition<sup>4</sup>

A gerund can follow a preposition. It is important to choose the correct preposition after a verb or adjective.

PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS		COMMON COMBINATIONS	EXAMPLES
Verb + Preposition	verb + <i>about</i>	care about complain about dream about forget about talk about think about worry about	I <b>care about doing</b> well in an interview. My sister <b>dreams about becoming</b> a doctor.
	verb + <i>to</i>	adjust to look forward to object to	I <b>look forward to getting</b> a job and <b>saving</b> money.
	verb + <i>on</i>	depend on insist on plan on	I <b>plan on going</b> to a career counselor.
	verb + <i>in</i>	believe in succeed in	My father <b>succeeded in finding</b> a good job.
Adjective + Preposition	adjective + <i>of</i>	afraid of capable of guilty of proud of tired of	I'm <b>afraid of losing</b> my job.
	adjective + <i>about</i>	concerned about excited about upset about worried about sad about	He is <b>upset about not getting</b> the job.
	adjective + <i>for</i>	responsible for famous for grateful to . . . for	Who is <b>responsible for hiring</b> in this company?
	adjective + <i>at</i>	good at successful at	I'm not very <b>good at writing</b> a résumé.
	adjective + <i>to</i>	accustomed to used to	I'm not <b>accustomed to talking</b> about my strengths.
	adjective + <i>in</i>	interested in successful in	Are you <b>interested in getting</b> a better job?

(continued)

<sup>4</sup>For a list of verbs and adjectives followed by a preposition, see Appendix H.

**Language Notes:**

1. *Plan, afraid, and proud* can be followed by an infinitive too.  
I plan **on seeing** a counselor. / I plan **to see** a counselor.  
I'm afraid **of losing** my job. / I'm afraid **to lose** my job.  
He's proud **of being** a college graduate. / He's proud **to be** a college graduate.
2. Notice that in some expressions, *to* is a preposition followed by a gerund, not part of an infinitive.

**Compare:**

I need **to write** a résumé. (infinitive)  
I'm not accustomed **to writing** a résumé. (*to* + gerund)

**EXERCISE 8 ABOUT YOU** Complete the questions with a gerund (phrase). Then ask another student these questions.

**EXAMPLE** Are you lazy about doing your homework?

1. Do you ever worry about \_\_\_\_\_
2. Do you plan on \_\_\_\_\_
3. Do you ever think about \_\_\_\_\_
4. When you get tired of \_\_\_\_\_, what do you do?
5. Are you interested in \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 9 ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with a preposition and a gerund (phrase) to make a true statement.

**EXAMPLE** I plan on going back to Haiti soon.

1. I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_
2. I'm not afraid \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm interested \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'm not interested \_\_\_\_\_
5. I want to succeed \_\_\_\_\_
6. I'm not very good \_\_\_\_\_
7. I'm accustomed \_\_\_\_\_
8. I'm not accustomed \_\_\_\_\_
9. I plan \_\_\_\_\_
10. I don't care \_\_\_\_\_



**EXERCISE 10****ABOUT YOU**

Fill in the blanks with a gerund or noun phrase to complete each statement. Compare your experiences in the U.S. with your experiences in your native country. You may share your answers with a small group or with the entire class.

**EXAMPLES** In the U.S., I'm afraid of walking alone at night.

In my native country, I was afraid of not being able to get a good education.

1. In the U.S., I'm interested in \_\_\_\_\_

In my native country, I was interested in \_\_\_\_\_

2. In the U.S., I worry about \_\_\_\_\_

In my native country, I worried about \_\_\_\_\_

3. In the U.S., I dream about \_\_\_\_\_

In my native country, I dreamed about \_\_\_\_\_

4. In the U.S., I look forward to \_\_\_\_\_

In my native country, I looked forward to \_\_\_\_\_

5. In the U.S., people often complain about \_\_\_\_\_

In my native country, people often complain about \_\_\_\_\_

6. In the U.S., families often talk about \_\_\_\_\_

In my native country, families often talk about \_\_\_\_\_

7. American students are accustomed to \_\_\_\_\_

Students in my native country are accustomed to \_\_\_\_\_

# 10.5 Gerund in Adverbial Phrase

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>You should practice interview questions <b>before going</b> on an interview.</p> <p>I found my job <b>by looking</b> in the newspaper.</p> <p>She took the test <b>without studying</b>.</p>	<p>We can use a gerund in an adverbial phrase that begins with a preposition: <i>before, by, after, without, etc.</i></p>

## EXERCISE 11 Fill in the blanks to complete the sentences. Practice using gerunds.

**EXAMPLE** The best way to improve your vocabulary is by reading.

- One way to find a job is by \_\_\_\_\_
- It is very difficult to find a job without \_\_\_\_\_
- The best way to improve your pronunciation is by \_\_\_\_\_
- The best way to quit a bad habit is by \_\_\_\_\_
- One way to find an apartment is by \_\_\_\_\_
- I can't speak English without \_\_\_\_\_
- It's impossible to get a driver's license without \_\_\_\_\_
- You should read the instructions for a test before \_\_\_\_\_

## EXERCISE 12 Fill in the blanks in the conversation below with the gerund form. Where you see two blanks, use a preposition before the gerund. Answers may vary.



CD 3, TR 19

**A:** I need to find a job. I've had ten interviews, but so far no job.

**B:** Have you thought about going to a job counselor?  
(example) (example)

**A:** No. Where can I find one?

**B:** Our school office has a counseling department. I suggest  
 \_\_\_\_\_ an appointment with a counselor.  
(1)

**A:** What can a job counselor do for me?

**B:** Do you know anything about interviewing skills?





**A:** No.

**B:** Well, with the job counselor, you can talk \_\_\_\_\_ (2)  
\_\_\_\_\_ (3) a good impression during an interview.

You can practice \_\_\_\_\_ (4) questions that the interviewer might ask you.

**A:** Really? How does the counselor know what questions the interviewer will ask me?

**B:** Many interviewers ask the same general questions. For example, the interviewer might ask you, "Do you enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ (5)  
with computers?" Or she might ask you, "Do you mind

\_\_\_\_\_ (6) overtime and on weekends?" Or "Are you good \_\_\_\_\_ (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (8) with other people?"

**A:** I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ (9) about myself.

**B:** That's what you have to do in the U.S.

**A:** What else can the counselor help me with?

**B:** If your skills are low, you can talk \_\_\_\_\_ (10)  
\_\_\_\_\_ (11) your skills. If you don't know much about computers, for example, she can recommend \_\_\_\_\_ (12)  
more classes.

**A:** It feels like I'm never going to find a job. I'm tired \_\_\_\_\_ (13)  
\_\_\_\_\_ (14) and not finding anything.

**B:** If you keep \_\_\_\_\_ (15), you will succeed \_\_\_\_\_ (16)  
\_\_\_\_\_ (17) a job. I'm sure. But it takes time and patience.

## 10.6 Infinitives—An Overview

To form an infinitive, we use *to* + the base form of a verb (*to find, to help, to run, to be*).

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I want <b>to find</b> a job.	An infinitive is used after certain verbs.
I want you <b>to help</b> me.	An object can be added before an infinitive.
I'm happy <b>to help</b> you.	An infinitive can follow certain adjectives.
It's important <b>to write</b> a good résumé.	An infinitive follows certain expressions with <i>it</i> .
He went to a counselor <b>to get</b> advice.	An infinitive is used to show purpose.

### Tips<sup>5</sup> on Writing a Résumé

Before

You Read

1. Have you ever written a résumé? What is the hardest part about writing a résumé?
2. Do people in your native country have to write a résumé?



CD 3, TR 20

**Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to infinitives.**

It's important **to write** a good, clear résumé. A résumé should be limited to one page. It is only necessary **to describe** your most relevant work.<sup>6</sup> Employers are busy people. Don't expect them **to read** long résumés.

You need **to present** your abilities in your résumé. Employers expect you **to use** action verbs **to describe** your experience. Don't begin your sentences with "I." Use past-tense verbs like: *managed, designed, created,* and *developed*. It is not enough **to say** you improved something. Be specific. How did you improve it?

Before making copies of your résumé, it is important **to check** the grammar and spelling. Employers want to see if you have good communications skills. Ask a friend or teacher **to read** and **give** an opinion about your résumé.

<sup>5</sup>A tip is a small piece of advice.

<sup>6</sup>Relevant work is work that is related to this particular job opening.



It isn't necessary to **include** references. If the employer wants you to **provide** references, he or she will ask you to **do** so during or after the interview.

Don't include personal information such as marital status, age, race, family information, or hobbies.

Be honest in your résumé. Employers can check your information. No one wants to **hire** a liar.

## TINA WHITE

1234 Anderson Avenue  
West City, MA 01766  
tina.white@e\*mail.com  
617-123-1234

### EXPERIENCE

#### COMPUTER SALES MANAGER

Acme Computer Services, Inc., Concord, MA  
March 2003–Present

- Managed computer services department, overseeing 20 sales representatives throughout New England.
- Exceeded annual sales goal by 20 percent in 2008.
- Created online customer database, enabling representatives and company to track and retain customers and improve service.
- Developed new training program and materials for all company sales representatives.

#### OFFICE MANAGER

West Marketing Services, West City, MA  
June 1999–March 2003

- Implemented new system for improving accounting records and reports.
- Managed, trained, and oversaw five customer service representatives.
- Grew sales contracts for support services by 200 percent in first two years.

### EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Northeastern Community College, Salem, MA

Associates Degree Major: Accounting

Institute of Management, Boston, MA

Certificate of Completion. Course: Sales Management

### COMPUTER SKILLS

Proficient in use of MS Windows, PowerPoint, Excel, Access, Outlook, Mac OS X, and several accounting and database systems.

## 10.7 Infinitive as Subject

An infinitive can be the subject of a sentence. We begin the sentence with *it* and delay the infinitive subject.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION												
It is important <b>to write</b> a good résumé. It isn't necessary <b>to include</b> all your experience.	We can use an infinitive after these adjectives: <table border="0"> <tr> <td>dangerous</td> <td>good</td> <td>necessary</td> </tr> <tr> <td>difficult</td> <td>hard</td> <td>possible</td> </tr> <tr> <td>easy</td> <td>important</td> <td>sad</td> </tr> <tr> <td>expensive</td> <td>impossible</td> <td>wrong</td> </tr> </table>	dangerous	good	necessary	difficult	hard	possible	easy	important	sad	expensive	impossible	wrong
dangerous	good	necessary											
difficult	hard	possible											
easy	important	sad											
expensive	impossible	wrong											
It takes time <b>to prepare</b> for an interview. It takes patience <b>to find</b> a job. It costs money <b>to use</b> a résumé service.	We can use an infinitive after certain nouns. <table border="0"> <tr> <td>time</td> <td>patience</td> <td>money</td> </tr> <tr> <td>fun</td> <td>a pleasure</td> <td>experience</td> </tr> </table>	time	patience	money	fun	a pleasure	experience						
time	patience	money											
fun	a pleasure	experience											
It is necessary <b>for the manager to choose</b> the best candidate for the job. It isn't easy <b>for me to talk</b> about myself. It was hard <b>for her to leave</b> her last job.	Include <i>for</i> + noun or object pronoun to make a statement that is true of a specific person.												
<b>Compare Infinitive and Gerund Subjects:</b> It's important <b>to arrive</b> on time. <b>Arriving</b> on time is important.	There is no difference in meaning between an infinitive subject and a gerund subject.												

**EXERCISE 13** Fill in the blanks with an appropriate infinitive to give information about résumés and interviews. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** It is necessary \_\_\_\_\_ *to have* \_\_\_\_\_ a Social Security card.

- It isn't necessary \_\_\_\_\_ all your previous experience.  
Choose only the most relevant experience.
- It's important \_\_\_\_\_ your spelling and grammar before sending a résumé.
- It is a good idea \_\_\_\_\_ interview questions before going on an interview.
- It is important \_\_\_\_\_ your best when you go on an interview, so choose your clothes carefully.
- It isn't necessary \_\_\_\_\_ references on a résumé. You can simply write, "References available upon request."
- It's important \_\_\_\_\_ your past work experience in detail, using words like *managed*, *designed*, *supervised*, and *built*.
- It takes time \_\_\_\_\_ a good résumé.



**EXERCISE 14** Complete each statement with an infinitive phrase. You can add an object, if you like.

**EXAMPLES** It's easy to shop in an American supermarket.

It's necessary for me to pay my rent by the fifth of the month.

1. It's important \_\_\_\_\_
2. It's impossible \_\_\_\_\_
3. It's possible \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's necessary \_\_\_\_\_
5. It's dangerous \_\_\_\_\_
6. It isn't good \_\_\_\_\_
7. It's expensive \_\_\_\_\_
8. It's hard \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 15** **ABOUT YOU** Tell if it's important or not important for you to do the following.

**EXAMPLE** own a house  
It's (not) important for me to own a house.

- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. get a college degree        | 6. study American history     |
| 2. find an interesting job     | 7. become an American citizen |
| 3. have a car                  | 8. own a computer             |
| 4. speak English well          | 9. have a cell phone          |
| 5. read and write English well | 10. make a lot of money       |

**EXERCISE 16** Write a sentence with each pair of words below. You may read your sentences to the class.

**EXAMPLE** hard / the teacher

*It's hard for the teacher to pronounce the names of some students.*

1. important / us (the students)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. difficult / Americans  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. easy / the teacher

4. necessary / children

5. difficult / a woman

6. difficult / a man

**EXERCISE 17** Write a list of things that a foreign student or immigrant should know about life in the U.S. Use gerunds or infinitives as subjects. You may work with a partner.

**EXAMPLES** *It is possible for some students to get financial aid.*

*Learning English is going to take longer than you expected.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

## 10.8 Infinitive after Adjective

Some adjectives can be followed by an infinitive.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I would be <b>happy to help</b> you with your résumé. Are you <b>prepared to make</b> copies of your résumé?	Adjectives often followed by an infinitive are: afraid    happy    prepared    ready glad      lucky    proud      sad



**EXERCISE 18** Complete this conversation with appropriate infinitives. Answers may vary.



CD 3, TR 21

**A:** I have my first interview tomorrow. I'm afraid to go  
(example)  
alone. Would you go with me?

**B:** I'd be happy \_\_\_\_\_ (1)  
with you and wait in the car. But nobody can go with you on an interview.

You have to do it alone. It sounds like you're not ready \_\_\_\_\_ (2)  
a job interview. You should see

a job counselor and get some practice before you have an interview. I was lucky \_\_\_\_\_ (3)  
a great job counselor.

She prepared me well.

**A:** I don't have time to make an appointment with a job counselor before tomorrow. Maybe you can help me.

**B:** I'd be happy \_\_\_\_\_ (4)  
you. Do you have some time this afternoon?  
We can go over some basic questions.

**A:** Thanks. I'm glad \_\_\_\_\_ (5)  
you as my friend.

**B:** That's what friends are for.



**EXERCISE 19** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** I'm lucky to be in the U.S.

1. I was lucky \_\_\_\_\_
2. I'm proud \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm sometimes afraid \_\_\_\_\_
4. I'm not afraid \_\_\_\_\_
5. In the U.S., I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_
6. Are we ready \_\_\_\_\_
7. I'm not prepared \_\_\_\_\_

## 10.9 Infinitive after Verb

Some verbs are commonly followed by an infinitive (phrase).

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I need <b>to find</b> a new job. I decided <b>to quit</b> my old job. I prefer <b>to work</b> outdoors. I want <b>to make</b> more money.	We can use an infinitive after the following verbs: agree    decide    like    promise ask      expect    love    remember attempt    forget    need    start begin      hope      plan    try continue    learn     prefer    want

**Pronunciation Note:** The *to* in infinitives is often pronounced "ta" or, after a *d* sound, "da." *Want to* is often pronounced "wanna." Listen to your teacher pronounce the sentences in the above box.

**EXERCISE 20** **ABOUT YOU** Ask a question with the words given in the present tense. Another student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** like / work in an office

**A:** Do you like to work in an office?

**B:** Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.

1. plan / look for a job
2. expect / make a lot of money at your next job
3. like / work with computers
4. prefer / work the second shift
5. need / see a job counselor
6. hope / become rich some day
7. like / work with people
8. try / keep up with changes in technology
9. want / learn another language



**EXERCISE 21** **ABOUT YOU** Write a sentence about yourself using the words given, in any tense. You may share your sentences with the class.

**EXAMPLES** like / eat  
I like to eat Chinese food.

try / find  
I'm trying to find a job.

1. like / read

2. not like / eat

3. want / visit

4. decide / go

5. try / learn

6. begin / study

**EXERCISE 22** **ABOUT YOU** Check (✓) the activities that you like to do. Tell the class why you like or don't like this activity.

- |                                  |                            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. ___ stay home on the weekends | 8. ___ go to museums       |
| 2. ___ eat in a restaurant       | 9. ___ dance               |
| 3. ___ get up early              | 10. ___ write letters      |
| 4. ___ talk on the phone         | 11. ___ play chess         |
| 5. ___ surf the Internet         | 12. ___ watch sports on TV |
| 6. ___ go to the library         | 13. ___ read               |
| 7. ___ swim                      | 14. ___ go shopping        |

## 10.10 Gerund or Infinitive after Verb

Some verbs can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive with almost no difference in meaning.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION	
I started <b>looking</b> for a job a month ago. I started <b>to look</b> for a job a month ago.	The verbs below can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive with almost no difference in meaning:	
He continued <b>working</b> until he was 65 years old.		attempt      deserve      prefer
He continued <b>to work</b> until he was 65 years old.		begin          hate          start
		can't stand <sup>7</sup> like      try
	continue      love	

### Language Notes:

- The meaning of *try* + infinitive is a little different from the meaning of *try* + gerund.  
*Try* + infinitive means to make an effort.  
I'll **try to improve** my résumé.  
You should **try to relax** during the interview.
- Try* + gerund means to use a different technique when one technique doesn't produce the result you want.  
I wanted to reach you yesterday, but I couldn't. I **tried calling** your home phone, but I got your answering machine. I **tried calling** your cell phone, but it was turned off. I **tried e-mailing** you, but you didn't check your e-mail.

**EXERCISE 23 ABOUT YOU** Complete each statement using either a gerund (phrase) or an infinitive (phrase). Practice both ways.

**EXAMPLES** I started to learn English four years ago.  
(learn)

I started studying French when I was in high school.  
(study)

1. I started \_\_\_\_\_ to this school in \_\_\_\_\_.  
(come)

2. I began \_\_\_\_\_ English \_\_\_\_\_.  
(study)

3. I like \_\_\_\_\_ on TV.  
(watch)

4. I like \_\_\_\_\_.  
(live)

5. I hate \_\_\_\_\_.  
(wear)

6. I love \_\_\_\_\_.  
(eat)

<sup>7</sup>Can't stand means hate or can't tolerate. I can't stand waiting in a long line.



## 10.11 Object before Infinitive

We can use a noun or object pronoun (*me, you, him, her, it, us, and them*) before an infinitive.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Don't <b>expect an employer to read</b> a long résumé. I <b>want you to look</b> at my résumé. My boss <b>wants me to work</b> overtime. I <b>expected him to give</b> me a raise.	We often use an object between the following verbs and an infinitive: advise    invite    want allow    need    would like ask    permit expect    tell
He helped me <b>find</b> a job. He helped me <b>to find</b> a job.	<i>Help</i> can be followed by either an object + base form or an object + infinitive.

### EXERCISE 24 Fill in the blanks with pronouns and infinitives to complete the conversation below.



CD 3, TR 22

**A:** I want to quit my job.

**B:** Why?

**A:** I don't like my supervisor. He expects me to work  
(example) (example: work)  
 at night and on weekends.

**B:** But you get extra pay for that, don't you?

**A:** No. I asked (1) (2 give) me a raise, but he said the company can't afford it.

**B:** Is that the only problem?

**A:** No. My coworkers and I like to go out for lunch. But he doesn't want (3) (4 go) out. He expects (5) (6 eat) in the company cafeteria. He says that if we go out, we might not get back on time.

**B:** That's awful. He should permit (7) (8 eat) wherever you want to.

**A:** That's what I think. I also have a problem with my manager. She never gives anyone a compliment. When I do a good job, I expect (9) (10 say) something nice. But she only says something when we make a mistake.



(continued)

**B:** It's important to get positive feedback too.

**A:** Do you know of any jobs in your company? I'd like

\_\_\_\_\_ your boss if he  
(11) (12 ask)  
needs anyone.

**B:** I don't think there are any job openings in my company. My boss

has two sons in their twenties. He wants \_\_\_\_\_  
(13)

\_\_\_\_\_ for him on Saturdays. But they're so  
(14 work)

lazy. The boss allows \_\_\_\_\_  
(15) (16 come)

late and \_\_\_\_\_ early. He would never permit  
(17 leave)

\_\_\_\_\_ that. We have to be  
(18) (19 do)

on time exactly, or he'll take away some of our pay.

**A:** Maybe I should just stay at my job. I guess no job is perfect.

**EXERCISE 25** Tell if the teacher wants or doesn't want the students to do the following.

**EXAMPLES**

do the homework

The teacher wants us to do the homework.

use the textbook during a test

The teacher doesn't want us to use the textbook during a test.

1. talk to another student during a test
2. study before a test
3. copy another student's homework in class
4. learn English
5. speak our native languages in class
6. improve our pronunciation
7. talk about our native countries in class
8. sit in rows



**EXERCISE 26** **ABOUT YOU** Tell if you expect or don't expect the teacher to do the following.

**EXAMPLES** give homework  
I expect him/her to give homework.

give me private lessons  
I don't expect him/her to give me private lessons.

- |                             |                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. correct the homework     | 6. pass all the students              |
| 2. give tests               | 7. know a lot about my native country |
| 3. speak my native language | 8. answer my questions in class       |
| 4. help me after class      | 9. teach us American history          |
| 5. come to class on time    | 10. pronounce my name correctly       |

**EXERCISE 27** **ABOUT YOU** Write sentences to tell what one member of your family wants (or doesn't want) from another member of your family.

**EXAMPLES** My father doesn't want my brother to watch so much TV.

My brother wants me to help him with his math homework.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

## 10.12 Infinitive to Show Purpose

We use the infinitive to show purpose.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
You can use the Internet <b>in order to find</b> job information. I need a car <b>in order to get</b> to work. I'm saving my money <b>in order to buy</b> a car.	<i>In order to + verb</i> shows purpose.
You can use the Internet <b>to find</b> job information. I need a car <b>to get</b> to work. I'm saving my money <b>to buy</b> a car.	<i>To</i> is the short form of <i>in order to</i> .

**EXERCISE 28** Fill in the blanks with an infinitive to show purpose. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** I bought the Sunday newspaper to look for a job.

1. I called the company \_\_\_\_\_ an appointment.
2. She wants to work overtime \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You should use the Internet \_\_\_\_\_ jobs.
4. You can use a résumé writing service \_\_\_\_\_ your résumé.
5. My interview is in a distant suburb. I need a car \_\_\_\_\_ the interview.
6. Use express mail \_\_\_\_\_ packages faster.
7. In the U.S., you need experience \_\_\_\_\_ a job, and you need a job \_\_\_\_\_ experience.
8. I need two phone lines. I need one \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone with my friends and relatives. I need the other one \_\_\_\_\_ business calls.
9. I'm sending an envelope that has a lot of papers in it. I need extra stamps \_\_\_\_\_ this envelope.
10. You should go to the college admissions office \_\_\_\_\_ a copy of your transcripts.
11. After an interview, you can call the employer \_\_\_\_\_ that you're very interested in the position.

## Rita's Story

Before

You Read

1. What are some differences between the American workplace and the workplace in other countries?
2. In your native culture, is it a sign of respect or disrespect to look at someone directly?



Read the following journal entry. Pay special attention to *used to*, *be used to*, and *get used to*.

August 23

I've been in the U.S. for two years. I **used to** study British English in India, so I had a hard time **getting used to** the American pronunciation. But little by little, I started to **get used to** it. Now I understand Americans well, and they understand me.

I **used to be** an elementary school teacher in India. But for the past two years in the U.S., I've been working in a hotel cleaning rooms. I have to work the second shift. I'm **not used to** working nights. I don't like it because I don't see my children very much. When I get home from work, they're asleep. My husband is home in the evening and cooks for them. In India, I **used to** do all the cooking, but now he has to help with household duties. He didn't like it at first, but now he's **used to** it.

When I started looking for a job, I had to **get used to** a lot of new things. For example, I had to learn to talk about my abilities in an interview. In India, it is considered impolite to say how wonderful you are. But my job counselor told me that I had to **get used to** it because that's what Americans do. Another thing I'm **not used to** is wearing American clothes. In India, I **used to** wear traditional Indian clothes to work. But now I wear a uniform to work. I don't like to dress like this. I prefer traditional Indian clothes, but my job requires a uniform. There's one thing I can't **get used to**: everyone here calls each other by their first names. It's our native custom to use a term of respect with people we don't know.

It has been hard to **get used to** so many new things, but little by little, I'm doing it.





## 10.13 Used To vs. Be Used To

**Used to + base form is different from be used to + gerund.**

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>Rita <b>used to be</b> an elementary school teacher. Now she cleans hotel rooms.</p> <p>She <b>used to wear</b> traditional Indian clothes. Now she wears a uniform to work.</p> <p>She <b>used to cook</b> dinner for her family in India. Now her husband cooks dinner.</p> <p>Her husband <b>didn't use to cook</b> in India.</p>	<p><i>Used to + base form</i> tells about a past habit or custom. This activity has been discontinued.</p> <p>The negative is <i>didn't use to + base form</i>. (Remove the <i>d</i> at the end.)</p>
<p>I'm <b>used to working</b> in the day, not at night.</p> <p>Women in India <b>are used to wearing</b> traditional clothes.</p> <p>People who studied British English <b>aren't used to the American pronunciation</b>.</p>	<p><i>Be used to + gerund or noun</i> means <i>be accustomed to</i>. Something is a person's custom and is therefore not difficult to do.</p> <p>The negative is <i>be + not + used to + gerund or noun</i>. (Do not remove the <i>d</i> of <b>used to</b>.)</p>
<p>If you immigrate to the U.S., you have to <b>get used to many new things</b>.</p> <p>Children from another country usually <b>get used to living</b> in the U.S. easily. But it takes their parents a long time to <b>get used to a new life</b>.</p> <p>I <b>can't get used to</b> the cold winters here.</p> <p>She <b>can't get used to</b> calling people by their first names.</p>	<p><i>Get used to + gerund or noun</i> means <i>become accustomed to</i>.</p> <p>For the negative, we usually say <i>can't get used to</i>.</p>
<p><b>Pronunciation Note:</b> We don't pronounce the <i>d</i> in <i>used to</i>.</p>	

### EXERCISE 29

**ABOUT YOU** Write four sentences comparing your former behaviors to your behaviors or customs now.

**EXAMPLES** I used to live with my family. Now I live with a roommate.

I used to worry a lot. Now I take it easy most of the time.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_



**EXERCISE 30**

**ABOUT YOU** Write sentences comparing the way you used to live in your country or in another city and the way you live now. Read your sentences to the class.

**EXAMPLE** I used to go everywhere by bus. Now I have a car.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 31**

A student wrote about things that are new for her in an American classroom. Fill in the blanks with a gerund.

**EXAMPLE** I'm not used to taking multiple-choice tests. In my native country, we have essay tests.

1. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ at small desks. In my native country, we sit at large tables.
2. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher by his/her first name. In my country, we say "Professor."
3. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ in a textbook. In my native country, we don't write in the books because we borrow them from the school.
4. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ jeans to class. In my native country, students wear a uniform.
5. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ and studying at the same time. Students in my native country don't work. Their parents support them.
6. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money to attend college. In my native country, college is free.
7. I'm not used to \_\_\_\_\_ when a teacher asks me a question. In my native country, students stand to answer a question.

**EXERCISE 32**

**ABOUT YOU** Name four things that you had to get used to in the U.S. or in a new town or school. (These things were strange for you when you arrived.)

**EXAMPLES** I had to get used to living in a small apartment.

I had to get used to American pronunciation.

1. I had to get used to \_\_\_\_\_

2. I had to get used to \_\_\_\_\_

3. I had to get used to \_\_\_\_\_

4. I had to get used to \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 33**

**ABOUT YOU** Answer each question with a complete sentence. Practice *be used to* + gerund or noun.

**EXAMPLES** What are you used to drinking in the morning?

I'm used to drinking coffee in the morning.

What kind of food are you used to? I'm used to Mexican food.

1. What kind of work are you used to?

2. What kind of relationship are you used to having with coworkers?

3. What kind of food are you used to (eating)?

4. What kind of weather are you used to?

5. What time are you used to getting up?

6. What kinds of clothes are you used to wearing to work or class?

7. What kinds of things are you used to doing every day?

8. What kinds of classroom behaviors are you used to?

9. What kinds of things are you used to doing alone?

**EXERCISE 34**

Circle the correct words to complete this conversation.



CD 3, TR 24

**A:** How's your new job?

**B:** I don't like it at all. I have to work the night shift. I can't get used to

(sleep / sleeping) during the day.  
(example)

**A:** I know. That's hard. I used to (work / working) the night shift, and I

hated it. That's why I quit.

**B:** But the night shift pays more money.



**A:** I know it does, but I was never home for my children. Now my kids speak more English than Spanish. They used to (*speaking* / *speak*)<sup>(2)</sup> Spanish well, but now they mix Spanish and English. They play with their American friends all day or watch TV.

**B:** My kids are the same way. But (*I'm* / *I*)<sup>(3)</sup> used to it. It doesn't bother me.

**A:** I can't (*get* / *be*)<sup>(4)</sup> used to it. My parents came to live with us, and they don't speak much English. So they can't communicate with their grandchildren anymore.

**B:** My parents used to (*living* / *live*)<sup>(5)</sup> with us too. But they went back to Mexico. They didn't like the winters here. They couldn't get (*use* / *used*)<sup>(6)</sup> to the cold weather.

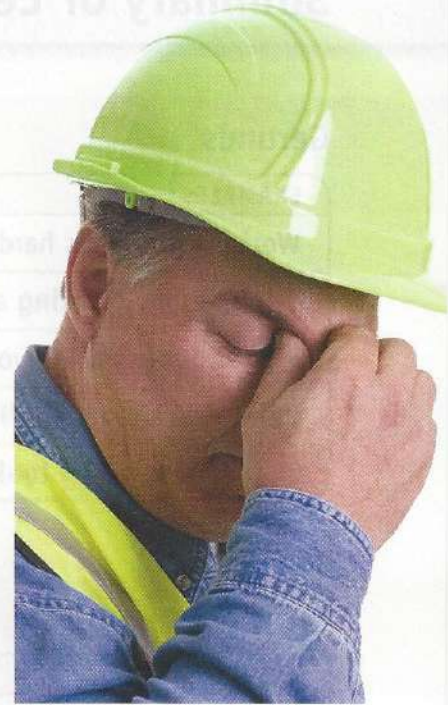
**A:** Do you think Americans are (*used to* / *use to*)<sup>(7)</sup> cold weather?

**B:** I'm not sure. My coworker was born in the U.S., but she says she hates winter. She (*is used to* / *used to*)<sup>(8)</sup> live in Texas, but now she lives here in Minnesota.

**A:** Why did she move here if she hates the cold weather?

**B:** The company where she used to (*work* / *working*)<sup>(9)</sup> closed down and she had to find another job. Her cousin helped her find a job here.

**A:** Before I came to the U.S., I thought everything here would be perfect. I didn't (*use* / *used*)<sup>(10)</sup> to (*think* / *thinking*)<sup>(11)</sup> about the problems. But I guess life in every country has its problems.



# Summary of Lesson 10

## Gerunds

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>Working</b> all day is hard.	As the subject of the sentence
I don't enjoy <b>working</b> as a taxi driver.	After certain verbs
I <b>go shopping</b> after work.	In many idiomatic expressions with <i>go</i>
I'm worried about <b>finding</b> a job.	After prepositions
She found a job by <b>looking</b> in the newspaper.	In adverbial phrases

## Infinitives

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I need <b>to find</b> a new job.	After certain verbs
My boss wants me <b>to work</b> overtime.	After an object
I'm ready <b>to quit</b> .	After certain adjectives
It's important <b>to have</b> some free time. It's impossible for me <b>to work</b> 80 hours a week.	After certain impersonal expressions beginning with <i>it</i>
I work (in order) <b>to support</b> my family.	To show purpose

## Gerund or Infinitive—No Difference in Meaning

GERUND	INFINITIVE
I like <b>working</b> with computers. I began <b>working</b> three months ago.	I like <b>to work</b> with computers. I began <b>to work</b> three months ago.
<b>Writing</b> a good résumé is important.	It's important <b>to write</b> a good résumé.

## Gerund or Infinitive—Difference in Meaning

INFINITIVE (PAST HABIT)	GERUND (CUSTOM)
Rita <b>used to be</b> a teacher in India. Now she works in a hotel.	She <b>isn't used to working</b> the night shift. It's hard for her.
Rita <b>used to wear</b> traditional Indian clothes to work. Now she wears a uniform.	Rita studied British English. She had to <b>get used to hearing</b> the American pronunciation.



## Editing Advice

1. Use a gerund after a preposition.

He read the whole book without ~~use~~<sup>using</sup> a dictionary.

2. Use the correct preposition.

She insisted ~~in~~<sup>on</sup> driving me home.

3. Use a gerund after certain verbs.

I enjoy ~~to~~<sup>ing</sup> walk in the park.

He went ~~to~~<sup>ing</sup> shop after work.

4. Use an infinitive after certain verbs.

I decided ~~buy~~<sup>to</sup> a new car.

5. Use a gerund, not a base form, as a subject.

~~Find~~<sup>Finding</sup> a good job is important.

6. Don't forget to include *it* for a delayed infinitive subject.

~~Is~~<sup>It's</sup> important to find a good job.

7. Don't use the past form after *to*.

I decided to ~~bought~~<sup>buy</sup> a new car.

8. After *want*, *expect*, *need*, *advise*, and *ask*, use an object pronoun, not a subject pronoun, before the infinitive. Don't use *that* as a connector.

He wants ~~that I~~<sup>me to</sup> drive.

The teacher expects ~~we~~<sup>us to</sup> do the homework.

9. Use *for*, not *to*, when introducing an object after impersonal expressions beginning with *it*. Use the object pronoun after *for*.

It's important ~~to~~<sup>for</sup> me to find a job.

It's necessary ~~for he~~<sup>him</sup> to be on time.

10. Use *to* + base form, not *for*, to show purpose.

I called the company <sup>to</sup> ~~for~~ make an appointment.

11. Don't put *be* before *used to* for the habitual past.

I'm <sup>I</sup> ~~be~~ used to live in Germany. Now I live in the U.S.

12. Don't use the *-ing* form after *used to* for the habitual past.

We used to <sup>have</sup> ~~having~~ a dog, but he died.

13. Don't forget the *d* in *used to*.

I <sup>d</sup> ~~use~~ to live with my parents. Now I live alone.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

I'm <sup>to</sup> ~~planning~~ <sup>(example)</sup> be a nurse. I'd love <sup>C</sup> ~~to be~~ <sup>(example)</sup> a doctor, but I don't <sup>(1)</sup> ~~want be~~ in school for so many years. My mother is a doctor and she wanted I <sup>(2)</sup> ~~study~~ medicine too. I know that you're never too old <sup>(3)</sup> ~~to learn~~ something new, but I'm 35 years old and <sup>(4)</sup> ~~start~~ something new at my age is not easy. <sup>(5)</sup> ~~Study~~ to become a doctor takes too long. It would take me eight years <sup>(6)</sup> ~~become~~ a doctor. I went to my college counselor <sup>(7)</sup> ~~to get~~ advice. My counselor recommended <sup>(8)</sup> ~~entering~~ a nursing program instead. She <sup>(9)</sup> ~~advised me take~~ biology and chemistry this semester as well as English and math. It's hard <sup>(10)</sup> ~~to~~ me to take so many courses, but I have no choice.

In my country, <sup>(11)</sup> ~~I'm used to~~ work in a nursing home. I enjoyed <sup>(12)</sup> ~~to help~~ older people, but I didn't make enough money. When I decided <sup>(13)</sup> ~~to came~~ to the U.S., I had to think about my future. People say that <sup>(14)</sup> ~~is~~ not hard <sup>(15)</sup> ~~to find~~ a job as a nurse in the U.S. It's important <sup>(16)</sup> ~~for~~ me to be in a profession where I can help people. And I can do that more quickly <sup>(17)</sup> ~~by going~~ into a nursing program.



## Lesson 10 Test/Review

**PART I** Fill in the blanks in the conversation below. Use a gerund or an infinitive. In some cases, either the gerund or the infinitive is possible. Answers may vary.

**A:** Hi, Molly. I haven't seen you in ages. What's going on in your life?

**B:** I've made many changes. First, I quit working in a factory.  
(example)

I disliked \_\_\_\_\_ the same thing every day. And I wasn't  
(1)  
used to \_\_\_\_\_ on my feet all day. My boss often wanted me  
(2)  
\_\_\_\_\_ overtime on Saturdays. I need \_\_\_\_\_ with my  
(3) (4)  
children on Saturdays. Sometimes they want me \_\_\_\_\_  
(5)  
them to the zoo or to the museum. And I need \_\_\_\_\_ them  
(6)  
with their homework too.

**A:** So what do you plan on \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
(7)

**B:** I've started \_\_\_\_\_ to college \_\_\_\_\_ some general courses.  
(8) (9)

**A:** What career are you planning?

**B:** I'm not sure. I'm interested in \_\_\_\_\_ with children. Maybe I'll  
(10)  
become a teacher's aide. I've also thought about \_\_\_\_\_ in a day  
(11)  
care center. I care about \_\_\_\_\_ people.  
(12)

**A:** Yes, it's wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ other people, especially children. It's  
(13)  
important \_\_\_\_\_ a job that you like. So you're starting a whole  
(14)  
new career.

**B:** It's not new, really. Before I came to the U.S., I used \_\_\_\_\_  
(15)  
a kindergarten teacher in my country. But my English wasn't  
so good when I came here, so I found a job in a factory. I look  
forward to \_\_\_\_\_ to my former profession or doing  
(16)  
something similar.

**A:** How did you learn English so fast?

(continued)

**B:** By \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(17)</sup> with people at work, by \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(18)</sup> TV, and by \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(19)</sup> the newspaper. It hasn't been easy for me \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(20)</sup> American English. I studied British English in my country, but here I have to get used to \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(21)</sup> things like "gonna" and "wanna." At first I didn't understand Americans, but now I'm used to their pronunciation. I've had to make a lot of changes.

**A:** You should be proud of \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(22)</sup> so many changes in your life so quickly.

**B:** I am.

**A:** Let's get together some time and talk some more.

**B:** I'd love to. I love to dance. Maybe we can go \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(23)</sup> together sometime.

**A:** That would be great. And I love \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(24)</sup>. Maybe we can go shopping together sometime.

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with the correct preposition. If no preposition is necessary, write X in the blank.

**EXAMPLES** I believe \_\_\_\_\_ **in** \_\_\_\_\_ doing my best.

Not \_\_\_\_\_ **X** \_\_\_\_\_ knowing English well makes it hard to find a job.

1. She dreams \_\_\_\_\_ becoming an engineer.
2. Are you good \_\_\_\_\_ working with people?
3. I'm not worried \_\_\_\_\_ finding a job.
4. When he's not working, he likes to go \_\_\_\_\_ fishing.
5. You can prepare for an interview \_\_\_\_\_ practicing with a friend.
6. A nurse is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ improving a patient's health.
7. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ working in a restaurant?
8. She went to a job counselor \_\_\_\_\_ get advice.
9. It's important \_\_\_\_\_ him to finish college.
10. I want you \_\_\_\_\_ help me write a résumé.



# Expansion

## Classroom

### Activities

**1** If you have a job, write a list of five things you enjoy and don't enjoy about your job. If you don't have a job, you can write about what you enjoy and don't enjoy about this school or class. Share your answers with the class.

**2** Compare the work environment in the U.S. to the work environment in another country. Discuss your answers in a small group or with the entire class. (If you have no experience with American jobs, ask an American to fill in his/her opinions about the U.S.)

	The U.S.	Another Country
1. Coworkers are friendly with each other at the job.		
2. Coworkers get together after work to socialize.		
3. Arriving on time for the job is very important.		
4. The boss is friendly with the employees.		
5. The employees are very serious about their jobs.		
6. The employees use the telephone for personal use.		
7. Everyone wears formal clothes.		
8. Employees get long lunch breaks.		
9. Employees get long vacations.		
10. Employees call the company if they are sick and can't work on a particular day.		
11. Employees are paid in cash.		
12. Employees often take work home.		

**3** Find a partner. Pretend that one of you is the manager of a company and the other one is looking for a job in that company. First decide what kind of company it is. Then write the manager's questions and the applicant's answers. Perform your interview in front of the class.

# Talk

## About It

- 1 Talk about your experiences in looking for a job in the U.S.
- 2 Talk about the environment where you work.
- 3 Talk about some professions that interest you.
- 4 Talk about some professions that you think are terrible.

# Write

## About It

- 1 Write your résumé and a cover letter.
- 2 Write about a job you wouldn't want to have. Tell why.
- 3 Write about a profession you would like to have. Tell why.
- 4 Write about your current job or a job you had in the past. Tell what you like(d) or don't (didn't) like about this job.

**My Last Job**

I used to work as a server in a restaurant. I hated this job for several reasons. First, my boss expected me to be on my feet all day even when the restaurant was empty. Also, I didn't like the customers. I always tried to be nice to them, but some of them weren't nice to me . . .



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.

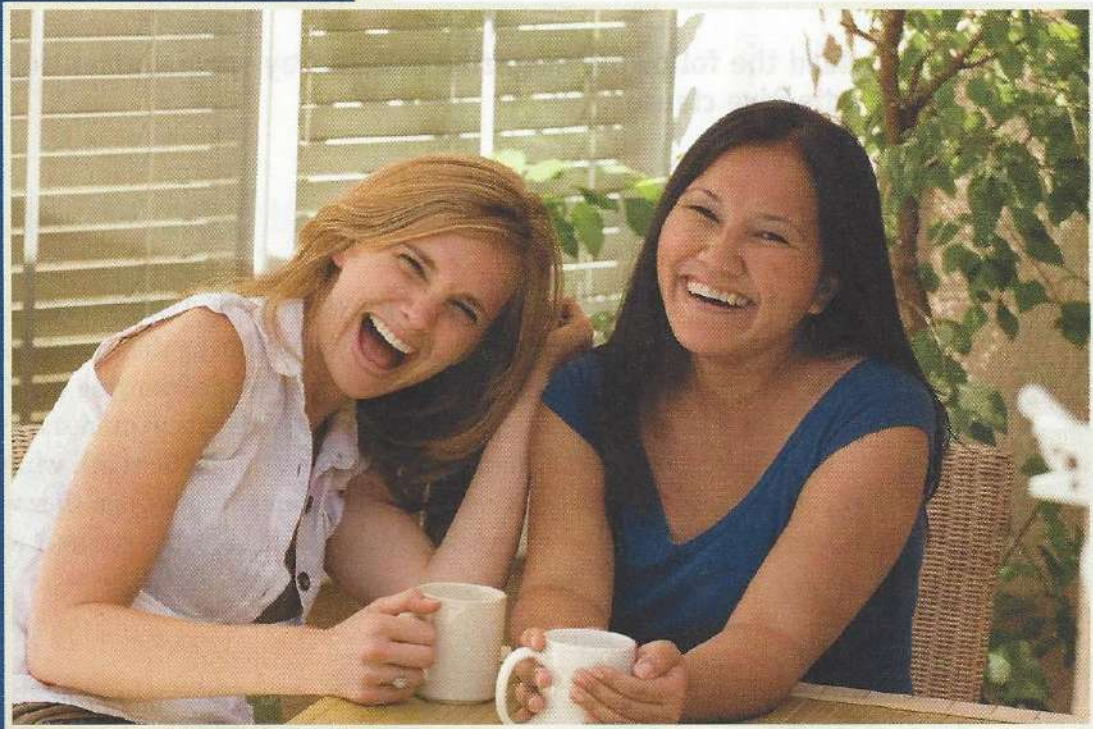


## Lesson

# 11

### Grammar Adjective Clauses

### Context Making Connections— Old Friends and New





## 11.1 Adjective Clauses—An Overview

An adjective is a word that describes a noun. An adjective clause is a group of words (with a subject and a verb) that describes a noun. Compare adjectives (ADJ) and adjective clauses (AC) below.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<b>ADJ:</b> Do you know your <b>new</b> neighbors? <b>AC:</b> Do you know the people <b>who live next door to you</b> ?	An adjective (ADJ) precedes a noun.
<b>ADJ:</b> This is an <b>interesting</b> book. <b>AC:</b> This is a book <b>that has pictures of the high school graduates</b> .	An adjective clause (AC) follows a noun.
<b>ADJ:</b> I attended an <b>old</b> high school. <b>AC:</b> The high school <b>that I attended</b> was built in 1920.	Relative pronouns, such as <i>who</i> and <i>that</i> , introduce an adjective clause.

### Finding Old Friends

Before

You Read

1. Do you keep in touch with old friends from your previous schools?
2. Have you ever thought about contacting someone you haven't seen in years?



CD 4, TR 01

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to adjective clauses.**

Americans move numerous times during their lives. As a result, they often lose touch with old friends. Usually, during their twenties and thirties, people are too busy building their careers and starting their families to think much about the past. But as people get older, they often start to wonder about the best friend they had in high school, the soldier with whom they served in the military, the person who lived next door when they were growing up, or their high school sweetheart. Many people want to connect with the past.



Before the Internet, finding a lost love or an old friend required searching through old phone books in libraries in different cities, hard work, and a lot of luck. It was especially hard to find married women **who changed their names**.

Now with the Internet, old friends can sometimes find each other in seconds. Several Web sites have emerged to meet people's growing desire to make connections with former classmates. There are Web sites **that list the students in high schools and colleges in the U.S.** People **who went to high school in the U.S.** can list themselves according to the school they attended and the year **they graduated**. A man might go to these Web sites looking for the guys **he played football with** or a long-lost friend—and find the name of a first love **whom he hasn't seen in years**.

One Web site, Classmates.com, claims that more than 40 million Americans have listed themselves on their site. Married women **who have changed their names** list themselves by their maiden names so that others can recognize them easily.

Another way that people **make connections with old classmates** is through reunions. Some high school graduating classes meet every ten years. They usually have dinner, remember the time **when they were young**, and exchange information about what they are doing today. They sometimes bring their high school yearbooks, **which have pictures of the graduates and other school memories**.

Some classes have their reunions in the schools **where they first met**. Others have their reunions in a nice restaurant. There are Web sites that **specialize in helping people find their former classmates and plan reunions**.

In America's highly mobile society, it takes some effort to connect with old friends. Looking back at fond memories, renewing old friendships, making new friends, and even starting a new romance with an old love can be the reward for a little work on the Internet.



High School Yearbook



**EXERCISE 1** Tell if the statement is true or false based on the reading on pages 358–359. Write *T* or *F*.

**EXAMPLE** People who attend reunions meet their old classmates. **T**

1. A yearbook is a book that has the diplomas of the graduates.
2. Classmates.com is a Web site that has lists of students from various high schools in the U.S.
3. Americans move a lot and often lose touch with the friends that they had in high school.
4. Women who get married list their maiden names on Classmates.com.
5. People who graduate from high school have to attend their reunions.
6. There are several Web sites that help people make connections with old friends.

**EXERCISE 2** Underline the adjective clauses in the sentences in Exercise 1.

**EXAMPLE** People who attend reunions meet their old classmates.

## 11.2 Relative Pronoun as Subject

The relative pronouns *who*, *that*, and *which* can be the subject of the adjective clause. Use *who* or *that* for people. Use *that* or *which* for things.

I found a Web site. <sup>Subject</sup> *The Web site* lists people by high school.

I found a Web site **that** lists people by high school.  
**which**

Women .....often change their last names.

Subject

*Women* get married.

Women **who** get married often change their last names.  
**that**

### Language Notes:

1. *That* is considered more correct than *which*.
2. A present tense verb in the adjective clause must agree in number with its subject.  
A woman who **gets** married usually changes her name.  
Women who **get** married usually change their names.



**EXERCISE 3** Fill in the blanks with *who* for people and *that* for objects + the correct form of the verb in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** A yearbook has photos that show the activities of the high school.  
(show)

1. He has a yearbook \_\_\_\_\_ pictures of all his classmates.  
(have)
2. People \_\_\_\_\_ to a reunion exchange information about their lives.  
(go)
3. Classmates.com is a Web site \_\_\_\_\_ people make connections with old friends.  
(help)
4. There are Web sites \_\_\_\_\_ in helping people plan a reunion.  
(specialize)
5. People \_\_\_\_\_ a reunion contact former classmates.  
(plan)

**EXERCISE 4** Fill in the blanks with *who* or *that* + the correct form of the verb in parentheses ( ). Then complete the statement. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** People who work hard are often successful.  
(work)

1. People \_\_\_\_\_ regularly \_\_\_\_\_  
(exercise)
2. A person \_\_\_\_\_ a cell phone while driving \_\_\_\_\_  
(use)
3. Students \_\_\_\_\_ absent a lot \_\_\_\_\_  
(be)
4. Schools \_\_\_\_\_ computers \_\_\_\_\_  
(not/have)
5. A computer \_\_\_\_\_ more than five years old \_\_\_\_\_  
(be)
6. People \_\_\_\_\_ digital cameras \_\_\_\_\_  
(have)
7. Colleges \_\_\_\_\_ evening classes \_\_\_\_\_  
(have)
8. A college \_\_\_\_\_ a day-care center \_\_\_\_\_  
(have)
9. Students \_\_\_\_\_ a job \_\_\_\_\_  
(have)

**EXERCISE 5** Complete each statement with an adjective clause. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** I know some women who OR that don't want to get married.

1. People \_\_\_\_\_ can make a lot of friends.
2. Men \_\_\_\_\_ have a busy social life.
3. I like people \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I don't like people \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Students like a teacher \_\_\_\_\_.
6. People \_\_\_\_\_ are very fortunate.
7. People \_\_\_\_\_ aren't usually successful.
8. Parents \_\_\_\_\_ are good.
9. A college \_\_\_\_\_ is good for foreign students.
10. People \_\_\_\_\_ have a hard life.

## 11.3 Relative Pronoun as Object

The relative pronouns *who(m)*, *that*, and *which* can be the object of the adjective clause.

Object  
She attended *the high school*.

The high school . . . . . is in New York City.

↓

The high school **which** she attended is in New York City.

↓

The high school **that** she attended is in New York City.

↓

∅

Object  
I knew *a friend* in high school.

A friend . . . . . sent me an e-mail.

↓

A friend **who(m)** I knew in high school sent me an e-mail.

↓

A friend **that** I knew in high school sent me an e-mail.

↓

∅

**Language Notes:**

1. The relative pronoun is usually omitted in conversation when it is the object of the adjective clause.

The high school she attended is in New York City.

2. *Whom* is considered more correct or more formal than *who* when used as the object of the adjective clause. However, as seen in the above note, the relative pronoun is usually omitted altogether in conversation.

**Formal:** A friend *whom* I knew in high school sent me an e-mail.

**Informal:** A friend I knew in high school sent me an e-mail.



**EXERCISE 6** In each sentence below, underline the adjective clause.

**EXAMPLE** I've lost touch with some of the friends I had in high school.

1. The high school I attended is in another city.
2. The teachers I had in high school are all old now.
3. We didn't have to buy the textbooks we used in high school.
4. She married a man she met in college.
5. The friends I've made in this country don't know much about my country.

**EXERCISE 7** A mother (M) is talking to her teenage daughter (D). Fill in the blanks to complete the conversation. Answers may vary.



**M:** I'd like to contact an old friend

I had in high school.  
*(example)*

I wish I could find her. I'll never

forget the good times \_\_\_\_\_ in  
*(1)*

high school. When we graduated, we said we'd

always stay in touch. But then we went to different colleges.

**D:** Didn't you keep in touch by e-mail?

**M:** When I was in college, e-mail didn't exist. At first we wrote letters. But little by little we wrote less and less until, eventually, we stopped writing.

**D:** Do you still have the letters she \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*(2)*

**M:** Yes, I do. They're in a box in the basement.

**D:** Why don't you write to the address on the letters?

**M:** That wouldn't work. The address she \_\_\_\_\_  
*(3)*

on the letters was of the college town where she lived. I don't know what happened to her after she left college.

**D:** Have you tried calling her parents?

**M:** The phone number \_\_\_\_\_ is now disconnected.  
*(4)*

Maybe her parents have died.

**D:** Have you looked on Classmates.com?

**M:** What's that?



*(continued)*

**D:** It's a Web site that \_\_\_\_\_ lists of people. The lists are categorized by the high school you \_\_\_\_\_ and the dates you \_\_\_\_\_ there.

**M:** Is everyone in my high school class on the list?

**D:** Unfortunately, no. Only the people \_\_\_\_\_ add their names are on the list.

**M:** But my friend probably got married. I don't know the name of the man \_\_\_\_\_ married.

**D:** That's not a problem. You can search for her by her maiden name.

**M:** Will this Web site give me her address and phone number?

**D:** No. But for a fee, you can send her an e-mail through the Web site. Then if she wants to contact you, she can give you her personal information.

**M:** She'll probably think I'm crazy for contacting her almost 25 years later.

**D:** I'm sure she'll be happy to receive communication from a good friend \_\_\_\_\_ hasn't seen in years. When I graduate from high school, I'm never going to lose contact with the friends \_\_\_\_\_ made. We'll always stay in touch.

**M:** That's what you think. But as time passes and your lives become more complicated, you may lose touch.

**D:** But today we have e-mail.

**M:** Well, e-mail is a help. Even so, the direction you \_\_\_\_\_ in life is different from the direction your friends choose.

**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks with appropriate words to complete the conversation. Answers may vary.



CD 4, TR 03



**A:** I'm lonely. I have a lot of friends in my native country, but I don't have enough friends here. The friends \_\_\_\_\_ *I have there* \_\_\_\_\_ send me e-mail all the time, but that's not enough. I need to make new friends here.

**B:** Haven't you met any people here?

**A:** Of course. But the people \_\_\_\_\_ here don't have my interests.



**B:** What are you interested in?

**A:** I like reading, meditating, going for quiet walks. Americans seem to like parties, TV, sports, movies, going to restaurants.

**B:** You're never going to meet people with the interests

\_\_\_\_\_. Your interests don't include other people.

(2)

You should find some interests \_\_\_\_\_ other people, like tennis or dancing, to mention just a few.

(3)

**A:** The activities \_\_\_\_\_ cost money, and I don't have a lot of money.

(4)

**B:** There are many parks in this city \_\_\_\_\_ free tennis courts.

(5)

If you like to dance, I know of a park district near here

\_\_\_\_\_ free dance classes. In fact, there are a lot of

(6)

things \_\_\_\_\_ or very low cost in this city. I can give you a list of free activities, if you want.

(7)

**A:** Thanks. I'd love to have the list. Thanks for all the suggestions

\_\_\_\_\_

(8)

**B:** I'd be happy to give you more, but I don't have time now. Tomorrow

I'll e-mail you a list of activities from the parks in this city. I'm sure

you'll find something \_\_\_\_\_ on that list.

(9)

**A:** Thanks.

**EXERCISE 9** We often give a definition with an adjective clause. Work with a partner to give a definition of the following words by using an adjective clause.

**EXAMPLES**

twins

Twins are brothers or sisters who are born at the same time.

an answering machine

An answering machine is a device that takes phone messages.

1. a babysitter

5. a fax machine

2. an immigrant

6. a dictionary

3. an adjective

7. a computer mouse

4. a verb

8. a coupon

## 11.4 Where and When

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>Some classmates have their reunion in the school <b>where they first met</b>.</p> <p>There are Web sites <b>where you can find lists of high schools and their students</b>.</p> <p>She attended the University of Washington, <b>where she met her best friend</b>.</p>	<p><i>Where</i> means “in that place.” <i>Where</i> cannot be omitted.</p>
<p>Do you remember the time <b>(when) you were in high school</b>?</p> <p>High school was a time <b>(when) I had many good friends and few responsibilities</b>.</p> <p>In 1998, <b>when I graduated from high school</b>, my best friend’s family moved to another state.</p>	<p><i>When</i> means “at that time.” <i>When</i> can sometimes be omitted.</p>

### Punctuation Notes:

1. An adjective clause is sometimes separated from the sentence with a comma. This is true when the person or thing in the main clause is unique.

#### Compare:

I visited a Web site **where** I found the names of my classmates. (No comma)

I visited Classmates.com, **where** I found the names of my classmates. (Comma: Classmates.com is a unique Web site.)

I remember the year **when** I graduated from high school. (No comma)

In 1998, **when** she graduated from high school, she got married. (Comma: 1998 is a unique year.)

2. Only *when* without a comma can be omitted.

I remember the year I graduated from high school.

**EXERCISE 10** This is a conversation between a son (S) and his dad (D). Fill in the blanks with *where* or *when* to complete this conversation.



CD 4, TR 04

**S:** How did you meet Mom? Do you remember the place where you met?  
(example)

**D:** We met in high school. I’ll never forget the day when I met your mother. She was such a pretty girl.  
(1)

**S:** Did you go to the same school?

**D:** Yes. We were in a typing class together. She was sitting at the typewriter next to mine.

**S:** Dad, what’s a typewriter?





**D:** There was a time \_\_\_\_\_ we didn't have computers. We had  
(2)  
to type our papers on typewriters.

**S:** Did you start dating right away?

**D:** No. We were friends. There was a time \_\_\_\_\_ people were  
(3)  
friends before they started dating. There was a soda shop near  
school \_\_\_\_\_ we used to meet.  
(4)

**S:** What's a soda shop, Dad?

**D:** It's a store \_\_\_\_\_ you could buy milk shakes, sodas, and  
(5)  
hamburgers. We used to sit there after school drinking one soda with  
two straws.

**S:** That doesn't seem too romantic to me.

**D:** But it was.

**S:** So did you get married as soon as you graduated from high school?

**D:** No. I graduated from high school at a time \_\_\_\_\_ there was  
(6)  
a war going on in this country. Mom went to college and I went into the  
army. We wrote letters during that time. When I got out of the army, I  
started college. So we got married about seven years after we met.

## 11.5 Formal vs. Informal

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Informal:</b> I lost touch with the friends I went to high school <b>with</b>.</p> <p><b>Formal:</b> I lost touch with the friends <b>with whom</b> I went to high school.</p>	<p>Informally, most native speakers put the preposition at the end of the adjective clause. The relative pronoun is usually omitted.</p>
<p><b>Informal:</b> I saved the yearbook my friends wrote <b>in</b>.</p> <p><b>Formal:</b> I saved the yearbook <b>in which</b> my friends wrote.</p>	

## EXERCISE 11 Change the sentences to formal English.

**EXAMPLE** What is the name of the high school you graduated from?

What is the name of the high school from which you graduated?

1. He found his friend that he served in the military with.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. I can't find the friend I was looking for.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The high school she graduated from was torn down.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you remember the teacher I was talking about?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. In high school, the activities I was interested in were baseball and band.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Social Networking in the Twenty-First Century

Before

You Read

1. Where or how do you meet new people?
2. Do you use social networking Web sites? Which ones?



CD 4, TR 05

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to adjective clauses beginning with *whose*.**

The method of social networking has changed in the twenty-first century, thanks to the Internet. Mark Zuckerman, the creator of one popular site, Facebook, started his network in 2004, when he was a student at Harvard University. He realized that students, **whose** lives are very busy, wanted to be able to find out about their friends' thoughts and activities. By 2007, Facebook had 70 million users. Other social networking sites, like Friendster and MySpace, also became popular all over the world.

When asked "Why did you join this site?", here is how some people responded:

- I'm interested in politics, and it's a good way to find people **whose** interests are the same as mine.





**Did You Know?**

Networking sites like Facebook and MySpace, whose members pay nothing, receive money from advertisers.

- I can share photos with my friends and make comments on their photos.
- I can see what friends we have in common.
- I can hear about events from my friends.
- I can share my favorite links with my friends.

Who are the members of these social networking sites? At first, they were mostly teenagers and college students. Soon parents **whose** kids were hooked on social networking started joining too.

Another way to bring together people **whose** interests are the same is through a Web site called Meetup.com. Unlike online social networking, **whose** members learn about each other's activities on a Web site, Meetup members get notices about events online but actually get together in coffeehouses, restaurants, parks, etc. A big city like New York has over 4,000 Meetup groups per week, ranging from chess players to book lovers, bicyclists, and French speakers.

The Internet brings people together in creative ways.

## 11.6 Whose + Noun

**Whose** is the possessive form of *who*. It substitutes for *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, or the possessive form of the noun.

I want to meet people.

*Their* interests are the same as mine.

I want to meet people **whose** interests are the same as mine.

Students .....like to communicate with their friends online.

*Their* lives are busy.

Students **whose** lives are busy like to communicate with their friends online.

**Language Note:** Use *who* to substitute for a person. Use *whose* for possession or relationship.

**Compare:**

I want to meet people **who** are interested in sports.

I want to meet people **whose** interests are the same as mine.

**Punctuation Note:** An adjective clause is sometimes separated from the sentence with a comma. This is true when the person or thing in the main clause is unique.

I go to a meetup **whose** members are interested in sports.

Facebook, **whose** members pay nothing, is a popular social networking site.

(Facebook is unique.)

**EXERCISE 12** Fill in the blanks with one of the words from the box below.

**EXAMPLE** Do you want to meet people whose interests are the same as yours?

schoolwork	kids	friends
photos	interests ✓	members

1. Students whose \_\_\_\_\_ keeps them busy want a way to know about their friends.
2. Meetup.com, whose \_\_\_\_\_ get together, is a good way to meet people with similar interests.
3. Parents whose \_\_\_\_\_ use Facebook are starting to become interested in it too.
4. I like to see the profiles of friends whose \_\_\_\_\_ are on the site. If they don't post their pictures, I'm not interested.
5. People whose \_\_\_\_\_ are on Facebook often get an invitation to join.

**EXERCISE 13** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** I would like to own a car that has enough room for my large family.

1. My mother is/was a woman who \_\_\_\_\_
2. My city is a place where \_\_\_\_\_
3. My childhood was a time when \_\_\_\_\_
4. My favorite kind of book is one that \_\_\_\_\_
5. A great teacher is a person who \_\_\_\_\_
6. I have a friend whose \_\_\_\_\_
7. I have a computer that \_\_\_\_\_
8. I like to shop at a time when \_\_\_\_\_
9. I don't like people who \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 14** Some people were asked what kind of friends they'd like to meet. Fill in the blanks with a response, using the words in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** I'd like to meet people whose values are the same as mine.

(Their values are the same as mine.)

1. I'd like to find a friend \_\_\_\_\_  
(I can trust him.)



2. I don't want to be with students \_\_\_\_\_  
(They don't take school seriously.)
3. I want to meet people \_\_\_\_\_  
(They like to play soccer.)
4. I joined a French meetup \_\_\_\_\_  
(Its members speak French very well.)
5. We meet in a coffee shop \_\_\_\_\_  
(It isn't crowded in the morning.)
6. I go to a book club meetup \_\_\_\_\_  
(It meets near my house.)
7. My math group is a club \_\_\_\_\_  
(I found it on Meetup.com.)

**EXERCISE 15** Fill in the blanks with appropriate words to complete the conversation. Answers may vary.



CD 4, TR 06

**A:** I'm getting married in two months.

**B:** Congratulations. Are you marrying the woman you met  
*(example)*  
at Mark's party last year?

**A:** Oh, no. I broke up with that woman a long time ago. I'm going to  
marry a woman \_\_\_\_\_  
*(1)* online about ten months ago.

**B:** What's your fiancée's name? Do I know her?

**A:** Sarah Liston.

**B:** I know someone whose \_\_\_\_\_  
*(2)* is Liston.  
I wonder if they're from the same family.

**A:** I doubt it. Sarah comes from Canada.

**B:** Where are you going to live after you get married? Here or in Canada?

**A:** We're going to live here. Sarah's just finishing college and doesn't  
have a job yet. This is the place \_\_\_\_\_  
*(3)* I have a good job,  
so we decided to live here.

**B:** Where are you going to get married?

*(continued)*

**A:** At my parents' friends' house. They have a very big house and garden.

The wedding's going to be in the garden.

**B:** My wife and I made plans to get married outside too, but we had to change our plans because it rained that day.

**A:** That's OK. The woman \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(4)</sup> is more important than the place \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(5)</sup> we get married. And the life \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(6)</sup> together is more important than the wedding day.

**B:** You're right about that!

**EXERCISE 16** Use the words in parentheses ( ) to form an adjective clause. Then read the sentences and tell if you agree or disagree. Give your reasons.

**EXAMPLE** A good friend is a person \_\_\_\_\_ **(whom) I can trust** \_\_\_\_\_  
(I can trust her.)

1. A good friend is a person \_\_\_\_\_ almost every day.  
(I see him.)

2. A good friend is a person \_\_\_\_\_  
(She would lend me money.)

3. A good friend is a person \_\_\_\_\_  
(He knows everything about me.)

4. A person \_\_\_\_\_ cannot be my friend.  
(He has different political opinions.)

5. A person \_\_\_\_\_ cannot be my good friend.  
(She doesn't speak my native language.)

6. A person \_\_\_\_\_ cannot be my good friend.  
(His religious beliefs are different from mine.)

7. A person \_\_\_\_\_ cannot be a good friend.  
(She lives far away.)

8. It's important to have friends \_\_\_\_\_  
(Their interests are the same as mine.)

9. This school is a place \_\_\_\_\_  
(I can make many new friends easily at this school.)

10. Childhood is the only time in one's life \_\_\_\_\_  
(It is easy to make friends at this time.)



## Summary of Lesson 11

### Adjective Clauses

#### 1. Pronoun as Subject

She has a friend **who lives in Alaska**.

The man **that arrived late** took a seat in the back.

#### 2. Pronoun as Object

I have some friends **(who/whom/that) I met online**.

The book **(which/that) I'm reading** is very exciting.

#### 3. Pronoun as Object of Preposition

Formal: The person **about whom I'm talking** is my cousin.

Informal: The person **(who) I'm talking about** is my cousin.

Formal: The club **of which I am a member** meets at the community center.

Informal: The club **(that) I am a member of** meets at the community center.

#### 4. Whose + Noun

I have a friend **whose brother lives in Japan**.

The students **whose last names begin with A or B** can register on Friday afternoon.

#### 5. Where

He moved to New Jersey, **where he found a job**.

The apartment building **where he lives** has a lot of immigrant families.

#### 6. When

She came to the U.S. at a time **when she was young enough to learn English easily**.

She came to the U.S. in 1995, **when there was a war going on in her country**.

## Editing Advice

1. Use *who*, *that*, or *which* to introduce an adjective clause. Don't use *what*.

I know a woman <sup>who</sup> ~~what~~ has ten cats.

2. If the relative pronoun is the subject, don't omit it.

I know a man <sup>who</sup> has visited every state in the U.S.

3. Use *whose* to substitute for a possessive form.

I live next door to a couple <sup>whose</sup> ~~their~~ children make a lot of noise.

4. If the relative pronoun is used as the object, don't put an object after the verb of the adjective clause.

I had to pay for the library book that I lost ~~it~~.

5. Don't use *which* for people.

The man <sup>who</sup> ~~which~~ bought my car paid me by check.

6. Use subject-verb agreement in all clauses.

I have a friend who live<sup>s</sup> in Madrid.

People who talk too much bother me.

7. Don't use an adjective clause when a simple adjective is enough.

*I don't like long movies.*  
~~I don't like movies that are long.~~

8. Put a noun before an adjective clause.

*A student who*  
~~Who~~ needs help should ask the teacher.

9. Use *where*, not *that*, to mean "in a place."

The store <sup>where</sup> ~~that~~ I buy my textbooks is having a sale this week.

10. Use *whom* and *which*, not *who* and *that*, if the preposition precedes the relative pronoun.

She would never want to go back to the country from <sup>which</sup> ~~that~~ she came.

I don't know the person about <sup>whom</sup> ~~who~~ you are talking.

11. Use the correct word order in an adjective clause (subject before verb).

The fish that <sup>my father caught</sup> ~~caught my father~~ was very big.

12. Don't confuse *whose* (possessive form) and *who's* (*who is*).

A woman <sup>who's</sup> ~~whose~~ in my math class is helping me study for the test.



## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

C

I would like to find one of the friends <sup>(example)</sup> that I had in college. I found a Web site <sup>(example)</sup> where <sup>(1)</sup> that I can look for old friends. My friend, <sup>(2)</sup> whose name is Linda Gast, got married shortly after we graduated. The man <sup>(3)</sup> which she married is Bart Reed. I tried using the names "Linda Gast" and "Linda Reed" but I had no luck. I found a woman <sup>(4)</sup> with who she shared a room in college, and she gave me a phone number. The phone number <sup>(5)</sup> that gave me her roommate is not in service anymore. I called a man <sup>(6)</sup> what used to be her neighbor, but he said that she moved away a long time ago. The last reunion <sup>(7)</sup> that I attended <sup>(8)</sup> it was four years ago, but she wasn't there. The <sup>(9)</sup> people were our friends in high school didn't know anything about her. I looked in the phone book and found some people <sup>(10)</sup> their name is the same as hers, but they weren't the right people. I went back to the high school <sup>(11)</sup> that we were students, but they had no information about her. Because of the Internet, now is a time <sup>(12)</sup> when it's easier than ever to find people. But my search, <sup>(13)</sup> which have taken me almost five years, has produced no result. Recently I met <sup>(14)</sup> someone <sup>(15)</sup> whose a friend of her brother, and he told me that Linda's now living in South America. He's going to try to find Linda's current address. Looking for Linda is <sup>(16)</sup> a job that is hard, but I'm determined to find her. <sup>(17)</sup> Who tries hard enough usually succeeds.

## Lesson 11 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with *who*, *whom*, *that*, *which*, *whose*, *where*, *when* or  $\emptyset$ . In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

1. I'm still friends with the people \_\_\_\_\_ I met in elementary school.
2. Childhood is the time \_\_\_\_\_ it's easiest to make friends.
3. The elementary school \_\_\_\_\_ I attended is in Poland.
4. I'm still in contact with some of the teachers \_\_\_\_\_ I admired a lot.
5. There are some teachers \_\_\_\_\_ names I've forgotten.
6. The university is the place \_\_\_\_\_ my father met my mother.
7. Now I use social networking sites \_\_\_\_\_ allow me to exchange information with my friends.
8. I don't know if they're real friends. For me, a friend is a person \_\_\_\_\_ I can really trust.

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks to complete the adjective clause. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** A: You lost a glove. Is this yours?

B: No. The glove \_\_\_\_\_ (that) I lost \_\_\_\_\_ is brown.

1. A: My neighbor's children make a lot of noise.

B: That's too bad. I don't like to have neighbors \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_.

2. A: I have a new cat. Do you want to see him?

B: What happened to the other cat \_\_\_\_\_?

A: She died last month.

3. A: Do you speak French?

B: Yes, I do. Why?

A: The teacher is looking for a student \_\_\_\_\_ to help her translate a letter.

4. A: Did you meet your boyfriend on an Internet dating site?

B: No. I didn't like any of the guys \_\_\_\_\_  
on the Internet.



5. **A:** Does your last name begin with A?

**B:** Yes, it does. Why?

**A:** Registration is by alphabetical order. Students \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ can register after 2 P.M. today.

6. **A:** Did you go to your last high school reunion?

**B:** No. I was out of town on the day \_\_\_\_\_.

**A:** Do you usually go to your reunions?

**B:** Yes. I love to keep in touch with the people \_\_\_\_\_.

7. **A:** Are you planning to marry Charles?

**B:** No. He lives with his mother. I want to marry a man \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ lives far away.

## Expansion

### Classroom

#### Activities

**1** Write a short definition or description of an object or a person. Read your definition to a small group. The others will try to guess what it is. Continue to add to your definition until someone guesses it.

**EXAMPLE** It's an animal that lives in the water.  
Is it a fish?  
No, it isn't. It's an animal that needs to come up for air.  
Is it a dolphin?  
Yes, it is.

**2** Write a word from your native language that has no English translation. It might be the name of a food or a traditional costume. Define the word. Read your definition to a small group or to a partner.

**EXAMPLE** A *sari* is a typical Indian dress for women. It is made of a cloth that a woman wraps around her. She wraps one end around her waist. She puts the other end over her shoulder.

**3** Bring to class something typical from your country. Demonstrate how to use it.

**EXAMPLE** a samovar  
This is a pot that we use in Russia to make tea.

## Talk

### About It

- 1 Do you think the Internet is a good way to network with friends? Why or why not?
- 2 How do people in your native culture usually make new friends?
- 3 What kind of person is a good friend?
- 4 In your native culture, do people usually keep in touch with the friends they made in school?
- 5 Are there class reunions in your native country?

## Write

### About It

- 1 Write a short composition describing your best friend from your school days.
- 2 Write a short composition describing the different ways to make new friends.
- 3 If you use a social networking Web site, write about your experience with it.

### Social Networking

Since I started to do social networking online, I've been able to exchange a lot of information with my friends. I always read the short posts that they put on their page every day. Because we're so busy, we often can't find any time when we can get together...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.



## Lesson

# 12

## Grammar Superlatives

## Comparatives

## Context Sports and Athletes





## 12.1 Superlatives and Comparatives—An Overview

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Baseball and football are <b>the most popular</b> sports in the U.S. Jack is <b>the tallest player</b> on the basketball team.	We use the superlative form to point out the number one item or items in a group of three or more.
Baseball is <b>more popular than</b> soccer in the U.S. Basketball players are <b>taller than</b> baseball players.	We use the comparative form to compare two items or groups of items.
He is <b>as tall as</b> a basketball player. Soccer is not <b>as popular as</b> baseball in the U.S. Soccer players are not <b>the same height as</b> basketball players.	We can show equality or inequality of two items or groups of items.

### Golf and Tiger Woods

Before

You Read

1. Do you like sports? Which are your favorites?
2. Who are your favorite athletes?




CD 4, TR 07

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to superlative forms.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the address bar containing [http://tigerwoods\\*golf.com](http://tigerwoods*golf.com). The article text is as follows:

Golf is the only sport where the player with **the lowest** score wins. The player who puts the ball in the hole with **the fewest** tries (strokes) is the winner. Golf originally comes from Scotland, where you can still find **the earliest** golf course. Until the beginning of the twentieth century, golf was mainly popular in Scotland and England. Golf is not **the most popular sport** in the U.S., but in recent years the U.S. has produced **the greatest** quantity of leading professional golfers. One of **the most remarkable** players is Tiger Woods.



Tiger Woods was born in 1975 in California. Before he could walk or talk, he loved to watch his father play golf. At age two, he began to play golf with his father—and soon became a better golfer than his father. When Woods was in high school in California, he became **the youngest** person in the U.S. to win the Junior Amateur Championship. At age 19,



he became **the youngest** winner of the U.S. Amateur Championship. In 1996, at the age of 21, he became a professional golfer.

Today Woods is one of **the most successful** golfers of all time. He is the only person to be named *Sports Illustrated's* Sportsman of the Year more than once (in 1996 and 2000).

In 2007, he was **the highest-paid** professional athlete, earning approximately \$122 million from winnings and endorsements.<sup>1</sup>

Woods's father died in 2006. Woods wrote on his Web site at the time, "My dad was my **best friend** and **greatest** role model, and I will miss him."

## 12.2 The Superlative Form

We use the superlative form to point out the number one item of a group of three or more.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Woods was <b>the youngest</b> winner. He worked <b>the hardest</b> .	Form: short adjective + <i>-est</i> short adverb + <i>-est</i>
Golf is not <b>the most popular</b> sport in the U.S. Woods learned golf <b>the most effortlessly</b> of anyone in his family.	Form: <i>the most</i> + longer adjective <i>the most</i> + <i>-ly</i> adverb
Woods is <b>one of the most successful</b> golfers. He is <b>one of the most remarkable</b> athletes.	We often say "one of the" before a superlative form. The noun that follows is plural.
In golf, the winner uses <b>the least</b> number of strokes. Woods said, "My dad was my <b>best</b> friend."	Some superlatives are irregular. See Section 12.3 for more information about irregular forms.
Woods is one of the best golfers <b>of all time</b> . Soccer is the most popular sport <b>in the world</b> .	We often put a prepositional phrase after a superlative phrase: <i>in the world</i> , <i>of all time</i> , <i>in the U.S.</i> , etc.
Woods is one of the best golfers <b>who has ever lived</b> . Who is the best athlete <b>you have ever seen</b> ?	An adjective clause with <i>ever</i> and the present perfect tense often completes a superlative statement.
<b>Language Note:</b> Use <i>the</i> before a superlative form. Omit <i>the</i> if there is a possessive form before the superlative form. Woods is one of <b>the best</b> golfers. His father was <b>his best</b> friend. (not <i>his the</i> best friend)	

<sup>1</sup>When a famous person makes an endorsement, he says that he likes a certain product. He gets paid for saying this.



**EXERCISE 1** Tell if the statement is true (T) or false (F). Underline the superlative forms.

**EXAMPLE** The oldest golf course is in the U.S. F

1. In golf, the player with the lowest score wins.
2. Golf is the most popular sport in the U.S.
3. Tiger Woods is one of the best golfers.
4. Tiger's father was his best friend.
5. Tiger's father was one of the best golfers in the world.
6. Tiger Woods is one of the richest athletes.

## 12.3 Comparative and Superlative Forms of Adjectives and Adverbs

	SIMPLE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
One-syllable adjectives and adverbs*	tall fast	taller faster	the tallest the fastest
Two-syllable adjectives that end in y	easy happy	easier happier	the easiest the happiest
Other two-syllable adjectives	frequent active	more frequent more active	the most frequent the most active
Some two-syllable adjectives have two forms.**	simple  common	simpler more simple commoner more common	the simplest the most simple the commonest the most common
Adjectives with three or more syllables	important difficult	more important more difficult	the most important the most difficult
-ly adverbs	quickly brightly	more quickly more brightly	the most quickly the most brightly
Irregular adjectives and adverbs	good/well bad/badly far little a lot	better worse farther less more	the best the worst the farthest the least the most

### Language Notes:

1.\*Exceptions to one-syllable adjectives:

bored	more bored	the most bored
tired	more tired	the most tired

2.\*\*Other two-syllable adjectives that have two forms:

*handsome, quiet, gentle, narrow, clever, friendly, angry, polite, stupid*



## Spelling Rules for Short Adjectives and Adverbs

RULE	SIMPLE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
Add <i>-er</i> and <i>-est</i> to short adjectives and adverbs.	tall fast	taller faster	tallest fastest
For adjectives that end in <i>e</i> , add <i>-r</i> and <i>-st</i> .	nice late	nicer later	nicest latest
For adjectives that end in <i>y</i> , change <i>y</i> to <i>i</i> and add <i>-er</i> and <i>-est</i> .	easy happy	easier happier	easiest happiest
For words ending in consonant-vowel-consonant, double the final consonant, then add <i>-er</i> and <i>-est</i> . <b>Exception:</b> Do not double final <i>w</i> . new—newer—newest	big sad	bigger sadder	biggest saddest

### EXERCISE 2 Give the comparative and superlative forms of each word.

EXAMPLES	fat	fatter	the fattest
	important	more important	the most important
1.	interesting	_____	_____
2.	young	_____	_____
3.	beautiful	_____	_____
4.	good	_____	_____
5.	responsible	_____	_____
6.	thin	_____	_____
7.	carefully	_____	_____
8.	pretty	_____	_____
9.	bad	_____	_____
10.	famous	_____	_____
11.	lucky	_____	_____
12.	simple	_____	_____
13.	high	_____	_____
14.	delicious	_____	_____
15.	far	_____	_____
16.	foolishly	_____	_____

**EXERCISE 3** Write the superlative form of the word in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** Football is one of the most dangerous sports.  
(dangerous)



Yao Ming

1. Michael Phelps is \_\_\_\_\_ swimmer in the world.  
(fast)
2. Training for the Olympics is one of \_\_\_\_\_ things for an athlete.  
(difficult)
3. Soccer is \_\_\_\_\_ sport in the world.  
(popular)
4. Sumo wrestlers are \_\_\_\_\_ athletes.  
(fat)
5. Michael Jordan was \_\_\_\_\_ basketball player in the world.  
(good)
6. Swimming and gymnastics are \_\_\_\_\_ events during the Summer Olympics.  
(watched)
7. Yao Ming is one of \_\_\_\_\_ basketball players in the world.  
(tall)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ name for soccer in the world is "football."  
(common)
9. Running a marathon was one of \_\_\_\_\_ things I've ever done.  
(hard)
10. In your opinion, what is \_\_\_\_\_ sport?  
(interesting)

**EXERCISE 4** **ABOUT YOU** Write a superlative sentence giving your opinion about each of the following items. You may find a partner and compare your answers to your partner's answers.

**EXAMPLES** big problem in the world today

I think the biggest problem in the world today is hunger.

big problem in the U.S. today

I think crime is one of the biggest problems in the U.S. today.

1. good way to make friends  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. quick way to learn a language  
\_\_\_\_\_



3. good thing about life in the U.S.  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. bad thing about life in the U.S.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. big problem in (choose a country)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 5** **ABOUT YOU** Write superlative sentences about your experience with the words given. Use the present perfect form + *ever* after the superlative.

**EXAMPLE** big / city / visit

London is the biggest city I have ever visited.

1. tall / building / visit  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. beautiful / actress / see  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. difficult / subject / study  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. far / distance / travel  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. bad / food / eat  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. good / vacation / have  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. good / athlete / see  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. hard / job / have  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. interesting / sporting event / see  
\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 6 ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** Swimming across a lake alone at night

was one of the most dangerous things I've ever done.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

is one of the most foolish things I've ever done.

2. \_\_\_\_\_

is one of the hardest decisions I've ever made.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

is one of the most dangerous things I've ever done.

## 12.4 Superlatives and Word Order

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>Who is <b>the best</b> American golfer?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Superlative Adjective      Noun Phrase</p> <p>What is <b>the most popular</b> sport in the world?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Superlative Adjective      Noun</p> <p>In golf, the winner scores <b>the fewest</b> points.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Superlative Adjective      Noun</p>	<p>A superlative adjective comes <b>before</b> a noun or noun phrase.</p>
<p>Football is <b>the most popular sport</b> in the U.S.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OR</p> <p><b>The most popular sport</b> in the U.S. is football.</p>	<p>When the verb <i>be</i> connects a noun to a superlative adjective + noun, there are two possible word orders.</p>
<p>Interest in soccer <b>is growing</b> <b>the most quickly</b> in the U.S.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Verb      Superlative Adverb</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Verb Phrase      Superlative Adverb</p> <p>I <b>watch soccer</b> <b>the most frequently</b>.</p>	<p>We put superlative adverbs <b>after</b> the verb or verb phrase.</p>
<p>Tiger Woods <b>plays</b> <b>the best</b>.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Verb Superlative</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Verb Phrase Superlative</p> <p>Fans <b>love Tiger Woods</b> <b>the most</b>.</p>	<p>We put <i>the most</i>, <i>the least</i>, <i>the best</i>, and <i>the worst</i> <b>after</b> a verb (phrase).</p>



**EXERCISE 7**

**ABOUT YOU** Name the person who is the superlative in your family in each of the following categories.

**EXAMPLE** works hard  
My mother works the hardest in my family.

- |                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. drives well                | 7. worries a lot                |
| 2. lives far from me          | 8. lives well                   |
| 3. speaks English confidently | 9. works hard                   |
| 4. spends a lot of money      | 10. is athletic                 |
| 5. is well dressed            | 11. is a big sports fan         |
| 6. watches a lot of TV        | 12. is learning English quickly |

## Americans' Attitude Toward Soccer

Before

You Read

1. Are you interested in soccer? If so, what is your favorite team?
2. Should children learn to play a sport in school? Why or why not?



CD 4, TR 08

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to comparisons.**

Soccer is by far the most popular sport in the world. Almost every country has a professional league. In many countries, top international soccer players are as well-known as rock stars or actors. However, in 1994, when the World Cup soccer competition was held in the U.S., there was not a lot of interest in soccer among Americans. Many people said that soccer was boring.



Recently, Americans' attitude toward soccer has been changing. In 1999, when the Women's World Cup was played in the U.S., there was more interest than ever before. Little by little, soccer is becoming more popular in the U.S. The number of children playing soccer is growing. In fact, soccer is growing faster than any other sport. For elementary school children, soccer is now the number two sport after basketball. More kids play soccer than baseball. Many coaches believe that soccer is easier to play than baseball or basketball, and that there aren't as many injuries as with sports such as hockey or football.

Interest in professional soccer in the U.S. is still much lower than in other countries. The number of Americans who watch professional basketball, football, or hockey is still much higher than the number who watch Major League Soccer. However, the more parents show interest in their children's soccer teams, the more they will become interested in professional soccer.



## 12.5 Comparatives

We use the comparative form to compare two items.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Soccer players are <b>shorter than</b> basketball players. Interest in soccer is growing <b>faster than</b> interest in any other sport.	Form: short adjective + <i>-er</i> + <i>than</i> short adverb + <i>-er</i> + <i>than</i>
Basketball is <b>more popular than</b> soccer in the U.S. Interest in soccer is growing <b>more quickly than</b> interest in hockey.	Form: <i>more</i> + longer adjective + <i>than</i> <i>more</i> + <i>-ly</i> adverb + <i>than</i>
My brother plays soccer <b>better than</b> I do. He can kick the ball <b>farther than</b> I can.	Some comparative forms are irregular. See 12.3 for more information about irregular forms.
Basketball is popular in the U.S., but football is <b>more popular</b> . Michael Jordan is tall, but Yao Ming is <b>taller</b> .	Omit <i>than</i> if the second item of comparison is not included.
Interest in soccer is <b>much lower</b> in the U.S. than in other countries. I like soccer <b>a little better</b> than I like baseball.	<i>Much</i> or <i>a little</i> can come before a comparative form.
<b>Formal:</b> You are taller than <b>I am</b> . <b>Informal:</b> You are taller than <b>me</b> .  <b>Formal:</b> I can play soccer better than <b>he can</b> . <b>Informal:</b> I can play soccer better than <b>him</b> .	When a pronoun follows <i>than</i> , the correct form is the subject pronoun ( <i>he, she, I, etc.</i> ). Usually an auxiliary verb follows ( <i>is, do, did, can, etc.</i> ). Informally, many Americans use the object pronoun ( <i>him, her, me, etc.</i> ) after <i>than</i> . An auxiliary verb does not follow.
<b>The more</b> they practice, <b>the better</b> they play. <b>The older</b> you are, <b>the harder</b> it is to learn a new sport.	We can use two comparisons in one sentence to show cause and result.

### EXERCISE 8 Circle the correct word to complete each statement.

**EXAMPLE** In the U.S., soccer is (*more* / *less*) popular than basketball.

- Football players have (*more* / *fewer*) injuries than soccer players.
- In the U.S., soccer is growing (*faster* / *slower*) than any other sport.
- In 1999, there was (*more* / *less*) interest in soccer than in 1994.
- Professional soccer is (*more* / *less*) popular in the U.S. than in other countries.
- In the U.S., soccer players are (*more* / *less*) famous than movie stars.



**EXERCISE 9** Fill in the blanks with the comparative form of the word in parentheses ( ). Include *than* when necessary.

**EXAMPLE** In the U.S., basketball is more popular than soccer.  
(popular)

1. Tall people are often \_\_\_\_\_ basketball players  
\_\_\_\_\_ short people.  
(good)
2. Golf is a \_\_\_\_\_ sport than soccer.  
(slow)
3. Which do you think is \_\_\_\_\_, skiing or surfing?  
(difficult)
4. A soccer ball is \_\_\_\_\_ a tennis ball.  
(large)
5. Children learn sports \_\_\_\_\_ adults.  
(easily)
6. People who exercise a lot are in \_\_\_\_\_ shape  
\_\_\_\_\_ people who don't.  
(good)



7. Do you think soccer is \_\_\_\_\_ football?  
(interesting)
8. Do you think soccer is \_\_\_\_\_ baseball?  
(exciting)

**EXERCISE 10** Compare adults to children. Talk in general terms. You may discuss your answers.

**EXAMPLE** tall  
Adults are taller than children.

1. polite
2. friendly
3. formal
4. playful
5. responsible
6. serious
7. curious
8. happy

**EXERCISE 11 ABOUT YOU** Compare the U.S. and your native country (or a place you know well). Explain your response.

**EXAMPLES** cars  
Cars are cheaper in the U.S. Most people in my native country can't afford a car.

education  
Education is better in my native country. Everyone must finish high school.

- |            |                 |                          |
|------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. rent    | 4. education    | 7. gasoline              |
| 2. housing | 5. medical care | 8. the government        |
| 3. cars    | 6. food         | 9. clothes (or fashions) |

## 12.6 Comparatives and Word Order

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Comparative</b> Be Adjective Football <b>is more popular</b> than soccer in the U.S.</p> <p><b>Linking Verb Comparative Adjective</b> Football <b>looks more dangerous</b> than soccer.</p>	Put the comparative adjective after the verb <i>be</i> or other linking verbs: <i>seem, feel, look, sound</i> , etc.
<p><b>Verb Phrase Comparative Adverb</b> Woods <b>played golf more successfully</b> than his father.</p> <p><b>Comparative Verb Adverb</b> Soccer <b>is growing faster</b> than any other sport.</p>	Put the comparative adverb <b>after</b> the verb (phrase).
<p><b>Comparative Noun</b> There is <b>less interest</b> in hockey than there is in golf.</p> <p><b>Comparative Noun</b> Soccer players have <b>fewer injuries</b> than football players.</p>	We can put <i>more, less, fewer, better, and worse</i> <b>before</b> a noun.
<p><b>Verb Phrase Comparative</b> My sister <b>likes soccer more</b> than I do.</p> <p><b>Verb Phrase Comparative</b> I <b>play soccer worse</b> than my sister does.</p>	You can put <i>more, less, better, worse, and other comparative forms</i> <b>after</b> a verb (phrase).



**EXERCISE 12** Find the mistakes with word order and correct them. Not every sentence has a mistake. If the sentence is correct, write C.

**EXAMPLES** A football team has players more than a baseball team.  
 A golf ball is smaller than a tennis ball. C

1. A basketball player is taller than a gymnast.
2. A baseball game has action less than a soccer game.
3. Football players use more padding than soccer players.
4. Tiger Woods more remarkably plays golf than most other players.
5. I more like baseball than basketball.
6. Team A won more games than Team B.
7. Team A better played than Team B.

**EXERCISE 13** **ABOUT YOU** Compare yourself to another person, or compare two people you know using these verb phrases.

**EXAMPLE** drive well  
 I drive better than my brother.

- |                    |                       |                      |
|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. dress stylishly | 4. speak English well | 7. have freedom      |
| 2. work hard       | 5. worry a little     | 8. have an easy life |
| 3. spend a lot     | 6. live comfortably   | 9. exercise a lot    |

**EXERCISE 14** **ABOUT YOU** Compare this school to another school you attended. Use *better*, *worse*, *more*, *less*, or *fewer* before the noun.

**EXAMPLE** classroom / space  
 This classroom has more space than a classroom in my native country.

- |                          |                                     |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. class / students      | 4. library / books                  |
| 2. school / courses      | 5. school / facilities <sup>2</sup> |
| 3. teachers / experience | 6. school / teachers                |

**EXERCISE 15** Fill in the blanks with the comparative or superlative form of the word in parentheses ( ). Include *than* or *the* when necessary.

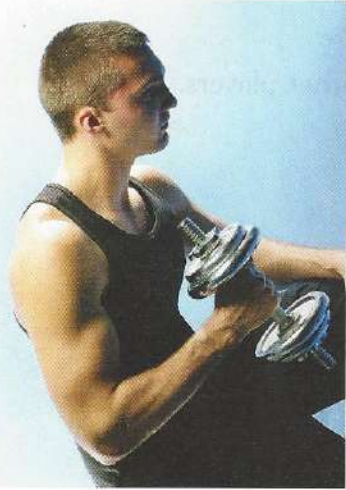
**EXAMPLES** In the U.S., baseball is more popular than soccer. -  
(popular)

Baseball is one of the most popular sports in the U.S.  
(popular)

1. A tennis ball is \_\_\_\_\_ a baseball.  
(soft)

<sup>2</sup>Facilities are things we use, such as a swimming pool, cafeteria, library, exercise room, or student union.

2. An athlete who wins the gold medal is \_\_\_\_\_ athlete  
(good)  
in his or her sport.
3. Who is \_\_\_\_\_ basketball player in the world?  
(tall)
4. I am \_\_\_\_\_ in baseball \_\_\_\_\_ in  
(interested)  
basketball.
5. In my opinion, soccer is \_\_\_\_\_ sport.  
(exciting)
6. Weightlifters are \_\_\_\_\_ than golfers.  
(muscular)
7. Golf is a \_\_\_\_\_ sport \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.  
(slow)
8. A basketball team has \_\_\_\_\_ players  
(few)  
\_\_\_\_\_ a baseball team.
9. Even though January is \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year,  
(cold)  
football players play during this month.
10. My friend and I both jog. I run \_\_\_\_\_ than my friend.  
(far)
11. Who's a \_\_\_\_\_ soccer player—you or your brother?  
(good)



## An Amazing Athlete

Before

You Read

1. Can people with disabilities do well in sports?
2. Why do people want to climb the tallest mountain in the world?



CD 4, TR 09

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to comparisons.**

Erik Weihenmayer is **as tough as** any mountain climber. In 2001 he made his way to the top of the highest mountain in the world—Mount Everest—at the age of 33. But Erik is **different from** other mountain climbers in one important way—he is completely blind. He is the first sightless person to reach the top of the tallest mountain.



### Did You Know?

Between 1921 and 2006, 212 climbers have died while trying to reach the top of Mount Everest.

Erik was an athletic child who lost his vision in his early teens. At first he refused to use a cane or learn Braille, insisting he could do **as well as** any teenager. But he finally came to accept his disability. He couldn't play **the same sports as** he used to. He would never be able to play basketball or catch a football again. But then he discovered wrestling, a sport where sight was not **as important as** feel and touch. Then, at 16, he discovered rock climbing, which **was like** wrestling in some ways; a wrestler and a rock climber get information through touch. Rock climbing led to mountain climbing, the greatest challenge of his life.



Teammates climbing with Erik say that he isn't **different from** a sighted mountaineer. He has **as much training as** the others. He is **as strong as** the rest. The major difference is he is not **as thin as** most climbers. But his strong upper body, flexibility, mental toughness, and ability to tolerate physical pain make him a perfect climber. The only accommodation for Erik's blindness is to place bells on the jackets of his teammates so that he can follow them easily.

Climbing Mount Everest was a challenge for every climber on Erik's team. The reaction to the mountain air for Erik was **the same as** it was for his teammates: lack of oxygen causes the heart to beat slower than usual, and the brain does not function **as clearly as** normal. In some ways, Erik had an advantage over his teammates: as they got near the top, the vision of all climbers was restricted. So at a certain altitude, all his teammates **were like** Erik—nearly blind.

To climb Mount Everest is an achievement for any athlete. Erik Weihenmayer showed that his disability wasn't **as important as** his ability.

## 12.7 As . . . As

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Erik is <b>as strong as</b> his teammates. At high altitudes, the brain doesn't function <b>as clearly as</b> normal. Erik can climb mountains <b>as well as</b> sighted climbers.	We can show that two things are equal or unequal in some way by using: (not) <i>as</i> + adjective/adverb + <i>as</i> .
Erik is not <b>as thin as</b> most climbers. Skiing is not <b>as difficult as</b> mountain climbing.	When we make a comparison of unequal items, we put the lesser item first.
Baseball is popular in the U.S. Soccer is not <b>as popular</b> .	Omit the second <i>as</i> if the second item of comparison is omitted.

(continued)



**Usage Note:** A very common expression is *as soon as possible*. Some people say *A.S.A.P.* for short.

I'd like to see you *as soon as possible*.

I'd like to see you *A.S.A.P.*

**EXERCISE 16** Tell if the statement is true or false. Write *T* for true and *F* for false.

**EXAMPLE** In wrestling, the sense of sight is as important as the sense of touch. **F**

1. Rock climbing is not as dangerous as mountain climbing.
2. At high altitudes, you can't think as clearly as you can at lower altitudes.
3. Erik was not as strong as his teammates.
4. When Erik became blind, he wanted to do as well as any other teenager.
5. Erik could not go as far as his teammates on Mount Everest.
6. Erik was as prepared for the climb as his teammates.

**EXERCISE 17** **ABOUT YOU** Compare yourself to another person. (Or compare two people you know.) Use the following adjectives and *as . . . as*. You may add a comparative statement if there is inequality.

**EXAMPLES**

thin

I'm not as thin as my sister. (She's thinner than I am.)

smart

My mother is as smart as my father.

- |                |            |              |                          |
|----------------|------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1. old         | 4. patient | 7. religious | 10. talkative            |
| 2. educated    | 5. lazy    | 8. friendly  | 11. athletic             |
| 3. intelligent | 6. tall    | 9. strong    | 12. interested in sports |

**EXERCISE 18** **ABOUT YOU** Use the following phrases to compare yourself to the teacher.

**EXAMPLE** speak Spanish well

The teacher doesn't speak Spanish as well as I do. (I speak Spanish better.)

1. arrive at class promptly
2. work hard in class
3. understand American customs well
4. speak quietly
5. speak English fluently



6. understand a foreigner's problems well
7. write neatly
8. speak fast

## 12.8 As Many/Much . . . As

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Soccer players don't have <b>as many injuries as</b> football players. Erik had <b>as much training as</b> his teammates.	We can show that two things are equal or not equal in quantity by using: (not) <i>as many</i> + count noun + <i>as</i> OR (not) <i>as much</i> + noncount noun + <i>as</i> .
I don't play soccer <b>as much as</b> I used to. She doesn't like sports <b>as much as</b> her husband does.	We can use <i>as much as</i> after a verb phrase.

### EXERCISE 19 ABOUT YOU PART A: Fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** I drive about 30 miles a week.  
(number)

1. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ tall.  
(feet/inches OR centimeters)
2. The highest level of education that I have completed is \_\_\_\_\_  
(high school, bachelor's degree, master's degree, doctorate)
3. I work \_\_\_\_\_ hours a week.  
(number)
4. I study \_\_\_\_\_ hours a day.  
(number)
5. I exercise \_\_\_\_\_ days a week.  
(number)
6. I'm taking \_\_\_\_\_ courses now.  
(number)
7. I have \_\_\_\_\_ siblings.<sup>3</sup>  
(number)
8. I live \_\_\_\_\_ miles from this school.  
(number)

<sup>3</sup>Siblings are a person's brothers and sisters.

**PART B:** Find a partner and compare your answers to your partner's answers. Write statements with the words given and *(not) as . . . as* or *(not) as much / many as*.

**EXAMPLE** drive I don't drive as much as Lisa.

1. tall \_\_\_\_\_
2. have education \_\_\_\_\_
3. work \_\_\_\_\_
4. study \_\_\_\_\_
5. exercise frequently \_\_\_\_\_
6. take courses \_\_\_\_\_
7. have siblings \_\_\_\_\_
8. live far from school \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 20** Compare yourself to another person, or compare two people you know. Use *as many as* or *as much as*.

**EXAMPLE** show emotion  
My mom doesn't show as much emotion as my grandmother. (My grandmother shows more emotion than my mom.)

- |                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. earn        | 5. like to go shopping   |
| 2. spend money | 6. have responsibilities |
| 3. talk        | 7. have freedom          |
| 4. gossip      | 8. have free time        |

**EXERCISE 21** Compare this school and another school you attended. Use *as many as*.

**EXAMPLE** classrooms  
This school doesn't have as many classrooms as King College. (King College has more classrooms.)

- |               |                        |             |
|---------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 1. teachers   | 3. floors (or stories) | 5. exams    |
| 2. classrooms | 4. English courses     | 6. students |

**EXERCISE 22** Make a comparison between this city and another city you know well using the categories below.

**EXAMPLE** public transportation The buses are cleaner in Boston than in this city.  
OR The buses in this city are not as crowded as the buses in Boston.

1. traffic \_\_\_\_\_



2. people \_\_\_\_\_
3. gardens and parks \_\_\_\_\_
4. public transportation \_\_\_\_\_
5. museums \_\_\_\_\_
6. universities \_\_\_\_\_
7. houses \_\_\_\_\_
8. buildings \_\_\_\_\_
9. stores or shopping \_\_\_\_\_

## 12.9 The Same . . . As

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Pattern A:</b> Erik had <b>the same ability as</b> his teammates. A soccer ball isn't <b>the same shape as</b> a football.</p>	<p>We can show that two things are equal or not equal in some way by using: <i>(not) the same + noun + as.</i></p>
<p><b>Pattern B:</b> Erik and his teammates had <b>the same ability.</b> A soccer ball and a football aren't <b>the same shape.</b></p>	<p>Omit <i>as</i> in Pattern B.</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> We can make statements of equality or inequality with many nouns, such as <i>size, shape, color, value, religion, or nationality.</i></p>	

### EXERCISE 23 Make statements with *the same . . . as* using the words given.

**EXAMPLE** a golf ball / a tennis ball (size)

**A golf ball isn't the same size as a tennis ball.**

1. a soccer ball / a volleyball (shape)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. a soccer player / a basketball player (height)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. an amateur athlete / a professional athlete (ability)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. a soccer player / a football player (weight)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. team A's uniforms / team B's uniforms (color)

\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 24** Talk about two relatives or friends of yours. Compare them using the words given.

**EXAMPLE**

age  
 My mother and my father aren't the same age.  
 OR  
 My mother isn't the same age as my father. (My father is older than my mother.)

- 1. age
- 2. height
- 3. weight
- 4. nationality
- 5. religion
- 6. (have) level of education

**EXERCISE 25** **ABOUT YOU** Work with a partner. Make a true affirmative or negative statement about you and your partner with the words given.

**EXAMPLES**

the same nationality  
 I'm not the same nationality as Alex. I'm Colombian, and he's Russian.  
 the same color shoes  
 Martina's shoes are the same color as my shoes. They're brown.



- 1. the same hair color
- 2. the same eye color
- 3. (speak) the same language
- 4. (like) the same sports
- 5. (have) the same level of English
- 6. the same nationality

## 12.10 Equality with Nouns or Adjectives

For equality or inequality with nouns, use *(not) the same . . . as*. For equality or inequality with adjectives and adverbs, use *(not) as . . . as* or the comparative form.

NOUN	ADJECTIVE	EXAMPLES
height	tall, short	A soccer player is not <b>the same height as</b> a basketball player. A soccer player is not <b>as tall as</b> a basketball player. A soccer player is <b>shorter</b> .
age	old, young	He's not <b>the same age as</b> his wife. He's not <b>as old as</b> his wife. His wife is <b>older</b> .



NOUN	ADJECTIVE	EXAMPLES
weight	heavy, light	<p>The wrestler in blue is not <b>the same weight as</b> the wrestler in red.</p> <p>The wrestler in blue is not <b>as heavy as</b> the wrestler in red.</p> <p>The wrestler in blue is <b>lighter</b>.</p> 
length	long, short	<p>This shelf is not <b>the same length as</b> that shelf.</p> <p>This shelf is not <b>as long as</b> that shelf.</p> <p>This shelf is <b>shorter</b>.</p>
price	expensive, cheap	<p>This car is not <b>the same price as</b> that car.</p> <p>This car is not <b>as expensive as</b> that car.</p> <p>This car is <b>cheaper</b>.</p>
size	big, small	<p>Those shoes are not <b>the same size as</b> these shoes.</p> <p>Those shoes are not <b>as big as</b> these shoes.</p> <p>Those shoes are <b>smaller</b>.</p> 

**EXERCISE 26** Change the following sentences to use *as . . . as* and then the comparative form. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** Lesson 11 isn't the same length as Lesson 12.

Lesson 11 is not as long as Lesson 12. Lesson 11 is shorter.

1. I'm not the same height as my brother.

My brother is \_\_\_\_\_

2. You're not the same age as your husband.

You're \_\_\_\_\_

3. I'm not the same height as a basketball player.

A basketball player is \_\_\_\_\_

4. My left foot isn't the same size as my right foot.

My right foot is \_\_\_\_\_

5. My brother isn't the same weight as I am.

My brother is \_\_\_\_\_

# Football and Soccer

## Before You Read


1. Which do you like better, football or soccer?
2. How are soccer players different from football players?




CD 4, TR 10

Read the following Web article. Pay special attention to similarities and differences.

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the address bar containing [http://www.all\\*sports.com](http://www.all*sports.com). The article text is as follows:

 It may seem strange that Americans give the name “football” to a game played mostly by throwing and carrying a ball with one’s hands. But Americans give the name “football” to a sport that is very **different** from soccer.

Many of the rules in soccer and American football are the **same**. In both games, there are 11 players on each side, and a team scores its points by getting the ball past the goal of the other team. The playing fields for both teams are also very much **alike**.

 When the action begins, the two games look very **different**. In addition to using their feet, soccer players are allowed to hit the ball with their heads. In football, the only person allowed to touch the ball with his feet is a special player known as the kicker. Also, in football, tackling the player who has the ball is not only allowed but encouraged, whereas tackling any player in soccer will get the tackler thrown out of the game.

Football players and soccer players don’t **dress alike** or even **look alike** in many ways. Since blocking and tackling are a big part of American football, the players are often very large and muscular and wear heavy padding and helmets. Soccer players, on the other hand, are usually thinner and wear shorts and polo shirts. This gives them more freedom of movement to show off the fancy footwork that makes soccer such a popular game around the world.

While both games are very **different**, both have a large number of fans that enjoy the exciting action.



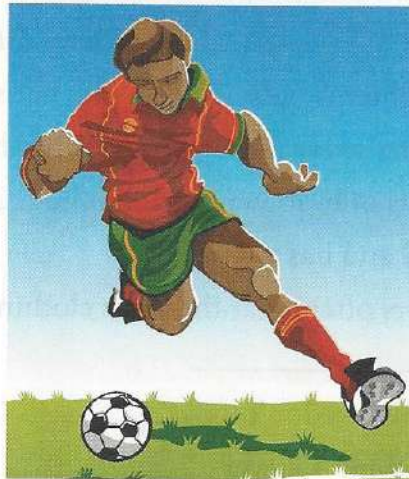
## 12.11 Similarity with *Like* and *Alike*

We can show that two things are similar (or not) with *like* and *alike*.

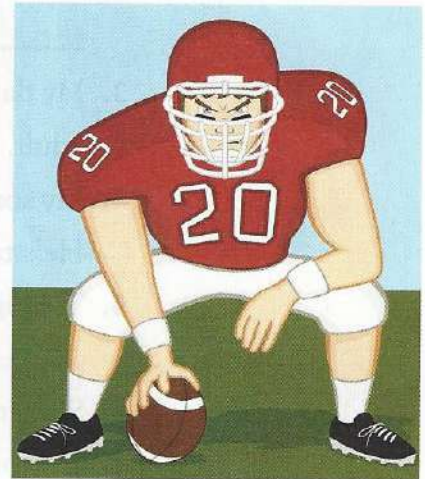
EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Pattern A:</b> A soccer player <b>looks like</b> a rugby player. A soccer player doesn't <b>dress like</b> a football player.</p>	<p><b>Pattern A:</b> Noun 1 + verb + <i>like</i> + Noun 2</p>
<p><b>Pattern B:</b> A soccer player and a rugby player <b>look alike</b>. A soccer player and a football player don't <b>dress alike</b>.</p>	<p><b>Pattern B:</b> Noun 1 and Noun 2 + verb + <i>alike</i></p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> We often use the sense perception verbs (<i>look, sound, smell, taste, feel, and seem</i>) with <i>like</i> and <i>alike</i>. We can also use other verbs with <i>like</i>: <i>act like, sing like, dress like, etc.</i></p>	



Rugby



Soccer



Football

**EXERCISE 27** Make a statement with the words given. Use *like* or *alike*.

**EXAMPLE** taste / decaf<sup>4</sup> / regular coffee  
Decaf tastes like regular coffee (to me).

OR

Decaf and regular coffee taste alike (to me).

- taste / diet cola / regular cola
- taste / 2% milk / whole milk
- look / an American classroom / a classroom in another country

<sup>4</sup>Decaf coffee doesn't contain caffeine.

4. sound / Asian music / American music
5. feel / polyester / silk
6. smell / cologne / perfume
7. look / salt / sugar
8. taste / salt / sugar
9. act / American teachers / teachers in other countries
10. dress / American teenagers / teenagers in other countries

**EXERCISE 28** Fill in the blanks. Practice using *like* and *alike*. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**EXAMPLE** Players on the same team dress alike.

1. Identical twins \_\_\_\_\_ alike.
2. Americans and people from England don't sound \_\_\_\_\_ . They have different accents.
3. My daughter is only 15 years old, but she \_\_\_\_\_ an adult. She's very responsible and hardworking.
4. My son is only 16 years old, but he \_\_\_\_\_ an adult. He's tall and has a beard.
5. Teenagers often wear the same clothing as their friends. They like to \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Soccer players don't look \_\_\_\_\_ football players at all.
7. Do you think I'll ever \_\_\_\_\_ an American, or will I always have an accent?
8. In some schools, children wear a uniform. They \_\_\_\_\_ alike.
9. My children learned English very quickly. Now they sound \_\_\_\_\_ Americans. They have no accent at all.
10. Dogs don't \_\_\_\_\_ cats at all. Dogs are very friendly. Cats are more distant.



## 12.12 Be Like

We can show that two things are similar (or not) in internal characteristics with *be like* and *be alike*.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Pattern A:</b> For Erik, mountain climbing <b>is like</b> wrestling in some ways. Touch is more important than sight. Erik <b>was like</b> his teammates in many ways—strong, well trained, mentally tough, and able to tolerate pain.</p>	<p><b>Pattern A:</b> Noun 1 + <i>be like</i> + Noun 2</p>
<p><b>Pattern B:</b> For Erik, wrestling and mountain climbing <b>are alike</b> in some ways. Erik and his teammates <b>were alike</b> in many ways.</p>	<p><b>Pattern B:</b> Noun 1 and Noun 2 + <i>be alike</i></p>
<p><b>Compare:</b> a. Erik <b>looks like</b> an athlete. He's tall and strong. b. Erik <b>is like</b> his teammates. He has a lot of experience and training.</p>	<p>a. Use <i>look like</i> to describe an outward appearance. b. Use <i>be like</i> to describe an internal characteristic.</p>

**EXERCISE 29** **ABOUT YOU** Work with a student from another country. Ask a question with the words given. Use *be like*. The other student will answer.

**EXAMPLE** families in the U.S. / families in your native country

**A:** Are families in the U.S. like families in your native country?

**B:** No, they aren't. Families in my native country are very big. Family members live close to each other.

1. an English class in the U.S. / an English class in your native country
2. your house (or apartment) in the U.S. / your house (or apartment) in your native country
3. the weather in this city / the weather in your hometown
4. food in your country / American food
5. women's clothes in your native country / women's clothes in the U.S.
6. a college in your native country / a college in the U.S.
7. American teachers / teachers in your native country
8. American athletes / athletes in your native country



## 12.13 Same or Different

We show that two things are the same (or not) by using *the same as*. We show that two things are different by using *different from*.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Pattern A:</b> Football is <b>not the same as</b> soccer. Football is <b>different from</b> soccer.</p>	<p><b>Pattern A:</b> Noun 1 is (<i>not</i>) <i>the same as</i> Noun 2. Noun 1 is <i>different from</i> Noun 2.</p>
<p><b>Pattern B:</b> Football and soccer are <b>not the same</b>. Football and soccer are <b>different</b>.</p>	<p><b>Pattern B:</b> Noun 1 and Noun 2 are (<i>not</i>) <i>the same</i>. Noun 1 and Noun 2 are <i>different</i>.</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> You will hear some Americans say <i>different than</i>.</p>	

### EXERCISE 30 Tell if the two items are the same or different.

**EXAMPLES** boxing, wrestling  
Boxing and wrestling are different.

fall, autumn  
Fall is the same as autumn.

1. Michael Jordan, Michael Phelps
2. a century, one hundred years
3. rock climbing, mountain climbing
4. a kilometer, 1,000 meters
5. L.A., Los Angeles
6. a mile, a kilometer
7. football, rugby
8. football rules, soccer rules

### EXERCISE 31 Fill in the blanks in the following conversation.



CD 4, TR 11

**A:** I heard that you have a twin brother.

**B:** Yes, I do.

**A:** Do you and your brother look alike ?  
(example)

**B:** No. He (1) look (2) me at all.

**A:** But you're twins.

**B:** We're fraternal twins. That's different (3) identical

twins, who have the (4) genetic code. We're just

brothers who were born at (5) time. We're not

even the same (6). I'm much taller than he is.





**A:** But you're \_\_\_\_\_ in many ways, aren't you?  
(7)

**B:** No. We're completely \_\_\_\_\_. I'm athletic and I'm on the high school football team, but David hates sports. He's a much \_\_\_\_\_ student than I am. He's much more \_\_\_\_\_ our mother, who loves to read and learn new things, and I \_\_\_\_\_ our father, who's athletic and loves to build things.  
(8)  
(9)  
(10)  
(11)

**A:** What about your character?

**B:** I'm outgoing and he's very shy. Also we don't dress \_\_\_\_\_ at all. He likes to wear neat, conservative clothes, but I prefer torn jeans and T-shirts.  
(12)

**A:** From your description, it \_\_\_\_\_ like you're not even from the same family.  
(13)

**B:** We have one thing in common. We were both interested in \_\_\_\_\_ girl at school. We both asked her out, but she didn't want to go out with either one of us!  
(14)

**EXERCISE 32** This is a conversation between two women. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate word to complete the comparisons.



CD 4, TR 12

**A:** In the winter months, my husband doesn't pay as \_\_\_\_\_ attention to me \_\_\_\_\_ he does to his football games.  
(1)  
*much*  
(example)

**B:** Many women have the same problem \_\_\_\_\_ you do. These women are called "football widows" because they lose their husbands during football season.  
(2)

**A:** I feel \_\_\_\_\_ a widow. My husband is in front of the TV all day on the weekends. In addition to the football games, there are pre-game shows.



These shows last \_\_\_\_\_ long as the game itself.  
(4)

(continued)

**B:** I know what you mean. He's no different \_\_\_\_\_ (5) my husband. During football season, my husband is \_\_\_\_\_ (6) interested in watching TV \_\_\_\_\_ (7) he is in me. He looks \_\_\_\_\_ (8) a robot sitting in front of the TV. When I complain, he tells me to sit down and join him.

**A:** It sounds \_\_\_\_\_ (9) all men act \_\_\_\_\_ (10) during football season.

**B:** To tell the truth, I don't like football at all.

**A:** I don't either. I think soccer is much \_\_\_\_\_ (11) interesting than football.

**B:** Soccer is very different \_\_\_\_\_ (12) football. I think the action is \_\_\_\_\_ (13) exciting. And it's more fun to watch the footwork of the soccer players. Football players look \_\_\_\_\_ (14) big monsters with their helmets and padded shoulders. They don't look handsome at all.

**A:** Soccer is not \_\_\_\_\_ (15) popular in the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ (16) it is in other countries. I wonder why.

**B:** What's your favorite team?

**A:** I like the Chicago Fire.

**B:** In my opinion they're not \_\_\_\_\_ (17) good as the Los Angeles Galaxy. But to tell the truth, I'm not very interested in sports at all. When our husbands start watching football next season, let's do our favorite sport: shopping. We can spend \_\_\_\_\_ (18) time shopping as they spend in front of the TV.

**A:** I was just thinking the same thing! You and I think \_\_\_\_\_ (19). We're football widows, but our husbands can be "shopping widowers."



## Summary of Lesson 12

### 1. Simple, Comparative, and Superlative Forms

#### SHORT WORDS

Jacob is **tall**.

Mark is **taller than** Jacob.

Bart is **the tallest** member of the basketball team.

#### LONG WORDS

Golf is **popular** in the U.S.

Baseball is **more popular than** golf.

Soccer is **the most popular** game in the world.

### 2. Other Kinds of Comparisons

She looks as **young as** her daughter.

She speaks English as **fluently as** her husband.

She is **the same age as** her husband.

She and her husband are **the same age**.

She works as **many hours as** her husband.

She doesn't have as **much time as** her husband.

She works as **much as** her husband.

### 3. Comparisons with *Like*

She's **like** her mother. (She and her mother **are alike**.) They're both athletic.

She **looks like** her sister. (She and her sister **look alike**.) They're identical twins.

Lemons **don't taste like** limes. (They don't taste **alike**.)

Western music doesn't **sound like** Asian music. (They don't **sound alike**.)

### 4. Comparisons with *Same* and *Different*

Football is **different from** soccer.

My uniform is **the same as** my teammates' uniforms.

## Editing Advice

### 1. Don't use *more* and *-er* together.

He is ~~more~~ older than his teacher.

### 2. Use *than* before the second item of comparison.

He is younger <sup>than</sup> ~~that~~ his wife.

3. Use *the* before a superlative form.

The Nile is <sup>the</sup> longest river in the world.

4. Use a plural noun in the phrase "one of the [superlative] [nouns]."

Chicago is one of the biggest <sup>cities</sup> city in the U.S.

5. Use the correct word order.

She ~~more talks~~ <sup>talks more</sup> than her husband.

I have ~~time more~~ <sup>more time</sup> than you.

6. Use *be like* for inward similarity. Use *look like* for an outward similarity.

He ~~is look like~~ <sup>s</sup> his brother. They both have blue eyes and dark hair.

He is ~~look~~ like his sister. They are both talented musicians.

7. Use the correct negative for *be like*, *look like*, *sound like*, *feel like*, etc.

I ~~am not~~ <sup>don't</sup> look like my father.

He ~~is~~ <sup>does</sup> not act like a professional athlete.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write C.

Soccer is <sup>C</sup> one of my favorite sport. In fact, it is probably <sup>s</sup> the most popular sport in the world. I know Americans prefer football, <sup>(example)</sup> but for me soccer is <sup>(1)</sup> much more interesting <sup>(2)</sup> that football. In fact, I think soccer is <sup>(3)</sup> the more exciting sport in the world. There are some good American teams, but they aren't <sup>(4)</sup> as good as some of the European teams. I think Italy has one of the <sup>(5)</sup> best <sup>(6)</sup> team. In South America, Brazil has a very <sup>(7)</sup> good team.



The name "football" is confusing. "Football" <sup>(8)</sup> *is sounds like* you use only your feet, but football players carry the ball. A football and a soccer ball don't <sup>(9)</sup> *look alike* at all. A soccer ball is round, but a football isn't. The game of football isn't <sup>(10)</sup> *look like* the game of soccer at all. These sports are completely different. The players are different too. Soccer players are not <sup>(11)</sup> *the same* big as football players. There is just one similarity: a soccer team has <sup>(12)</sup> *the same* number of players <sup>(13)</sup> *than* a football team.

I love to watch soccer, but I like to play it even more. When I lived in my country I played <sup>(14)</sup> *more better* because I <sup>(15)</sup> *more practiced*. I played every weekend. But here I don't have <sup>(16)</sup> *as much time* <sup>(17)</sup> *than* before. I watch it on TV but it isn't <sup>(18)</sup> *as much fun as* playing it.

## Lesson 12 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with the comparative or superlative form of the word in parentheses ( ). Include *than* or *the* when necessary.

1. Soccer is \_\_\_\_\_ sport in the world.  
(popular)
2. In the U.S., football is \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.  
(popular)
3. Erik Weihenmayer is one of \_\_\_\_\_ athletes in the world.  
(interesting)
4. Weihenmayer is \_\_\_\_\_ other mountain climbers.  
(heavy)
5. He found climbing \_\_\_\_\_ wrestling.  
(exciting)
6. Climbing Mount Everest is \_\_\_\_\_ climbing any other mountain.  
(difficult)
7. Mount Everest is \_\_\_\_\_ mountain in the world.  
(tall)
8. Tiger Woods played golf \_\_\_\_\_ his father.  
(good)
9. In golf, the player who has \_\_\_\_\_ scores wins.  
(low)
10. In the 2008 Olympics, Michael Phelps swam \_\_\_\_\_.  
(fast)

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks.

**EXAMPLE** A tangerine is the same color as  
an orange.

1. She's 35 years old. Her husband is 35 years old. She and her husband are \_\_\_\_\_ age.
2. She earns \$30,000 a year. Her husband earns \$35,000. She doesn't earn as \_\_\_\_\_ her husband.
3. The little girl \_\_\_\_\_ like her mother. They both have brown eyes and curly black hair.
4. My name is Sophia Weiss. My teacher's name is Judy Weiss. We have \_\_\_\_\_ last name.
5. Chinese food is different \_\_\_\_\_ American food.
6. A dime isn't the same \_\_\_\_\_ a nickel. A dime is smaller.
7. She is as tall as her husband. They are the same \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A grapefruit doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ like an orange. An orange is sweeter.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ like her husband in many ways. They're both intelligent and hardworking. They both like sports.
10. **A:** Are you like your mother?  
**B:** Oh, no. We're not \_\_\_\_\_ at all! We're completely different.
11. Please finish this test \_\_\_\_\_ possible.
12. *Borrow* and *lend* don't have \_\_\_\_\_ meaning. *Borrow* means take. *Lend* means give.
13. My two sisters look \_\_\_\_\_. In fact, some people think they're twins.



# Expansion

## Classroom

### Activities

**1** Work with a partner. Find some differences between the two of you. Then write five sentences that compare you and your partner. Share your answers in a small group or with the whole class.

**EXAMPLES** I'm taller than Alex.  
Alex is taking more classes than I am.

**2** Form a small group (about 3–5 people) with students from different native countries, if possible. Make comparisons about your native countries. Include a superlative statement. (If all the students in your class are from the same native country, compare cities in your native country.)

**EXAMPLES** Cuba is closer to the U.S. than Peru is.  
China has the largest population.  
Cuba doesn't have as many resources as China.

**3** Work with a partner. Choose one of the categories below, and compare two examples from this category. Use any type of comparative method. Write four sentences. Share your answers with the class.

- a. countries
- b. cars
- c. restaurants
- d. teachers
- e. cities
- f. animals
- g. types of transportation
- h. schools
- i. sports
- j. athletes

**EXAMPLE** animals

A dog is different from a cat in many ways.

A dog can't jump as high as a cat.

A dog is a better pet than a cat, in my opinion.

A cat is not as friendly as a dog.

**4** Compare the U.S. to another country you know. Tell if the statement is true in the U.S. or in the other country. Form a small group and explain your answers to the others in the group.

	Country _____	The U.S.
People have more free time.		
People have more political freedom.		
Families are smaller.		
Children are more polite.		
Teenagers have more freedom.		
People are friendlier.		
The government is more stable.		
Health care is better.		
There is more crime.		
There are more poor people.		
People are generally happier.		
People are more open about their problems.		
Friendship is more important.		
Women have more freedom.		
Schools are better.		
Job opportunities are better.		
Athletes make more money.		
Children have more fun.		
People dress more stylishly.		
Families are closer.		
People are healthier.		



**5** Look at the list of jobs below. Use the superlative form to name a job that matches each description. You may discuss your answers in a small group or with the entire class.

**EXAMPLE** interesting

In my opinion, a psychologist has the most interesting job.

coach	referee
psychologist	letter carrier
computer programmer	athlete
high school teacher	actress
factory worker	photojournalist
doctor	firefighter
police officer	politician
engineer	nurse

(you may add other professions)

- a. interesting \_\_\_\_\_
- b. dangerous \_\_\_\_\_
- c. easy \_\_\_\_\_
- d. tiring \_\_\_\_\_
- e. dirty \_\_\_\_\_
- f. boring \_\_\_\_\_
- g. exciting \_\_\_\_\_
- h. important \_\_\_\_\_
- i. challenging \_\_\_\_\_
- j. difficult \_\_\_\_\_

## Talk

### About It

- 1** Do athletes in other countries make a lot of money?
- 2** Do children in most countries participate in sports? Which sports?
- 3** Why do you think soccer isn't as popular in the U.S. as it is in other countries?
- 4** Do you watch the Olympic Games? What's your favorite sport to watch?

## Write

**About It** Write a short composition comparing one of the sets of items below:

- two stores where you shop for groceries
- watching a movie at home and at a movie theater
- you and your parents
- football and soccer (or any two sports)
- life in the U.S. (in general) and life in your native country
- schools (including teachers, students, classes, etc.) in the U.S. and schools in your native country
- American families and families in your native country
- clothing styles in the U.S. and your native country

### Clothing Styles

People dress differently in my country, Lithuania.

Styles are much more formal than in the U.S. People usually wear dressy clothes and shoes to work.

Here people wear very informal clothes. It's more important for Americans to be comfortable than to be fashionable...



**For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.**



**Lesson**

**13**

**Grammar**

**Passive Voice and Active Voice**

**Context**

**The Law**





## 13.1 The Passive Voice and the Active Voice—An Overview

	EXAMPLES			EXPLANATION
<b>Active</b>	<b>Subject</b> The thief The police	<b>Active Verb</b> <b>stole</b> <b>arrested</b>	<b>Object</b> the bicycle. the thief.	The <b>active voice</b> focuses on the person who performs the action. The subject is active.
<b>Passive</b>	<b>Subject</b> The bicycle The thief	<b>Passive Verb</b> <b>was stolen</b> <b>was arrested</b>	<b>By Phrase</b> <i>by</i> the thief. <i>by</i> the police.	The <b>passive voice</b> focuses on the receiver or the result of the action. The subject is passive. The person who does the action is in the <i>by</i> phrase.
<b>Passive</b>	<b>Subject</b> The thief The bicycle	<b>Passive Verb</b> <b>was taken</b> <b>will be returned</b>	<b>Complement</b> to jail. tomorrow.	Many passive sentences do not contain a <i>by</i> phrase.

### Jury Duty

Before  
You Read

1. Have you ever been to court?
2. Have you ever seen a courtroom in a movie or TV show?



CD 4, TR 13

**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the passive voice.**

**All Americans are protected by the Constitution.** No one person can decide if a person is guilty of a crime. Every citizen has the right to a trial by jury. When a person is **charged** with a crime, he **is considered** innocent until the jury decides he is guilty.

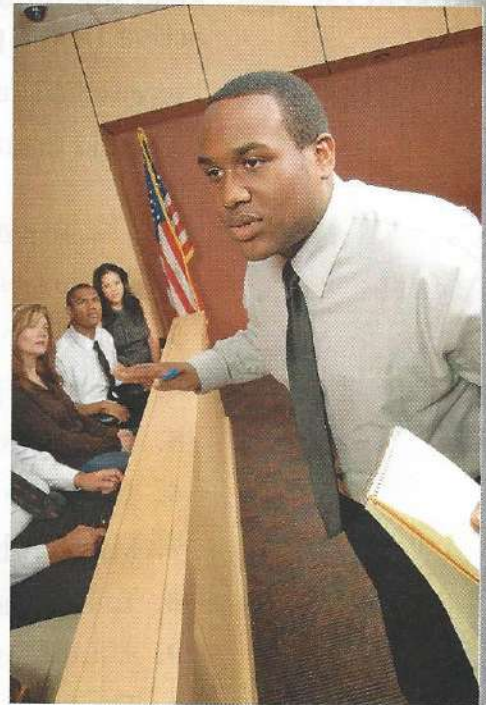
Most American citizens **are chosen** for jury duty at some time in their lives. How **are jurors chosen**? The court gets the names of citizens from lists of taxpayers, licensed drivers, and voters. Many people **are called** to the courthouse for the selection of a jury. From this large number, 12 people **are chosen**. The lawyers and the judge ask each person questions to see if the person is going to be fair. If the person has made any judgment about the case before hearing the facts presented in the trial, he **is not selected**. If the juror doesn't understand enough English, he **is not selected**. The court needs jurors who can understand the facts and be open-minded. When the final jury selection **is made**, the jurors must raise their right hands and promise to be fair in deciding the case.



Sometimes a trial goes on for several days or more. Jurors are not **permitted** to talk with family members and friends about the case. In some cases, jurors are not **permitted** to go home until the case is over. They stay in a hotel and are not **permitted** to watch TV or read newspapers that give information about the case.

After the jurors hear the case, they have to make a decision. They go to a separate room and talk about what they heard and saw in the courtroom. When they are finished discussing the case, they take a vote.

Jurors are **paid** for their work. They receive a small amount of money per day. Employers must give a worker permission to be on a jury. Being on a jury is **considered** a very serious job.



## 13.2 The Passive Voice

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>Be</b>      <b>Past Participle</b></p> <p>The jurors <b>are</b> <b>chosen</b> from lists.            My sister <b>was</b> <b>selected</b> to be on a jury.            The jurors <b>will be</b> <b>paid</b> for jury duty.</p>	<p>The passive voice uses a form of <i>be</i> (any tense) + the past participle.</p>
<p><b>Compare Active (A) and Passive (P):</b></p> <p>(A) Ms. Smith <b>paid</b> her employees at the end of the week.            (P) Ms. Smith <b>was paid</b> for being a juror.</p>	<p>The verb in active voice (A) shows that the subject (Ms. Smith) performed the action of the verb.            The verb in passive voice (P) shows that the subject (Ms. Smith) did not perform the action of the verb.</p>
<p>I was helped <b>by the lawyer</b>.            My sister was helped <b>by him</b> too.</p>	<p>When a performer is included after a passive verb, use <i>by</i> + noun or object pronoun.</p>



**EXERCISE 1** Read the following sentences. Decide if the underlined verb is active (A) or passive (P).

**EXAMPLES** I received a letter from the court. A

I was told to go to court on May 10. P

1. The jury voted at the end of the trial.
2. The jurors received \$20 a day.
3. Some jurors were told to go home.
4. Not every juror will be needed.
5. Twelve people were selected for the jury.
6. The judge told the jurors about their responsibilities.
7. My sister has been selected for jury duty three times.
8. You will be paid for jury duty.
9. A juror must be at least 18 years old and an American citizen.
10. The judge and the lawyers ask a lot of questions.

## 13.3 The Passive Voice—Form and Uses

**Form:** The passive voice can be used with different tenses and with modals. The tense of the sentence is shown by the verb *be*. Use the past participle with every tense.

TENSE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE (BE + PAST PARTICIPLE)
Simple Present	They <b>take</b> a vote.	A vote <b>is taken</b> .
Simple Past	They <b>took</b> a vote.	A vote <b>was taken</b> .
Future	They <b>will take</b> a vote. They <b>are going to take</b> a vote.	A vote <b>will be taken</b> . A vote <b>is going to be taken</b> .
Present Perfect	They <b>have taken</b> a vote.	A vote <b>has been taken</b> .
Modal	They <b>must take</b> a vote.	A vote <b>must be taken</b> .

### Language Notes:

1. An adverb can be placed between the auxiliary verb and the main verb.  
The jurors **are always paid**.  
Noncitizens **are never selected** for jury duty.
2. If two verbs in the passive voice are connected with *and*, do not repeat *be*.  
The jurors **are taken** to a room and **shown** a film about the court system.



**Uses: The passive voice is used more frequently without a performer than with a performer.**

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
English <b>is spoken</b> in the U.S. Independence Day <b>is celebrated</b> in July.	The passive voice is used when the action is done by people in general.
The jurors <b>are given</b> a lunch break. The jurors <b>will be paid</b> at the end of the day. Jurors <b>are not permitted</b> to talk with family members about the case.	The passive voice is used when the actual person who performs the action is of little or no importance.
a. The criminal <b>was arrested</b> . b. The students <b>will be given</b> a test on the passive voice.	The passive voice is used when it is obvious who performed the action. In (a), it is obvious that the police arrested the criminal. In (b), it is obvious that the teacher will give a test.
<p><b>Active:</b> The lawyers <b>presented</b> the case yesterday.</p> <p><b>Passive:</b> The case <b>was presented</b> in two hours.</p> <p><b>Active:</b> The judge and the lawyers <b>choose</b> jurors.</p> <p><b>Passive:</b> People who don't understand English <b>are not chosen</b>.</p>	The passive voice is used to shift the emphasis from the performer to the receiver of the action.

**EXERCISE 2** Change to the passive voice. (Do not include a *by* phrase.)

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

**EXAMPLE** They chose him.

**He was chosen.**

1. They will choose him.
2. They always choose you.
3. They can't choose them.
4. They have never chosen us.
5. They didn't choose me.
6. They shouldn't choose her.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 3** Fill in the blanks with the passive voice of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use the present tense.

**EXAMPLE** Jurors are chosen from lists.  
(choose)

1. Only people over 18 years old \_\_\_\_\_ for jury duty.  
(select)
2. Questionnaires<sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ to American citizens.  
(send)
3. The questionnaire \_\_\_\_\_ out and \_\_\_\_\_  
(fill) (return)
4. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ to the courthouse.  
(call)
5. Not everyone \_\_\_\_\_.  
(choose)
6. The jurors \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of questions.  
(ask)
7. Jurors \_\_\_\_\_ to discuss the case with outsiders.  
(not/permit)
8. Jurors \_\_\_\_\_ a paycheck at the end of the day for their work.  
(give)

**EXERCISE 4** Fill in the blanks with the passive voice of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use the past tense.

**EXAMPLE** I was sent a letter.  
(send)

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the courthouse on Fifth Street.  
(tell)
2. My name \_\_\_\_\_.  
(call)
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ a form to fill out.  
(give)
4. A video about jury duty \_\_\_\_\_ on a large TV.  
(show)
5. The jurors \_\_\_\_\_ to the third floor of the building.  
(take)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of questions by the lawyers.  
(ask)
7. I \_\_\_\_\_.  
(not/choose)
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ home before noon.  
(send)

<sup>1</sup>A questionnaire is a list of questions about a topic.



**EXERCISE 5** Fill in the blanks with the passive voice of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use the present perfect tense.

**EXAMPLE** The jurors have been given a lot of information.  
(give)

1. Many articles \_\_\_\_\_ about the courts.  
(write)
2. Many movies \_\_\_\_\_ about the courts.  
(make)
3. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ for jury duty.  
(choose)
4. Your name \_\_\_\_\_ for jury duty.  
(select)
5. The jurors \_\_\_\_\_ for their work.  
(pay)
6. The check \_\_\_\_\_ at the door.  
(leave)
7. The money \_\_\_\_\_ in an envelope.  
(put)

**EXERCISE 6** The people called to jury duty are getting instructions about what to expect. Fill in the blanks with the passive voice of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use the future tense.

**EXAMPLE** You will be taken to a courtroom.  
(take)

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ to stand up when the judge enters the room.  
(tell)
2. Each of you \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of questions.  
(ask)
3. The lawyers \_\_\_\_\_.  
(introduce)
4. Information about the case \_\_\_\_\_ to you.  
(give)
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ to eat in the courtroom.  
(not/allow)
6. Twelve of you \_\_\_\_\_.  
(select)
7. If you do not speak and understand English well, you  
\_\_\_\_\_.  
(not/pick)
8. Besides the 12 jurors, two alternates<sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.  
(choose)
9. The rest of you \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
(send)
10. All of you \_\_\_\_\_.  
(pay)

<sup>2</sup>An *alternate* takes the place of a juror who cannot serve for some reason (such as illness).

**EXERCISE 7** Fill in the blanks with the passive voice of the underlined verbs. Use the same tense.

**EXAMPLE** The jury took a vote. The vote was taken after three hours.

1. The lawyers asked a lot of questions. The questions \_\_\_\_\_ in order to find facts.
2. The court will pay us. We \_\_\_\_\_ \$20 a day.
3. They told us to wait. We \_\_\_\_\_ to wait on the second floor.
4. They gave us instructions. We \_\_\_\_\_ information about the law.
5. People pay for the services of a lawyer. Lawyers \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money for their services.
6. You should use a pen to fill out the form. A pen \_\_\_\_\_ for all legal documents.
7. They showed us a film about the court system. We \_\_\_\_\_ the film before we went to the courtroom.

## 13.4 Negatives and Questions with the Passive Voice

Compare affirmative statements to negative statements and questions with the passive voice.

SIMPLE PAST	PRESENT PERFECT
<p>The jurors <b>were paid</b>.</p> <p>They <b>weren't paid</b> a lot.</p> <p><b>Were</b> they <b>paid</b> in cash?</p> <p>No, they <b>weren't</b>.</p> <p>How much <b>were</b> they <b>paid</b>?</p> <p>Why <b>weren't</b> they <b>paid</b> in cash?</p> <p>Who <b>was paid</b> first?</p>	<p>I <b>have been chosen</b> for jury duty several times.</p> <p>I <b>haven't been chosen</b> this year.</p> <p><b>Have</b> you ever <b>been chosen</b>?</p> <p>No, I <b>haven't</b>.</p> <p>How many times <b>have</b> you <b>been chosen</b>?</p> <p>Why <b>haven't</b> you <b>been chosen</b>?</p> <p>Which people <b>have been chosen</b>?</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> Never use <i>do</i>, <i>does</i>, or <i>did</i> with the passive voice.</p> <p><i>Wrong:</i> The juror <b>didn't</b> paid.</p>	



**EXERCISE 8** Fill in the blanks with the negative form of the underlined verbs. Use the same tense as the underlined verbs.

**EXAMPLE** I was selected for jury duty last year. I wasn't selected this year.

1. The jurors are paid. They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
2. Twelve people were chosen. People who don't speak English well \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Jurors are allowed to talk with other jurors about the case. They \_\_\_\_\_ to talk to friends and family about the case.
4. We were told to keep an open mind. We \_\_\_\_\_ how to vote.
5. We have been given instructions. We \_\_\_\_\_ our checks yet.

**EXERCISE 9** Change the statements to questions using the words in parentheses ( ).

**EXAMPLE** The jurors are paid. (how much)

How much are the jurors paid?

1. Some people aren't selected. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The jurors are given a lunch break. (when)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I wasn't chosen for the jury. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. You were given information about the case. (what kind of information)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. A film will be shown. (when)  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Several jurors have been sent home. (which jurors)  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. The jurors should be paid more money. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. We were told to go to the courtroom. (when)  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. The jury has been instructed by the judge. (why)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# Unusual Lawsuits

## Before You Read

1. Are drivers permitted to use cell phones in the area where you live?
2. Have you read about any unusual court cases in the newspaper or heard about any on TV?



**Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to the active and passive voice.**

### Did You Know?

A 2007 study by the Automobile Association of America found that 46 percent of kids aged 16 and 17 text while driving.

When a person **is injured** or **harmed**, it is the court's job to determine who is at fault. Most of these cases never **make** the news. But a few of them **appear** in the newspapers and on the evening news because they are so unusual.

In 1992, a fast-food restaurant **was sued** by a 79-year-old woman in New Mexico who **spilled** hot coffee on herself while driving. She **suffered** third-degree burns on her body. At first the woman **asked** for \$11,000 to cover her medical expenses. When the restaurant **refused**, the case **went** to court and the woman **was awarded** nearly \$3 million.

In 2002, a group of teenagers **sued** several fast-food chains for serving food that **made** them fat. The case **was thrown** out of court. According to Congressman Ric Keller, Americans **have to** "get away from this new culture where people always **try** to play the victim and **blame** others for their problems." Mr. Keller, who is overweight and **eats** at fast-food chains once every two weeks, **said** that suing "the food industry is not **going to make** a single individual any skinnier. It **will** only **make** the trial attorneys' bank accounts fatter."



In June 2004, an Indiana woman **sued** a cell phone company for causing an auto accident in which she **was involved**. The court **decided** that the manufacturer of a cell phone **cannot be held** responsible for an auto accident involving a driver using its product. In March 2000, a teenage girl in Virginia **was struck and killed** by a driver conducting business on a cell phone. The girl's family **sued** the driver's employer for \$30 million for wrongful death. They **said** that it was the company's fault because employees **are expected** to conduct business while driving. The family **lost** its case.

We **are protected** by the law. But as individuals we **need** to take personal responsibility and not blame others for our mistakes. The court system **is designed** to protect us; it is up to us to make sure that trials **remain** serious.



## 13.5 Choosing Active Voice or Passive Voice

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION																								
<p>(A) A driver using a cell phone <b>caused</b> the accident.</p> <p>(P) The accident <b>was caused</b> by a driver using a cell phone.</p> <p>(A) A driver <b>struck</b> and <b>killed</b> a teenager.</p> <p>(P) A teenager <b>was struck</b> and <b>killed</b> by a driver.</p>	<p>When the sentence has a specific performer, we can use either the active (A) or passive (P) voice. The active voice puts more emphasis on the person who performs the action. The passive voice puts more emphasis on the action or the result. The performer is mentioned in a <i>by</i> phrase (<i>by the driver, by a woman, by the court</i>).</p> <p>The active voice is more common than the passive voice when there is a specific performer.</p>																								
<p>(P) The obesity case <b>was thrown</b> out of court.</p> <p>(P) The manufacturer of a cell phone <b>cannot be held</b> responsible for a car accident.</p> <p>(P) Some employees <b>are expected</b> to conduct business while driving.</p>	<p>When there is no specific performer or the performer is obvious, the passive voice is usually used.</p>																								
<p>(P) It <b>was found</b> that 80 percent of accidents are the result of driver distraction.</p> <p>(P) It <b>is believed</b> that cell phone use distracts drivers.</p>	<p>Often the passive voice is used after <i>it</i> when talking about findings, discoveries, or general beliefs.</p>																								
<p>(A) The woman <b>went</b> to court.</p> <p>(A) The accident <b>happened</b> in Virginia.</p> <p>(A) Unusual court cases <b>appear</b> in the newspaper.</p> <p>(A) The teenager <b>died</b>.</p>	<p>Some verbs have no object. We cannot make these verbs passive. Some verbs with no object are:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>happen</td> <td>go</td> <td>fall</td> <td>become</td> </tr> <tr> <td>live</td> <td>sleep</td> <td>come</td> <td>look</td> </tr> <tr> <td>die</td> <td>seem</td> <td>work</td> <td>complain</td> </tr> <tr> <td>be</td> <td>remain</td> <td>arrive</td> <td>stay</td> </tr> <tr> <td>appear</td> <td>rain</td> <td>run</td> <td>sound</td> </tr> <tr> <td>grow</td> <td>depend</td> <td>laugh</td> <td>leave (a place)</td> </tr> </table>	happen	go	fall	become	live	sleep	come	look	die	seem	work	complain	be	remain	arrive	stay	appear	rain	run	sound	grow	depend	laugh	leave (a place)
happen	go	fall	become																						
live	sleep	come	look																						
die	seem	work	complain																						
be	remain	arrive	stay																						
appear	rain	run	sound																						
grow	depend	laugh	leave (a place)																						
<p>(A) <b>She</b> sued <b>them</b>.</p> <p>(P) <b>They</b> were sued by <b>her</b>.</p> <p>(A) <b>He</b> helps <b>us</b>.</p> <p>(P) <b>We</b> are helped by <b>him</b>.</p>	<p>Notice the difference in pronouns in an active sentence and a passive sentence. After <i>by</i>, the object pronoun is used.</p>																								
<p><b>Language Note:</b> Even though <i>have</i> and <i>want</i> are followed by an object, these verbs are not usually used in the passive voice.</p> <p>He <b>has</b> a cell phone. (<i>Not:</i> A cell phone is had by him.)</p> <p>She <b>wants</b> a new car. (<i>Not:</i> A new car is wanted by her.)</p>																									

**EXERCISE 10** Change these sentences from active to passive voice. Mention the performer in a *by* phrase. Use the same tense as the underlined verbs.

**EXAMPLE** An Indiana woman sued a cell phone company.  
A cell phone company was sued by an Indiana woman.

1. Employees use cell phones.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. A driver hit a pedestrian.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The court threw out the case.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Distracted drivers cause accidents.

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Congress makes the laws.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Should the government control cell phone use?

\_\_\_\_\_

7. The president signs new laws.

\_\_\_\_\_

8. The court has decided the case.

\_\_\_\_\_

9. The judge will make a decision.

\_\_\_\_\_

10. Fast-food restaurants sell hamburgers and fries.

\_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 11** The following sentences would be better in passive voice without a performer. Change them to passive voice. Use the same tense as the underlined verbs.

**EXAMPLE** They paid me for jury duty.  
I was paid for jury duty.

1. They sent me a questionnaire.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. They have taken us to a separate room.

\_\_\_\_\_



3. They told us not to discuss the case.

---

4. They will choose 12 people.

---

5. Has someone selected your name?

---

6. They didn't permit us to read any newspapers.

---

7. They will not select him again for jury duty.

---

8. Will they pay you?

---

9. They don't allow us to eat in the courtroom.

---

10. Someone has called my name.

---

**EXERCISE 12** The following sentences would be better in active voice. Change them to active voice. Use the same tense as the underlined verbs.

**EXAMPLE** Fast food is eaten by Mr. Keller.  
Mr. Keller eats fast food.

---

1. A cell phone was had by the driver.

---

2. Hot coffee was spilled by the driver.

---

3. Is a cell phone used by you?

---

4. The car has been driven by me.

---

5. A lot of money is made by lawyers.

---

6. An earpiece should be used by drivers with cell phones.

---

7. Business is conducted by me from my car.

---

8. The news is watched by us every night.

9. Fast food is eaten by a lot of teenagers.

10. The accident will be reported by them.

**EXERCISE 13** Fill in the blanks with the active or passive voice of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use the tense or modal given.



In more than 50 countries, laws have been passed that prohibit drivers from using cell phones. In a few countries, such as Japan, both hand-held and hands-free cell phone use \_\_\_\_\_.

(1 present: ban)

In the U.S., the law \_\_\_\_\_ on the place where you \_\_\_\_\_.

(2 present: depend)

\_\_\_\_\_ In New York, for example, the use of hand-held cell phones while driving \_\_\_\_\_, but

(4 present: prohibit)

the use of hands-free units \_\_\_\_\_. A driver who

(5 present: permit)

\_\_\_\_\_ this law can be fined \$100 for a first offense, \$200 for a second, and \$500 after that. More and more states

(6 present: not/obey)

\_\_\_\_\_ to become tougher on drivers who use cell phones.

(7 present perfect: start)

Texting while driving \_\_\_\_\_ an even greater problem.

(8 present perfect: become)

Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ to look away from the road in order to text. The risk of causing an accident while texting is 15 times higher than it is while

(9 present: need)

using a cell phone. In New York, drivers who text \_\_\_\_\_

(10 future: punish)

with a fine of up to \$150. In Utah, drivers who text and cause a serious accident \_\_\_\_\_ to jail for up to 15 years.

(11 can/send)

But the problem of driver distraction is not only a result of cell phones and texting. According to one study conducted, it was found that 80 percent of accidents \_\_\_\_\_ by drivers who are not paying attention.

(12 present: cause)

This study \_\_\_\_\_ that drivers \_\_\_\_\_ by

(13 past: determine)

(14 present: distract)

many things: eating, putting on makeup, reading, reaching for things, and



changing stations on the radio. It is clear that all drivers  
\_\_\_\_\_ to give driving their full attention.  
(15 present: need)

**EXERCISE 14** Fill in the blanks with the passive or active voice of the verb in parentheses ( ), using the past tense.



CD 4, TR 16

**A:** Why weren't you at work last week? Were you sick?

**B:** No. I was chosen to be on a jury.  
(example: choose)

**A:** How was it?

**B:** It was very interesting. A man \_\_\_\_\_  
(1 arrest)  
for fighting with a police officer.

**A:** Oh. How was the jury selection process?

**B:** The jury selection was interesting too. But it took  
half a day to choose 12 people.

**A:** Why?

**B:** The judge and lawyers \_\_\_\_\_ more than 50 people.  
(2 interview)

**A:** Why so many people?

**B:** Well, several people \_\_\_\_\_ the judge's questions.  
(3 not/understand)

They \_\_\_\_\_ English very well. And a  
(4 not/speak)

woman \_\_\_\_\_ the judge that she was very sick.  
(5 tell)

The judge \_\_\_\_\_ her permission to leave. I don't  
(6 give)  
know why the other people \_\_\_\_\_  
(7 not/choose)

**A:** What kind of questions \_\_\_\_\_ by the  
(8 you/ask)  
judge and lawyers?

**B:** First the lawyers \_\_\_\_\_ to see if we could be fair.  
(9 want)

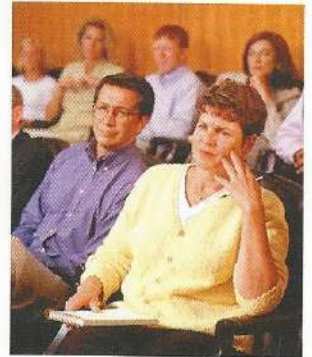
Some jurors \_\_\_\_\_ that they had a bad experience  
(10 say)  
with a police officer. Those jurors \_\_\_\_\_  
(11 not/select)

**A:** Why not?

**B:** Because the judge probably thought they couldn't be fair in this case.

**A:** How long did the trial last?

**B:** Only two days.



(continued)

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ about the case with your family when  
 you \_\_\_\_\_ home the first night?  
 (12 you/talk) (13 go)

**B:** Oh, no. We \_\_\_\_\_ not to talk to anyone about the  
 case. When it was over, I \_\_\_\_\_ my wife and kids  
 about it.  
 (14 tell) (15 tell)

**A:** How long did it take the jurors to make a decision?

**B:** About two hours. One of the jurors \_\_\_\_\_  
 with the other 11 jurors. We \_\_\_\_\_ about the  
 evidence until she changed her mind.  
 (16 not/agree) (17 talk)

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ you for the days you missed work?  
 (18 your boss/pay)

**B:** Of course. He had to pay me. That's the law.

**A:** Now that you've done it once, you won't have to do it again. Right?

**B:** That's not true. This was the second time I \_\_\_\_\_.  
 (19 choose)

## Summary of Lesson 13

### Active and Passive Voice—Forms

#### ACTIVE

He **drove** the car.  
 He **didn't drive** the car.  
 He **will drive** the car.  
 He **has driven** the car.  
 He often **drives** the car.  
 He **should drive** the car.  
**Did** he **drive** the car?  
 When **did** he **drive** the car?  
 Which car **did** he **drive**?

#### PASSIVE

The car **was driven** by him.  
 The car **wasn't driven** by him.  
 The car **will be driven** by him.  
 The car **has been driven** by him.  
 The car **is** often **driven** by him.  
 The car **should be driven** by him.  
**Was** the car **driven** by him?  
 When **was** the car **driven** by him?  
 Which car **was driven** by him?

### The Active Voice—Use

#### EXAMPLES

I **bought** a new cell phone.  
 He **eats** fast food.  
 We **will drive** the car.  
 The accident **happened** last month.  
 She **went** to court.

#### EXPLANATION

In most cases, the active voice is used when there is a choice between active and passive.  
 When there is no object, the active voice must be used. There is no choice.



The Passive Voice—Use	
EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
I <b>was chosen</b> for jury duty. My cell phone <b>was made</b> in Japan.	Use the passive voice when the performer is not known or is not important.
The criminal <b>was taken</b> to jail. Some employees <b>are expected</b> to conduct business while driving.	Use the passive voice when the performer is obvious.
Cell phones <b>are used</b> all over the world. Jury duty <b>is considered</b> a responsibility of every citizen.	Use the passive voice when the performer is everybody or people in general.
The court paid me. I <b>was paid</b> at the end of the day. The coffee was very hot. The coffee <b>was bought</b> at a fast-food restaurant.	Use the passive voice when the emphasis is shifted from the performer to the receiver of the action.
It <b>was discovered</b> that many accidents are the result of driver distraction. It <b>is believed</b> that a person can get a fair trial in the U.S.	Use the passive voice with <i>it</i> when talking about findings, discoveries, or beliefs.
Accidents <b>are caused</b> by distracted drivers. A fast-food company <b>was sued</b> by a woman in New Mexico.	Use the passive voice when the emphasis is on the receiver of the action more than on the performer. (In this case, the performer is included in a <i>by</i> phrase.)

## Editing Advice

1. Never use *do*, *does*, or *did* with the passive voice.

The money <sup>wasn't found</sup> ~~didn't find~~.

Where <sup>were</sup> ~~did~~ the jurors taken?

2. Don't use the passive voice with *happen*, *die*, *become*, *sleep*, *work*, *live*, *fall*, *seem*, or other verbs with no object.

My grandfather ~~was~~ died four years ago.

3. Don't confuse the *-ing* form with the past participle.

The criminal was <sup>taken</sup> ~~taking~~ to jail.

4. Don't forget the *-ed* ending for a regular past participle.

My cousin<sup>ed</sup> was select<sup>ed</sup> to be on a jury.

5. Don't forget to use *be* with a passive sentence.

The books<sup>were</sup> found on the floor by the janitor.

6. Use the correct word order with adverbs.

I was told never about the problem.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

*C*

**A:** You didn't come to class all last week. What was happened? Were you sick?  
(example) (example)

**B:** No. I had jury duty.  
(1)

**A:** But you're not a citizen, are you?

**B:** Yes, I am. I was become a citizen six months ago. Last month, I received a letter in the mail telling me I had to report for duty.  
(2) (3)

**A:** Did you selected for a jury? You're still an ESL student!  
(4) (5)

**B:** Yes. I was selected. My English is far from perfect, but I was ask a lot of questions by the judge and I answered them without a problem. Anyway, I was surprised that I chosen.  
(6) (7) (8) (9)

**A:** Was it an interesting case?

**B:** Not really. It was about a traffic accident. A man hit a woman's car and he left the scene of the accident. Her car was badly damage.  
(10) (11) (12)

**A:** Did the woman injured?  
(13)

**B:** She had back pain and had to go for physical therapy.



A: How did the driver caught?  
(14) (15)

B: The woman saw his license plate and wrote down the number.  
(16) (17)

A: Then what was happened?  
(18)

B: She called the police and they caught him. He was taking to the police station. He was driven without a license. Also, he was talking on a cell phone while he was driving. It's not permitted to do that in this city.  
(19) (20) (21) (22) (23)

A: I didn't know that. I was told never about that rule.  
(24)

B: Well, now you know!

## Lesson 13 Test/Review

**PART 1** Change sentences from active to passive voice. Do not mention the performer. (The performer is in parentheses.) Use the same tense as the underlined verb.

**EXAMPLE** (Someone) took my dictionary.

My dictionary was taken.

1. (People) speak English in the U.S.

2. (You) can use a dictionary during the test.

3. (The police) took the criminal to jail.

4. (People) have seen the president on TV many times.

5. (Someone) will take you to the courtroom.

6. (Someone) has broken the mirror into small pieces.

7. (People) expect you to learn English in the U.S.

---

8. (They) don't allow cameras in the courtroom.

---

**PART 2** Change the sentences from passive to active voice. Use the same tense as the underlined verb.

**EXAMPLE** You were told by me to bring your books.  
I told you to bring your books.

---

1. You have been told by the teacher to write a composition.

---

2. Your phone bill must be paid.

---

3. You are not allowed by the teacher to use your books during a test.

---

4. The tests will be returned by the teacher.

---

5. When are wedding gifts opened by the bride and groom?

---

6. Your missing car was not found by the police.

---

**PART 3** Fill in the blanks with the passive or active form of the verb in parentheses ( ). Use an appropriate tense or the modal given.

**EXAMPLES** The tests will be returned tomorrow.  
(will/return)

The teacher will return the tests.  
(will/return)

1. My neighbor had a heart attack and \_\_\_\_\_ to the hospital in an ambulance yesterday.  
(take)

2. I \_\_\_\_\_ my neighbor in the hospital tomorrow.  
(will/visit)

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ the movie *Star Wars* five times.  
(see)



4. This movie \_\_\_\_\_ by millions of people.  
(see)
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of friends.  
(have)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ many times by my friends.  
(help)
7. Ten people \_\_\_\_\_ in the fire last night.  
(die)
8. Five people \_\_\_\_\_ by the fire department in  
yesterday's fire.  
(rescue)
9. Her husband \_\_\_\_\_ home from work at 6 P.M.  
every day.  
(come)
10. He \_\_\_\_\_ home by his coworker last night.  
(drive)
11. The answer to your question \_\_\_\_\_ by anyone.  
(not/know)
12. Even the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the answer to your question.  
(not/know)

## Expansion

### Classroom

#### Activities

- 1 Form a small group and talk about the legal system in another country. Use the chart below to get ideas.

Country: \_\_\_\_\_

	Yes	No
People are treated fairly in court.		
Citizens are selected to be on a jury.		
People are represented by lawyers in court.		
Lawyers make a lot of money.		
Famous trials are shown on TV.		
Punishment is severe for certain crimes.		
The death penalty is used in some cases.		
The laws are fair.		

- 2 Form two groups. One group will make a presentation telling why cell phone use should be permitted in cars. One group will make a presentation telling why cell phone use should *not* be permitted in cars.

## Talk

### About It

- 1 Would you like to be on a jury? Why or why not?
- 2 In a small group, discuss your impressions of the American legal system from what you've seen on TV, from what you've read, or from your own experience.
- 3 Do you think drivers who talk on cell phones or text while driving cause accidents?
- 4 What laws should be changed in the U.S.? What laws should be added?

## Write

### About It

- 1 Write about an experience you have had with the court system in the U.S. or your native country.
- 2 Write about a famous court case that you know of. Do you agree with the decision of the jury?

### A Famous Court Case

I read about an interesting court case involving the governor of Illinois, George Ryan. He was convicted in 2006 of corruption while in office. He illegally gave out driver's licenses to unqualified truck drivers. A family was killed by one of these drivers...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.



## Lesson

# 14

**Grammar**  
**Articles**

*Other/Another*

**Indefinite Pronouns**

**Context**  
**Money**





## 14.1 Articles—An Overview

Articles precede nouns and tell whether a noun is definite or indefinite.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
Do you have <b>a credit card</b> ? I bought <b>an old house</b> .	The indefinite articles are <i>a</i> and <i>an</i> .
It's a holiday today. <b>The banks</b> are closed. There are many poor people in <b>the world</b> .	The definite article is <i>the</i> .
<b>Money</b> is important for everyone. <b>Teenagers</b> like to spend money.	Sometimes a noun is used without an article.

### Kids and Money

Before

You Read

1. Do you think parents should give money to their children? At what age?
2. Do you think teenagers should work while they're in high school?



Read the following magazine article. Pay special attention to nouns and the articles that precede them. (Some nouns have no article.)

**Kids** in the U.S. like to spend **money**. In 2009, the average 17-year-old spent more than \$100 a week. Much of today's **advertising** is directed at **kids**. When you go into a **store**, you often hear **toddlers**,<sup>1</sup> who are



<sup>1</sup>A *toddler* is a child between the ages of one and three.



**Did You Know?**

In a study of young people aged 12 to 17, 58 percent said they wouldn't bother to pick up off the sidewalk anything less than a dollar.

just learning to talk, saying to their parents, "Buy me a toy. Buy me some candy." Some kids feel gratitude when they receive a dollar or a toy from a grandparent. But some kids feel a sense of entitlement<sup>2</sup>. Even during the hard economic times of the early 1990s, sales of soft drinks, designer jeans, fast food, sneakers, gum, and dolls remained high. One factor in parents' generosity is guilt. As parents become busier in their jobs, they often feel guilty about not spending time with their kids. Often they deal with their guilt by giving their kids money and gifts.

To help children understand the value of money, parents often give their children an allowance. The child's spending is limited to the money he or she receives each week. How much should parents give a child as an allowance? Some parents give the child a dollar for each year of his or her age. A five-year-old would get five dollars. A fifteen-year-old would get fifteen dollars. Some parents pay their kids extra for chores, such as taking out the garbage or shoveling snow. Other parents believe kids should do chores as part of their family responsibilities.

When is the right time to start talking to kids about money? According to Nathan Dungan, a financial expert, the right time is as soon as kids can say, "I want." By the time they start school, they must know there are limits.

## 14.2 The Indefinite Article—Classifying or Identifying the Subject

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>A doll is <b>a toy</b>.            A toddler is <b>a small child</b>.            A penny is <b>a one-cent coin</b>.            "Inflation" is <b>an economic term</b>.</p>	<p>After the verb <i>be</i>, we use the indefinite articles <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> + singular count noun to define or classify the subject of the sentence.</p> <p>Singular subject + <i>is</i> + <i>a(n)</i> + (adjective) + noun</p>
<p>Guilt is <b>an emotion</b>.            Generosity is <b>a good quality</b>.</p>	<p>We can classify a noncount subject:</p> <p>Noncount subject + <i>is</i> + <i>a(n)</i> + (adjective) + noun</p>
<p>Jeans are <b>popular clothes</b>.            Teenagers are <b>young adults</b>.            Chores are <b>everyday jobs</b>.</p>	<p>When we classify or define a plural subject, we don't use an article.</p> <p>Plural subject + <i>are</i> + (adjective) + noun</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> We can also use <i>be</i> in the past tense to give a definition.</p> <p>The Depression <b>was</b> a difficult time in American history.            Abraham Lincoln <b>was</b> an American president.</p>	

<sup>2</sup>A sense of entitlement is a feeling that you have the right to receive something.



**EXERCISE 1** Define the following words. Answers may vary.

**EXAMPLE** A toddler is a small child.

1. A teenager \_\_\_\_\_
2. A quarter \_\_\_\_\_
3. A dime \_\_\_\_\_
4. A credit card \_\_\_\_\_
5. A wallet \_\_\_\_\_
6. Gold \_\_\_\_\_
7. Silver and gold \_\_\_\_\_

**EXERCISE 2** Tell who these people are or were by classifying them. These people were mentioned in previous lessons in this book. Answers will vary.

**EXAMPLE** Martin Luther King, Jr. was an African-American leader.

1. Albert Einstein \_\_\_\_\_
2. Tiger Woods \_\_\_\_\_
3. Erik Weihenmayer \_\_\_\_\_
4. Barack Obama \_\_\_\_\_
5. George Dawson \_\_\_\_\_
6. Navajos \_\_\_\_\_

## 14.3 The Indefinite Article—Introducing a Noun

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
She has <b>a son</b> . Her son has <b>a job</b> . Her son has <b>a checking account</b> .	Use <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> to introduce a singular noun.
He has ( <b>some</b> ) toys. He doesn't have ( <b>any</b> ) video games. Does he have ( <b>any</b> ) CDs?	Use <i>some</i> and <i>any</i> to introduce a plural noun. <i>Some</i> and <i>any</i> can be omitted.
He has ( <b>some</b> ) money. He doesn't have ( <b>any</b> ) cash. Does he have ( <b>any</b> ) time?	Use <i>some</i> and <i>any</i> to introduce a noncount noun. <i>Some</i> and <i>any</i> can be omitted.
<b>Language Notes:</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. <i>Some</i> is used in affirmative statements.</li><li>2. <i>Any</i> is used in negative statements.</li><li>3. Both <i>some</i> and <i>any</i> can be used in questions.</li></ol>	



**EXERCISE 3** Fill in the blanks with the correct word: *a, an, some, or any.*

**EXAMPLE** There are some symbols on the back of a credit card.

1. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ account with the bank?
2. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ money in your savings account?
3. I have \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-dollar bill in my pocket.
4. I have \_\_\_\_\_ quarters in my pocket.
5. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money with me.
6. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ credit cards?
7. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ change.
8. Buy me \_\_\_\_\_ toy.
9. Buy me \_\_\_\_\_ candy.
10. I need \_\_\_\_\_ dollar.
11. Many teenagers want to have \_\_\_\_\_ job.
12. Does your little brother get \_\_\_\_\_ allowance?

**EXERCISE 4** A mother (M) and a son (S) are talking. Fill in the blanks with *a, an, some, or any.*



CD 4, TR 18

**S:** I want to get a job.  
(example)

**M:** But you're only 16 years old.

**S:** I'm old enough to work. I need to  
make \_\_\_\_\_ money.  
(1)

**M:** But we give you \_\_\_\_\_ allowance each  
week. Isn't that enough money for you?  
(2)

**S:** You only give me \$15 a week. That's not even enough to buy  
\_\_\_\_\_ CD or take \_\_\_\_\_ girl to \_\_\_\_\_ movie.  
(3) (4) (5)

**M:** If you work, what are you going to do about school? You won't have  
\_\_\_\_\_ time to study. Do you know how hard it is to  
work and do well in school?  
(6)

**S:** Of course, I do. You know I'm \_\_\_\_\_ good student.  
I'm sure I won't have \_\_\_\_\_ problems working part-time.  
(7) (8)

**M:** Well, I'm worried about your grades falling. Maybe we should raise  
your allowance. That way you won't have to work.

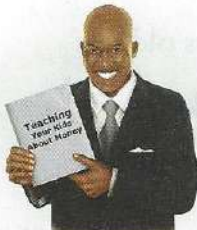
(continued)



- S:** I want to have my own money. I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ new clothes.  
(9)  
And I'm going to save money to buy \_\_\_\_\_ car someday.  
(10)
- M:** Why do you want a car? You have \_\_\_\_\_ bike.  
(11)
- S:** Bikes are great for exercise, but if my job is far away, I'll need a car for transportation.
- M:** So, you need \_\_\_\_\_ job to buy \_\_\_\_\_ car, and you need \_\_\_\_\_ car to get to work.  
(12) (13) (14)
- S:** Yes. You know, a lot of my friends work, and they're good students.
- M:** Well, let me think about it.
- S:** Mom, I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ baby anymore. I need \_\_\_\_\_ job.  
(15) (16)

## 14.4 The Definite Article

We use *the* to talk about a specific person or thing or a unique person or thing.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>The book</b> talks about kids and money.</p> <p><b>The author</b> wants to teach kids to be responsible with money.</p> 	<p>The sentences to the left refer to a specific object or person that is present. There is no other book or author present, so the listener knows which noun is referred to.</p>
<p>Many kids in <b>the world</b> are poor.</p> <p><b>The first</b> chapter talks about small children.</p> <p><b>The back</b> of the book has information about the author.</p> <p>When is <b>the right</b> time to talk to kids about money?</p>	<p>Sometimes there is only one of something. There is only one world, only one first chapter, only one back of a book. We use <i>the</i> with the following words: <i>first, second, next, last, only, same, and right</i>.</p>
<p>Where's <b>the</b> teacher? I have a question about <b>the</b> homework.</p>	<p>When students in the same class talk about <b>the</b> teacher, <b>the</b> textbook, <b>the</b> homework, <b>the</b> board, they are talking about a specific one that they share.</p>
<p>Did you read <b>the article about</b> money? Children often spend <b>the money they get from their grandparents</b>.</p>	<p>The sentences to the left refer to a specific noun that is defined in the phrase or clause after the noun: <i>the article about money; the money they get from their grandparents</i>.</p>



EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION												
<p>I'm going to <b>the</b> store after work. Do you need anything?  <b>The</b> bank is closed. I'll go tomorrow.  You should make an appointment with <b>the</b> doctor.</p>	<p>We often use <i>the</i> with certain familiar places and people when we refer to the one that we usually use:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>the bank</td> <td>the beach</td> <td>the bus</td> </tr> <tr> <td>the zoo</td> <td>the post office</td> <td>the train</td> </tr> <tr> <td>the park</td> <td>the doctor</td> <td>the movies</td> </tr> <tr> <td>the store</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table>	the bank	the beach	the bus	the zoo	the post office	the train	the park	the doctor	the movies	the store		
the bank	the beach	the bus											
the zoo	the post office	the train											
the park	the doctor	the movies											
the store													
<p>a. I saw <b>a child</b> in the supermarket with her mother.  b. <b>The child</b> kept saying, "Buy me this, buy me that."  a. The mother bought <b>some toys</b>.  b. She paid for <b>the toys</b> with her credit card.  a. The teenager saved <b>some money</b>.  b. She used <b>the money</b> to buy new clothes.</p>	<p>a. A singular noun is first introduced with <i>a</i> or <i>an</i>. A plural noun or noncount noun is first introduced with <i>some</i>.  b. When referring to the same noun again, the definite article <i>the</i> is used.</p>												
<p><b>My grandparents</b> gave me lots of presents.  <b>Kim's kids</b> have lots of toys.</p>	<p>Don't use the definite article with a possessive form.  <i>Wrong: My the grandparents</i>  <i>Wrong: Kim's the kids</i></p>												

**EXERCISE 5** Fill in the blanks with *the, a, an, any, or some*.



**Conversation 1: between two friends**

CD 4, TR 19

**A:** Where are you going?

**B:** To the bank. I want to  
(example)  
deposit            check.  
(1)

**A:**            bank is probably closed  
(2)  
now.

**B:** No problem. I have            ATM card. There's             
(3) (4)  
ATM on            corner of Wilson and Sheridan.  
(5)

**A:** I'll go with you. I want to get            cash.  
(6)  
(Later, at the ATM)

**B:** Oh, no.            ATM is out of order.  
(7)

**A:** Don't worry. There's            ATM in            supermarket  
(8) (9)  
near my house.



(continued)



### Conversation 2: between two students (A and B) at the same school

**A:** Is there \_\_\_\_\_ cafeteria at this school?  
(1)

**B:** Yes, there is. It's on \_\_\_\_\_ first floor of this building.  
(2)

**A:** I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee.  
(3)

**B:** You don't have to go to \_\_\_\_\_ cafeteria. There's \_\_\_\_\_ coffee machine on this floor.  
(4) (5)

**A:** I only have a one-dollar bill. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ change?  
(6)

**B:** There's \_\_\_\_\_ dollar-bill changer next to \_\_\_\_\_ coffee machine.  
(7) (8)

### Conversation 3: between two students in the same class

**A:** Where's \_\_\_\_\_ teacher? It's already 7:00.  
(1)

**B:** Maybe she's absent today.

**A:** I'll go to \_\_\_\_\_ English office and ask if anyone knows where she is.  
(2)

**B:** That's \_\_\_\_\_ good idea.  
(3)

(A few minutes later)

**A:** I talked to \_\_\_\_\_ secretary in \_\_\_\_\_ English office. She said that \_\_\_\_\_ teacher just called. She's going to be about 15 minutes late. She had \_\_\_\_\_ problem with her car.  
(4) (5) (6) (7)



## 14.5 Making Generalizations

When we make a generalization, we say that something is true of ALL members of a group.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
a. <b>Children</b> like to copy their friends. b. <b>A child</b> likes to copy his or her friends. a. <b>Video games</b> are expensive. b. <b>A video game</b> is expensive.	There are two ways to make a generalization about a countable subject: a. Use no article + plural noun. OR b. Use <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> + singular noun.
<b>Money</b> doesn't buy happiness. <b>Love</b> is more important than money. <b>Honesty</b> is a good quality.	To make a generalization about a noncount subject, don't use an article.
a. Children like <b>toys</b> . a. People like to use <b>credit cards</b> . b. Everyone needs <b>money</b> . b. No one has enough <b>time</b> .	Don't use an article to make a generalization about the object of the sentence. a. Use the plural form for count nouns. b. Noncount nouns are always singular.
<b>Language Note:</b> Do not use <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> with generalizations. <b>Compare:</b> I need <b>some money</b> to buy a new bike. Everyone needs <b>money</b> .	

**EXERCISE 6** Decide if the statement is general (true of all examples of the subject), or specific (true of the pictures on these pages or of specific objects that everyone in the class can agree on). Fill in the blanks with *a*, *an*, *the*, or  $\emptyset$  (for no article).

**EXAMPLES**  $\emptyset$  <sup>C</sup>hildren like  $\emptyset$  toys.  
**The** toys are broken.



- \_\_\_\_\_ American teenager likes to have a job.
- \_\_\_\_\_ teenager is shoveling snow to make money.
- \_\_\_\_\_ teenagers like \_\_\_\_\_ cars.
- \_\_\_\_\_ jeans are popular.
- \_\_\_\_\_ jeans are torn.
- \_\_\_\_\_ money is important for everyone.
- \_\_\_\_\_ money on the table is mine.
- Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ kids?
- \_\_\_\_\_ American kids like to spend money.







10. \_\_\_\_\_ child is saying to her mother, "I want."
11. Do you like to use \_\_\_\_\_ credit cards?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ credit card and the wallet are mine.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ textbooks at American colleges aren't free.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ textbook on the table costs \$39.99.
15. Where did you buy \_\_\_\_\_ textbooks for your courses?



### EXERCISE 7

**ABOUT YOU** Tell if you like the following or not. For count nouns (C), use the plural form. For noncount nouns (NC), use the singular form.

#### EXAMPLES

coffee (NC)      apple (C)  
I like coffee.      I don't like apples.

- |              |                    |               |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. tea (NC)  | 4. potato chip (C) | 7. cookie (C) |
| 2. corn (NC) | 5. milk (NC)       | 8. pizza (NC) |
| 3. peach (C) | 6. orange (C)      | 9. potato (C) |

### EXERCISE 8

Fill in the blanks with *the, a, an, some, any, or ∅* (for no article). In some cases, more than one answer is possible.



**A:** Where are you going?

**B:** I'm going to the post office. I need to buy \_\_\_\_\_ stamps.  
(example) (1)

**A:** I'll go with you. I want to mail \_\_\_\_\_ package to my parents.  
(2)

**B:** What's in \_\_\_\_\_ package?  
(3)

**A:** \_\_\_\_\_ shirts for my father, \_\_\_\_\_ coat for my sister,  
(4) (5)  
and \_\_\_\_\_ money for my mother.  
(6)

**B:** You should never send \_\_\_\_\_ money by mail.  
(7)

**A:** I know. My mother never received \_\_\_\_\_ money that I sent in my  
(8)  
last letter. But what can I do? I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ checking account.  
(9)

**B:** You can buy \_\_\_\_\_ money order at \_\_\_\_\_ bank.  
(10) (11)

**A:** How much does it cost?

**B:** Well, if you have \_\_\_\_\_ account in \_\_\_\_\_ bank, it's  
(12) (13)  
usually free. If not, you'll probably have to pay a fee.

**A:** What about \_\_\_\_\_ currency exchange on Wright Street? Do  
(14)  
they sell \_\_\_\_\_ money orders?  
(15)

**B:** Yes.





**A:** Why don't we go there? We can save \_\_\_\_\_ time. It's on  
(16)  
\_\_\_\_\_ same street as \_\_\_\_\_ post office.  
(17) (18)

**EXERCISE 9** Two women are talking. Fill in the blanks with *the, a, an, some, or ∅* (for no article). Answers may vary.



CD 4, TR 21

**A:** I bought my daughter \_\_\_\_\_ *a* \_\_\_\_\_ new doll for her birthday. She's  
(example)  
been asking me to buy it for her for two months. But she played with  
\_\_\_\_\_ doll for about three days and then lost interest.  
(1)

**B:** That's how \_\_\_\_\_ kids are. They don't understand  
(2)  
\_\_\_\_\_ value of money.  
(3)

**A:** You're right. They think that \_\_\_\_\_ money grows  
(4)  
on \_\_\_\_\_ trees.  
(5)



**B:** I suppose it's our fault. We have to set \_\_\_\_\_ good example. We  
(6)  
buy a lot of things we don't really need. We use \_\_\_\_\_ credit  
(7)  
cards instead of \_\_\_\_\_ cash and worry about paying the bill later.  
(8)

**A:** I suppose you're right. Last month we bought \_\_\_\_\_ new  
(9)  
flat-screen TV. We were at the store looking for a DVD player when we  
saw it. It's so much nicer than our old TV, so we decided to get it and  
put our \_\_\_\_\_ old TV in \_\_\_\_\_ basement. I suppose  
(10) (11)  
we didn't really need it.

**B:** Last weekend my husband bought \_\_\_\_\_ new CD  
(12)  
player. And he bought \_\_\_\_\_ new CDs. I asked him what  
(13)  
was wrong with our old CD player, and he said that it played only  
two CDs at a time. \_\_\_\_\_ new CD player has room for ten CDs.  
(14)

**A:** Well, when we complain about our kids, we should realize that they  
are imitating us.

**B:** We need to make \_\_\_\_\_ changes in our own behavior. I'm  
(15)  
going to start \_\_\_\_\_ budget tonight. I'm going to start saving  
(16)  
\_\_\_\_\_ money each month.  
(17)

**A:** Me too.

## 14.6 General or Specific with Quantity Words

If we put *of the* after a quantity word (*all, most, some, etc.*), we are referring to something specific. Without *of the*, the noun is general.

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p><b>General:</b> <b>All</b> children like toys. <b>Most</b> American homes have a television. <b>Many</b> teenagers have jobs. <b>Some</b> people are very rich. <b>Very few</b> people are billionaires.</p>	<p>We use <i>all, most, many, some, (a) few,</i> and <i>(a) little</i> before general nouns.</p>
<p><b>Specific:</b> <b>All (of) the students</b> in this class have a textbook. <b>Most of the students</b> in my art class have talent. <b>Many of the topics</b> in this book are about life in America. <b>Some of the people</b> in my building come from Haiti. <b>Very few of the students</b> in this class are American citizens. <b>Very little of the time</b> spent in this class is used for reading. <b>None of the classrooms</b> at this school has a telephone.</p>	<p>We use <i>all of the, most of the, many of the, some of the, (a) few of the, (a) little of the,</i> and <i>none of the</i> before specific nouns.</p> <p>After <i>all, of</i> is often omitted. <b>All the students</b> in this class have a textbook.</p> <p>After <i>none of the</i> + plural noun, a singular verb is correct. However, you will often hear a plural verb used. None of the classrooms <b>have</b> a telephone.</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> Remember there is a difference between <i>a few</i> and <i>(very) few, a little,</i> and <i>(very) little</i>. When we omit <i>a</i>, the emphasis is on the negative. We are saying the quantity is not enough. (See Lesson 5, Section 5.14 for more information.)</p> <p><b>Few</b> people wanted to have a party. The party was canceled. <b>A few</b> people came to the meeting. We discussed our plans.</p>	

**EXERCISE 10** Fill in the blanks with *all, most, some,* or *(very) few* to make a general statement about Americans. Discuss your answers.

**EXAMPLE** Most Americans have a car.

- \_\_\_\_\_ Americans have educational opportunities.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Americans have a TV.
- \_\_\_\_\_ American families have more than eight children.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Americans know where my native country is.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Americans shake hands when they meet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Americans use credit cards.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Americans are natives of America.
- \_\_\_\_\_ American citizens can vote.



9. \_\_\_\_\_ Americans speak my native language.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Americans are unfriendly to me.

**EXERCISE 11** **ABOUT YOU** Fill in the blanks with a quantity word to make a true statement about specific nouns. If you use *none*, change the verb to the singular form.

**EXAMPLES** \_\_\_\_\_ All of the \_\_\_\_\_ students in this class want to learn English.

\_\_\_\_\_ None of the students \_\_\_\_\_ in this class come from Australia.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ students in this class speak Spanish.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ students brought their books to class today.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ students are absent today.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ students want to learn English.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ students have jobs.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ students are married.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ students are going to return to their native countries.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ lessons in this book end with a review.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ pages in this book have pictures.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ tests in this class are hard.

## Bills, Bills, Bills

Before

You Read

1. How many bills a month do you get?
2. How do you pay your bills? By check? By credit card? Online?



CD 4, TR 22

Read the following conversation. Pay special attention to *other* and *another*.



(continued)

- A:** Last month I went to the doctor, and she sent me to get an X-ray. I got a bill and paid it, but then I got **another one**. Can you help me figure this out?
- B:** Let's see. Well, one bill is from the doctor. **The other one** is from the X-ray lab.
- A:** This is crazy. Why don't they send just one bill?
- B:** That's how it is in the U.S.
- A:** And look how high the bill is. I had one test and it cost over \$600.
- B:** Do you have insurance?
- A:** Yes.
- B:** Wait for your insurance to pay. After your insurance pays, they'll send you **another** bill that shows the amount you have to pay.
- A:** There are two phone numbers. Which one should I call?
- B:** The first number is for telephone service. **The other** number is a fax number.
- A:** How do I pay? Can I send cash?
- B:** Never send cash by mail. There are two methods of payment: One method is by check. **The other** is by credit card.
- A:** I hate paying bills. Every month I get a gas bill, a cell phone bill, an electricity bill, a cable bill, and **others**. This is so confusing.
- B:** Some people pay by check. But **others** set up direct payment. Call the electric company and all **the others** to see if you can do a direct debit<sup>3</sup>. That way you don't have to think about bills every month.

<sup>3</sup>A *direct debit* means the money goes straight from your checking account to pay the bill.



## 14.7 Another and Other

The use of *other* and *another* depends on whether a noun is singular or plural, definite or indefinite.

**The other + a singular noun is definite. It means the only one remaining.**

There are two numbers. \_\_\_\_\_ X

One number is the phone number. \_\_\_\_\_ X

The **other** number is the fax number. \_\_\_\_\_ X

**The other + a plural noun is definite. It means all the remaining ones.**

Call the electric company. \_\_\_\_\_ X

Call all **the other** companies. \_\_\_\_\_ X X X X X X

**Another + a singular noun is indefinite. It means one of several.**

One bill is from the electric company. \_\_\_\_\_ X

**Another** bill is from the gas company. \_\_\_\_\_ X X X X X X

**Other + a plural noun is indefinite. It means some, but not all, of the remaining ones.**

Some people pay by check. \_\_\_\_\_ X

**Other** people pay by credit. \_\_\_\_\_ X X X X X X

DR. MARY THOMPSON, M.D.  
20 BAKER ST. PHOENIX, AZ 85003  
PH: (602) 555-1215 FAX: (602) 555-1213  
CONSULTATION BY APPOINTMENT

DATE: 3/14/10

Morgan Sweet  
20 Maple Rd.  
Phoenix, AZ 85006

FOR PROFESSIONAL SERVICES

office visit	\$40.00
blood test	\$150.00
radiology	\$410.00
TOTAL DUE:	\$600.00
PAYMENT RECEIVED:	



## 14.8 More About *Another* and *Other*

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
One number is the phone number. The other <b>one</b> is the fax number. Call the electric company. Call the other <b>ones</b> too.	We can use the pronouns <i>one</i> or <i>ones</i> in place of the noun. For plurals, put the <b>s</b> on <i>one</i> , not on <i>other</i> . <i>Wrong:</i> the others ones
Some people pay by check. <b>Others</b> pay by credit card.	When the plural noun or pronoun ( <i>ones</i> ) is omitted, change <i>other</i> to <i>others</i> .
I have two bank accounts. One is for savings. <b>My other</b> account is for checking.	<i>The</i> is omitted when we use a possessive form. <i>Wrong:</i> My <i>the</i> other account is for checking.
I'm busy paying bills now. Can we talk <b>another</b> time? Can we talk <b>any other</b> time? Can we talk <b>some other</b> time?	After <i>some</i> or <i>any</i> , <i>another</i> is changed to <i>other</i> . <i>Wrong:</i> Can you come <i>any</i> another time?
After your insurance pays, your doctor will send you <b>another</b> bill. I received one doctor bill. Then I received <b>another</b> one.	<i>Another</i> is sometimes used to mean a different one, or one more.

### EXERCISE 12 Fill in the blanks with *the other*, *another*, *the others*, *others*, or *other*.

**EXAMPLE** I have a question about my doctor bill. I have another one about my light bill.

- I have one more bill to pay this month. I paid all \_\_\_\_\_ bills.
- I received one bill for the X-ray. Then I received \_\_\_\_\_ one.
- The doctor gave me two tests. One test was an X-ray. \_\_\_\_\_ one was a blood test.
- One side of the credit card has a name and number. \_\_\_\_\_ side has a place to sign your name.
- If I use the ATM at my bank, I don't have to pay a fee. If I use it at any \_\_\_\_\_ bank, I have to pay a fee.
- The bank is going to close now. Please come back some \_\_\_\_\_ time.
- Money is a noncount noun. \_\_\_\_\_ ones are *love*, *freedom*, and *time*.
- Some kids get an allowance for doing nothing. \_\_\_\_\_ have to do chores to get an allowance. But not all kids get an allowance.
- The child gets presents from his grandparents. One grandparent died, but \_\_\_\_\_ three are alive.
- The child has a lot of toys, but he wants \_\_\_\_\_ one.





**EXERCISE 13** A grandson (GS) and grandfather (GF) are talking. Fill in the blanks with *the other*, *another*, *the others*, or *other*.



CD 4, TR 23

**GS:** I want to buy another pair of sneakers.  
(example)

**GF:** What?! You already have about six pairs of sneakers. In fact, I bought you a new pair last month for your birthday.

**GS:** The new pair is fine, but \_\_\_\_\_ five are too small  
(1) for me. You know I'm growing very fast, so I threw them away.

**GF:** Why did you throw them away? \_\_\_\_\_ boys  
(2) in your neighborhood could use them.

**GS:** They wouldn't like them. They're out of style.

**GF:** You kids are so wasteful today. What's wrong with the sneakers I bought you last month? If they fit you, why do you need \_\_\_\_\_ pair?  
(3)

**GS:** Everybody in my class at school has red sneakers with the laces tied backward. The sneakers you gave me are not in style anymore.

**GF:** Do you always have to have what all \_\_\_\_\_ kids in  
(4) school have? Can't you think for yourself?

**GS:** Didn't you ask your parents for stuff when you were in junior high?

**GF:** My parents were poor, and my two brothers and I worked to help them. When we couldn't wear our clothes anymore because we outgrew them, we gave them to \_\_\_\_\_ families nearby.  
(5) And our neighbors gave us the things that their children outgrew. One neighbor had two sons. One son was a year older than me. \_\_\_\_\_ one was two years younger. So we  
(6) were constantly passing clothes back and forth.

**GS:** What about style? When clothes went out of style, didn't you throw them out?



(continued)

**GF:** No. We never threw things out. Styles were not as important to us then. We didn't waste our parents' money thinking of styles. In fact, my oldest brother worked in a factory and gave all his salary to our parents. My \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(7)</sup> brother and I helped our father in his business. My dad didn't give us a salary or an allowance. It was our duty to help him.

**GS:** You don't understand how important it is to look like all \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(8)</sup> kids.

**GF:** I guess I don't. I'm old-fashioned. Every generation has \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(9)</sup> way of looking at things.

## The High Cost of a College Education

Before  
You Read

1. Have you received any financial aid to take this course?
2. Do you know how much it costs to get a college degree in the U.S.?



CD 4, TR 24

**Read the following conversation between a son (S) and a dad (D) and the Web article that follows. Pay attention to *one, some, any* (indefinite pronouns), and *it* and *them* (definite pronouns).**

**S:** I decided not to go to college, Dad.

**D:** What? Do you know how important a college education is?

**S:** College is expensive. Besides, if I don't go to college now, I can start making money immediately. As soon as I earn *some*, I'd like to buy a car. Besides, my friends aren't going to college.





**Did You Know?**

*Almost two-thirds of full-time students receive some form of financial aid: grants, loans, and scholarships.*

**D:** I'm not concerned about **them**. I'm interested in you and your future. I was just reading an article in a magazine about how much more money a college graduate earns than a high school graduate. Here's the article. Look at **it**. It says, "According to U.S. Census Bureau statistics, people with a bachelor's degree earn nearly twice as much as those with only a high school diploma. Over a lifetime, the gap in earning potential between a high school diploma and a B.A. (or higher) is more than \$1,000,000."

**S:** Wow. I never realized that I could earn much more with a college degree than without **one**. But look here. The article also says, "In the 2008–2009 school year, the average tuition at a four-year private college was \$25,143, and at a four-year public college, it was \$6,585." How can you afford to send me to college?

**D:** I didn't just start to think about your college education today. I started to think about **it** when you were born. We saved money each month to buy a house, and we bought **one**. And we saved **some** each month for your college tuition.

**S:** That's great, Dad.

**D:** I also want you to apply for financial aid. There are grants, loans, and scholarships you should also look into. Your grades are good. I think you should apply for a scholarship.

**S:** I'll need to get an application.

**D:** I already thought of that. I brought **one** home today. Let's fill **it** out together.

**S:** Dad, if a college degree is so important to you, why didn't you get **one**?

**D:** When I was your age, we didn't live in the U.S. We were very poor and had to help our parents. You have a lot of opportunities for grants and scholarships, but we didn't have **any** when I was young.

**S:** Thanks for thinking about this from the day I was born.

http://www.student\*financial\*aid.com

## Grants and Scholarships

Grants and scholarships provide aid that does not have to be repaid. However, some require that recipients maintain good grades or take certain courses.

## Loans

Loans are another type of financial aid and are available to both students and parents. Like a car loan or a mortgage for a house, an education loan must eventually be repaid. Often, payments do not begin until the student finishes school. The interest rate on education loans is commonly lower than for other types of loans.

**Amount You Would Need to Save to Have \$10,000 Available  
When Your Child Begins College**  
(Assuming a 5 percent interest rate.)

If you start saving when your child is	Number of years of saving	Approximate monthly savings	Amount Available When Child Begins College		
			Principal	Interest earned	Total savings
Newborn	18	\$29	\$6,197	\$3,803	\$10,000
Age 4	14	41	6,935	3,065	10,000
Age 8	10	64	7,736	2,264	10,000
Age 12	6	119	8,601	1,399	10,000
Age 16	2	397	9,531	469	10,000

Source of chart: <http://www.ed.gov/pubs/Prepare/pt4.html>



## 14.9 Definite and Indefinite Pronouns

EXAMPLES	EXPLANATION
<p>I've always thought about <i>your education</i>. I started to think about <b>it</b> when you were born. I received <i>two college applications</i>. I have to fill <b>them</b> out.</p> <p>The father wants <i>his son</i> to go to college. The father is going to help <b>him</b>.</p>	<p>We use definite pronouns <i>him, her, them,</i> and <i>it</i> to refer to definite count nouns.</p>
<p>A <i>college degree</i> is important. It's hard to make a lot of money without <b>one</b>.</p> <p>I don't have <i>a scholarship</i>. I hope I can get <b>one</b>.</p>	<p>We use the indefinite pronoun <i>one</i> to refer to an indefinite singular count noun.</p>
<p>a. The father knew it was important to save <i>money</i>. He saved <b>some</b> every month.</p> <p>b. I received <i>five brochures</i> for colleges. Did you receive <b>any</b>?</p> <p>c. You have a lot of <i>opportunities</i> today. When I was your age, we didn't have <b>any</b>.</p>	<p>We use <i>some</i> (for affirmative statements) and <i>any</i> (for negative statements and questions) to refer to an indefinite noncount noun (a) or an indefinite plural count noun (b) and (c).</p>
<p><b>Language Note:</b> We often use <i>any</i> and <i>some</i> before <i>more</i>.</p> <p>Dad, I don't have enough money. I need <b>some more</b>.</p> <p>Son, I'm not going to give you <b>any more</b>.</p>	

### EXERCISE 14 A mother (M) is talking to her teenage daughter (D) about art school. Fill in the blanks with *one* or *it*.



CD 4, TR 25

**M:** I have some information about the state university. Do you want to look at it with me?  
(example)

**D:** I don't know, Mom. I don't know if I'm ready to go to college when I graduate.

**M:** Why not? We've been planning for \_\_\_\_\_ since the day you were born.  
(1)

**D:** College is not for everyone. I want to be an artist.

**M:** You can go to college and major in art. I checked out information about the art curriculum at the state university. It seems to have a very good program. Do you want to see information about \_\_\_\_\_?  
(2)

**D:** I'm not really interested in college. To be an artist, I don't need a college degree.



(continued)

**M:** But it's good to have \_\_\_\_\_ anyway. (3)

**D:** I don't know why. In college, I'll have to study general courses, too, like math and biology. You know I hate math. I'm not good at \_\_\_\_\_. (4)

**M:** Well, maybe we should look at art schools. There's one downtown. Do you want to visit \_\_\_\_\_? (5)

**D:** Yes, I'd like to. We can probably find information about \_\_\_\_\_ on the Web too. (6)

*(Looking at the art school's Web site)*

**D:** This school sounds great. Let's call and ask for an application.

**M:** I think you can get \_\_\_\_\_ online. Oh, yes, here it is. (7)

**D:** Let's print a copy of \_\_\_\_\_. (8)

**M:** You can fill \_\_\_\_\_ out online and submit \_\_\_\_\_ electronically. (9) (10)

**EXERCISE 15** **ABOUT YOU** Answer each question. Substitute the underlined words with an indefinite pronoun (*one, some, any*) or a definite pronoun (*it, them*).

**EXAMPLES** Do you have a pen with you?  
Yes, I have one.

Are you using your pen now?  
No. I'm not using it now.

1. Does this school have a library?
2. How often do you use the library?
3. Do you have a dictionary?
4. When do you use your dictionary?
5. Did you buy any textbooks this semester?
6. How much did you pay for your textbooks?
7. Did the teacher give any homework last week?
8. Where did you do the homework?
9. Do you have any American neighbors?
10. Do you know your neighbors?
11. Does this school have a cafeteria?



12. Do you use the cafeteria?
13. Did you receive any mail today?
14. What time does your letter carrier deliver your mail?

**EXERCISE 16** This is a conversation between a teenage girl (A) and her mother (B). Fill in the blanks with *one, some, any, it, them, a, an, the, or Ø* (for no article).



CD 4, TR 26

**A:** Can I have 15 dollars?

**B:** What for?

**A:** I have to buy \_\_\_\_\_ *a* \_\_\_\_\_ poster of my favorite singer.  
(example)

**B:** I gave you \_\_\_\_\_ money last week. What did you do  
(1)  
with \_\_\_\_\_?  
(2)

**A:** I spent \_\_\_\_\_ on a CD.  
(3)

**B:** No, you can't have \_\_\_\_\_ more money until next  
(4)  
week. Besides, why do you need a poster? You already  
have \_\_\_\_\_ in your room.  
(5)

**A:** I took \_\_\_\_\_ down. I don't even like that singer anymore.  
(6)

**B:** What happened to all \_\_\_\_\_ money Grandpa gave you for  
(7)  
your birthday?

**A:** I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ more money. I spent \_\_\_\_\_.  
(8) (9)

**B:** You have to learn that \_\_\_\_\_ money doesn't grow on trees.  
(10)  
If you want me to give you \_\_\_\_\_, you'll have to work for it.  
(11)  
You can start by cleaning your room.

**A:** But I cleaned \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks ago.  
(12)

**B:** That was two weeks ago. It's dirty again.

**A:** I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time. I have to meet my friends.  
(13)

**B:** You can't go out. You need to do your homework.

**A:** I don't have \_\_\_\_\_. Please let me have 15 dollars.  
(14)

**B:** When I was your age, I had \_\_\_\_\_ job.  
(15)



(continued)

**A:** I wanted to get a job last summer, but I couldn't find \_\_\_\_\_.

(16)

**B:** You didn't try hard enough. When I worked, I gave my parents half of \_\_\_\_\_ money I earned. You kids today have

(17)

\_\_\_\_\_ easy life.

(18)

**A:** Why do \_\_\_\_\_ parents always say that to \_\_\_\_\_ kids?

(19)

(20)

**B:** Because it's true. It's time you learn that \_\_\_\_\_ life is hard.

(21)

**A:** I bet Grandpa said that to you when you were \_\_\_\_\_ child.

(22)

**B:** And I bet you'll say it to your kids when you're \_\_\_\_\_ adult.

(23)

## Summary of Lesson 14

### 1. Articles

#### INDEFINITE




















	Count—Singular	Count—Plural	Noncount
General	A/An A child likes toys.	Ø Article Children like toys. I love children.	Ø Article Money can't buy happiness. Everyone needs money.
Indefinite	A/An I bought a toy.	Some/Any I bought some toys. I didn't buy any games.	Some/Any I spent some money. I didn't buy any candy.
Classification	A/An A toddler is a young child.	Ø Article Teenagers are young adults.	_____

#### DEFINITE

	Count—Singular	Count—Plural	Noncount
Specific	The toy on the floor is for the baby. The teacher is explaining the grammar.	The toys on the table are for you. The students are listening to the teacher.	The money on the table is mine. The information about definite articles is helpful.
Unique	The Internet is a great tool.	The Hawaiian Islands are beautiful.	_____



## 2. Other/Another

	Definite	Indefinite
Singular	  the other book my other book the other one the other	     another book some/any other book my other book another one another
Plural	      the other books my other books the other ones the others	      other books some/any other books my other books other ones others

### 3. Indefinite Pronouns—Use *one/some/any* to substitute for indefinite nouns.

I need a quarter. Do you have **one**?

I need some pennies. You have **some**.

I don't have any change. Do you have **any**?

## Editing Advice

### 1. Use *the* after a quantity word when the noun is definite.

<sup>the</sup>  
 Most of students in my class are from Romania.

### 2. Be careful with *most* and *almost*.

<sup>Most of</sup>  
~~Almost~~ my teachers are very patient.

### 3. Use a plural count noun after a quantity expression.

A few of my friend<sup>s</sup> live in Canada.

### 4. *Another* is always singular.

<sup>Other</sup>  
 Some teachers are strict. ~~Another~~ teachers are easy.

### 5. Use an indefinite pronoun to substitute for an indefinite noun.

<sup>one</sup>  
 I need to borrow a pen. I didn't bring ~~it~~ today.

### 6. *A* and *an* are always singular.

She has ~~a~~ beautiful eyes.

7. Use *a* or *an* for a definition or a classification of a singular count noun.

The Statue of Liberty is <sup>a</sup>monument.

## Editing Quiz

Some of the shaded words and phrases have mistakes. Find the mistakes and correct them. If the shaded words are correct, write *C*.

I'm <sup>C</sup>a teenager and I know this: <sup>(example)</sup>the teenagers think about <sup>(example)</sup>the money. They want <sup>(1)</sup>money to buy <sup>(2)</sup>a new jeans or sneakers. Or they want money to go out with their friends. They might want to go to <sup>(4)</sup>the restaurant or to <sup>(5)</sup>a movie. <sup>(6)</sup>Almost my friends try to get a job in the summer to make <sup>(7)</sup>some money. At the beginning of every summer, my friends always say, "I need <sup>(8)</sup>a job. Do you know where I can find <sup>(9)</sup>it?"

One of my <sup>(10)</sup>friend found a summer job at Bender's. Bender's is <sup>(11)</sup>big bookstore. <sup>(12)</sup>Another friend found a job at a summer camp. But I have <sup>(13)</sup>the other way to make money. I prefer to work in my neighborhood. <sup>(14)</sup>Most of people in my neighborhood are working or elderly. I ask my neighbors if they have <sup>(15)</sup>a work for me. Some neighbors pay me to take care of <sup>(16)</sup>the lawn in front of their house. <sup>(17)</sup>Another neighbors pay me to clean their garage. In the winter, I shovel <sup>(18)</sup>sidewalks in front of their houses. I like these jobs. I love <sup>(19)</sup>a music and I listen to my favorite music while I work.

What do I do with <sup>(20)</sup>the money I get from my jobs? I buy songs on <sup>(21)</sup>Internet. I used to buy CDs, but I only liked a few songs. <sup>(22)</sup>Some of songs on the CDs were great but I never listened to <sup>(23)</sup>another. Now I can download <sup>(24)</sup>the songs I like and not pay for all <sup>(25)</sup>the other songs on a CD. This helps me save money. I have an old MP3 player I got from my grandfather for my twelfth birthday, but I want to buy <sup>(26)</sup>other one. <sup>(27)</sup>The new ones are smaller and hold more songs. If I keep working hard, I know I'll be able to buy all <sup>(28)</sup>the things I want.



# Lesson 14 Test/Review

**PART 1** Fill in the blanks with *the, a, an, some, any, or ∅* (for no article). In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

**A:** Do you want to come to my house tonight? I rented some (example) movies. We can make \_\_\_\_\_ (1) popcorn and watch \_\_\_\_\_ (2) movies together.

**B:** Thanks, but I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ (3) party. Do you want to go with me?

**A:** Where's it going to be?

**B:** It's going to be at Michael's apartment.

**A:** Who's going to be at \_\_\_\_\_ (4) party?

**B:** Most of \_\_\_\_\_ (5) students in my English class will be there. Each student is going to bring \_\_\_\_\_ (6) food.

**A:** In the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ (7) life is strange. In my country, \_\_\_\_\_ (8) people don't have to bring \_\_\_\_\_ (9) food to a party.

**B:** That's the way it is in my country, too. But we're in \_\_\_\_\_ (10) U.S. now. I'm going to bake \_\_\_\_\_ (11) cake. You can make \_\_\_\_\_ (12) special dish from your country.

**A:** You know I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (13) terrible cook.

**B:** Don't worry. You can buy something. My friend Max is going to buy \_\_\_\_\_ (14) crackers and cheese. Why don't you bring \_\_\_\_\_ (15) salami or roast beef?

**A:** But I don't eat \_\_\_\_\_ (16) meat. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ (17) vegetarian.

**B:** Well, you can bring \_\_\_\_\_ (18) bowl of fruit.

**A:** That's \_\_\_\_\_ (19) good idea. What time does \_\_\_\_\_ (20) party start?

**B:** At 8 P.M.

(continued)

A: I have to take my brother to \_\_\_\_\_ airport at 6:30. I don't know  
(21)  
if I'll be back on time.

B: You don't have to arrive at 8:00 exactly. I'll give you \_\_\_\_\_  
(22)  
address, and you can arrive any time you want.

**PART 2** Fill in the blanks with *other*, *others*, *another*, or *the other*.

A: I don't like my apartment.

B: Why not?

A: It's very small. It only has two closets. One is big, but \_\_\_\_\_  
(example)  
is very small.

B: That's not very serious. Is that the only problem? Are there  
\_\_\_\_\_ problems?  
(1)

A: There are many \_\_\_\_\_.  
(2)

B: Such as?

A: Well, the landlord doesn't provide enough heat in the winter.

B: Hmm. That's a real problem. Did you complain to him?

A: I did, but he says that all \_\_\_\_\_ tenants are happy.  
(3)

B: Why don't you look for \_\_\_\_\_ apartment?  
(4)

A: I have two roommates. One wants to move, but \_\_\_\_\_  
(5)  
likes it here.

B: Well, if one wants to stay and \_\_\_\_\_ two want to move,  
(6)  
why don't you move and look for \_\_\_\_\_ roommate?  
(7)

**PART 3** Fill in the blanks with *one*, *some*, *any*, *it*, or *them*.

**EXAMPLE** I have a computer, but my roommate doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_ *one*.

1. Do you want to use my bicycle? I won't need \_\_\_\_\_ this  
afternoon.

2. I rented a movie. We can watch \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.

3. My English teacher gives some homework every day, but she doesn't  
give \_\_\_\_\_ on the weekends.



4. My class has a lot of Mexican students. Does your class have \_\_\_\_\_?
5. I wrote two compositions last week, but I got bad grades because I wrote \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly.
6. I don't have any problems with English, but my roommate has \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I can't remember the teacher's name. Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_?
8. You won't need any paper for the test, but you'll need \_\_\_\_\_ for the composition.
9. I went to the library to find some books in my language, but I couldn't find \_\_\_\_\_.

## Expansion

### Classroom

#### Activities

Fill in the blanks with *all*, *most*, *some*, *a few*, or *very few* to make a general statement about your native country or another country you know well. Find a partner from a different country, if possible, and compare your answers.

- a. \_\_\_\_\_ banks are safe places to put your money.
- b. \_\_\_\_\_ doctors make a lot of money.
- c. \_\_\_\_\_ teenagers work.
- d. \_\_\_\_\_ children work.
- e. \_\_\_\_\_ teachers are rich.
- f. \_\_\_\_\_ government officials are rich.
- g. \_\_\_\_\_ children get an allowance.
- h. \_\_\_\_\_ people work on Saturdays.
- i. \_\_\_\_\_ businesses are closed on Sundays.
- j. \_\_\_\_\_ families own a car.
- k. \_\_\_\_\_ women work outside the home.
- l. \_\_\_\_\_ people have a college education.
- m. \_\_\_\_\_ people have servants.
- n. \_\_\_\_\_ married couples have their own apartment.
- o. \_\_\_\_\_ old people live with their grown children.
- p. \_\_\_\_\_ people speak English.
- q. \_\_\_\_\_ children study English in school.

## Talk

### About It

① The following sayings and proverbs are about money. Discuss the meaning of each one. Do you have a similar saying in your native language?

- All that glitters isn't gold.
- Money is the root of all evil.
- Friendship and money don't mix.
- Another day, another dollar.
- Money talks.

② Discuss ways to save money. Discuss difficulties in saving money.

③ Discuss this saying: The difference between men and boys is the price of their toys.

## Write

### About It

① Do you think kids should get an allowance from their parents? How much? Does it depend on the child's age? Should the child have to work for the money? Write a few paragraphs explaining your point of view.

② Write a short composition giving advice to teenagers on how to earn and save money.

### How Teenagers Can Make Money

Teenagers often want to make some money. One way to make money is by taking a job in the summer.

Teenagers can work at fast-food restaurants or summer camps, or by doing gardening work for their neighbors. Another way to make money ...



For more practice using grammar in context, please visit our Web site.



# Appendices

## Appendix A

### Spelling and Pronunciation of Verbs

#### Spelling of the -s Form of Verbs

Rule	Base Form	-s Form
Add -s to most verbs to make the -s form.	hope eat	hopes eats
When the base form ends in <i>ss</i> , <i>zz</i> , <i>sh</i> , <i>ch</i> , or <i>x</i> , add -es and pronounce an extra syllable, /əz/.	miss buzz wash catch fix	misses buzzes washes catches fixes
When the base form ends in a consonant + <i>y</i> , change the <i>y</i> to <i>i</i> and add -es.	carry worry	carries worries
When the base form ends in a vowel + <i>y</i> , do not change the <i>y</i> .	pay obey	pays obeys
Add -es to <i>go</i> and <i>do</i> .	go do	goes does

#### Three Pronunciations of the -s Form

We pronounce /s/ if the verb ends in these voiceless sounds: /p t k f/.	hope—hopes eat—eats	pick—picks laugh—laughs
We pronounce /z/ if the verb ends in most voiced sounds.	live—lives grab—grabs read—reads	run—runs sing—sings borrow—borrows
When the base form ends in <i>ss</i> , <i>zz</i> , <i>sh</i> , <i>ch</i> , <i>x</i> , <i>se</i> , <i>ge</i> , or <i>ce</i> , we pronounce an extra syllable, /əz/.	miss—misses buzz—buzzes wash—washes watch—watches	fix—fixes use—uses change—changes dance—dances
These verbs have a change in the vowel sound.	do/ <b>du</b> /—does/ <b>dəz</b> /	say/ <b>sei</b> /—says/ <b>sez</b> /

## Spelling of the *-ing* Form of Verbs

Rule	Base Form	<i>-ing</i> Form
Add <i>-ing</i> to most verbs.  <b>Note:</b> Do not remove the <i>y</i> for the <i>-ing</i> form.	eat go study carry	eating going studying carrying
For a one-syllable verb that ends in a consonant + vowel + consonant (CVC), double the final consonant and add <i>-ing</i> .	<p>p l a n       C V C</p> <p>s t o p       C V C</p> <p>s i t       C V C</p> <p>g r a b       C V C</p>	planning  stopping  sitting  grabbing
Do not double the final <i>w</i> , <i>x</i> , or <i>y</i> .	show mix stay	showing mixing staying
For a two-syllable word that ends in CVC, double the final consonant only if the last syllable is stressed.	refér admit begin rebél	referring admitting beginning rebellling
When the last syllable of a multi-syllable word is not stressed, do not double the final consonant.	lísten ópen óffer límit devélop	listening opening offering limiting developing
If the word ends in a consonant + <i>e</i> , drop the <i>e</i> before adding <i>-ing</i> .	live take write arrive	living taking writing arriving



## Spelling of the Past Tense of Regular Verbs

Rule	Base Form	-ed Form
Add <i>-ed</i> to the base form to make the past tense of most regular verbs.	start kick	started kicked
When the base form ends in <i>e</i> , add <i>-d</i> only.	die live	died lived
When the base form ends in a consonant + <i>y</i> , change the <i>y</i> to <i>i</i> and add <i>-ed</i> .	carry worry	carried worried
When the base form ends in a vowel + <i>y</i> , do not change the <i>y</i> .	destroy stay	destroyed stayed
For a one-syllable word that ends in a consonant + vowel + consonant (CVC), double the final consonant and add <i>-ed</i> .	s t o p       C V C p l u g       C V C	stopped  plugged
Do not double the final <i>w</i> or <i>x</i> .	sew fix	sewed fixed
For a two-syllable word that ends in CVC, double the final consonant only if the last syllable is stressed.	occur permit	occurred permitted
When the last syllable of a multi-syllable word is not stressed, do not double the final consonant.	open happen develop	opened happened developed

## Pronunciation of Past Forms that End in *-ed*

### The past tense with *-ed* has three pronunciations.

We pronounce a /t/ if the base form ends in these voiceless sounds: /p, k, f, s, ʃ, tʃ/.	jump—jumped cook—cooked	cough—coughed kiss—kissed	wash—washed watch—watched
We pronounce a /d/ if the base form ends in most voiced sounds.	rub—rubbed drag—dragged love—loved bathe—bathed use—used	charge—charged glue—glued massage—massaged name—named learn—learned	bang—banged call—called fear—feared free—freed stay—stayed
We pronounce an extra syllable /əd/ if the base form ends in a /t/ or /d/ sound.	wait—waited hate—hated	want—wanted add—added	need—needed decide—decided

# Appendix B

## Irregular Noun Plurals

Singular	Plural	Explanation
man woman tooth foot goose	men women teeth feet geese	Vowel change <b>(Note:</b> The first vowel in <i>women</i> is pronounced /I/.)
sheep fish deer	sheep fish deer	No change
child person mouse	children people (OR persons) mice	Different word form
	(eye)glasses belongings clothes goods groceries jeans pajamas pants/slacks scissors shorts	No singular form
alumnus cactus radius stimulus syllabus	alumni cacti (OR cactuses) radii stimuli syllabi (OR syllabuses)	<i>us</i> → <i>i</i>
analysis crisis hypothesis oasis parenthesis thesis	analyses crises hypotheses oases parentheses theses	<i>is</i> → <i>es</i>
appendix index	appendices (OR appendixes) indices (OR indexes)	<i>ix</i> → <i>ices</i> OR → <i>ixes</i> <i>ex</i> → <i>ices</i> OR → <i>exes</i>



Singular	Plural	Explanation
bacterium curriculum datum medium memorandum criterion phenomenon	bacteria curricula data media memoranda criteria phenomena	<i>um</i> → <i>a</i>     <i>ion</i> → <i>a</i> <i>on</i> → <i>a</i>
alga formula vertebra	algae formulae (OR formulas) vertebrae	<i>a</i> → <i>ae</i>

## Appendix C


### Spelling Rules for Adverbs Ending in *-ly*

Adjective Ending	Examples	Adverb Ending	Adverb
Most endings	careful quiet serious	Add <i>-ly</i> .	carefully quietly seriously
<i>y</i>	easy happy lucky	Change <i>y</i> to <i>i</i> and add <i>-ly</i> .	easily happily luckily
<i>e</i>	nice free	Keep the <i>e</i> and add <i>-ly</i> .*	nicely freely
consonant + <i>le</i>	simple comfortable double	Drop the <i>e</i> and add <i>-ly</i> .	simply comfortably doubly
<i>ic</i>	basic enthusiastic	Add <i>-ally</i> **	basically enthusiastically
<b>Exceptions:</b>			
*true—truly			
**public—publicly			

# Appendix D

## Metric Conversion Chart

### Length

When You Know	Symbol	Multiply by	To Find	Symbol
inches	in	2.54	centimeters	cm
feet 	ft	30.5	centimeters	cm
feet	ft	0.3	meters	m
yards	yd	0.91	meters	m
miles	mi	1.6	kilometers	km
<b>Metric:</b>				
centimeters	cm	0.39	inches	in
centimeters	cm	0.03	feet	ft
meters	m	3.28	feet	ft
meters	m	1.09	yards	yd
kilometers	km	0.62	miles	mi
<b>Note:</b> 12 inches = 1 foot 3 feet / 36 inches = 1 yard				

### Area

When You Know	Symbol	Multiply by	To Find	Symbol
square inches	in <sup>2</sup>	6.5	square centimeters	cm <sup>2</sup>
square feet	ft <sup>2</sup>	0.09	square meters	m <sup>2</sup>
square yards	yd <sup>2</sup>	0.8	square meters	m <sup>2</sup>
square miles	mi <sup>2</sup>	2.6	square kilometers	km <sup>2</sup>
<b>Metric:</b>				
square centimeters	cm <sup>2</sup>	0.16	square inches	in <sup>2</sup>
square meters	m <sup>2</sup>	10.76	square feet	ft <sup>2</sup>
square meters	m <sup>2</sup>	1.2	square yards	yd <sup>2</sup>
square kilometers	km <sup>2</sup>	0.39	square miles	mi <sup>2</sup>



## Weight (Mass)

When You Know	Symbol	Multiply by	To Find	Symbol
ounces	oz	28.35	grams	g
pounds	lb	0.45	kilograms	kg
<b>Metric:</b>				
grams	g	0.04	ounces	oz
kilograms	kg	2.2	pounds	lb
<b>Note:</b> 1 pound = 16 ounces				

## Volume

When You Know	Symbol	Multiply by	To Find	Symbol
fluid ounces	fl oz	30.0	milliliters	mL
pints	pt	0.47	liters	L
quarts	qt	0.95	liters	L
gallons	gal	3.8	liters	L
<b>Metric:</b>				
milliliters	mL	0.03	fluid ounces	fl oz
liters	L	2.11	pints	pt
liters	L	1.05	quarts	qt
liters	L	0.26	gallons	gal

## Temperature

When You Know	Symbol	Do this	To Find	Symbol
degrees Fahrenheit	°F	Subtract 32, then multiply by $\frac{5}{9}$	degrees Celsius	°C
<b>Metric:</b>				
degrees Celsius	°C	Multiply by $\frac{9}{5}$ , then add 32	degrees Fahrenheit	°F

## Sample temperatures

Fahrenheit	Celsius
0	- 18
10	-12
20	-7
32	0
40	4
50	10
60	16
70	21
80	27
90	32
100	38
212	100

## Appendix E

### The Verb *GET*

*Get* has many meanings. Here is a list of the most common ones:

- get something = receive  
I got a letter from my father.
- get + (to) place = arrive  
I got home at six. What time do you get to school?
- get + object + infinitive = persuade  
She got him to wash the dishes.
- get + past participle = become
 

get acquainted	get worried	get hurt	get engaged
get lost	get bored	get married	get accustomed to
get confused	get divorced	get used to	get scared
get tired	get dressed		

 They got married in 1989.
- get + adjective = become
 

get hungry	get sleepy	get rich	get dark	get nervous
get angry	get well	get old	get upset	get fat

 It gets dark at 6:30.
- get an illness = catch  
While she was traveling, she got malaria.



- get a joke or an idea = understand  
Everybody except Tom laughed at the joke. He didn't get it.  
The boss explained the project to us, but I didn't get it.
- get ahead = advance  
He works very hard because he wants to get ahead in his job.
- get along (well) (with someone) = have a good relationship  
She doesn't get along with her mother-in-law.  
Do you and your roommate get along well?
- get around to something = find the time to do something  
I wanted to write my brother a letter yesterday, but I didn't get around to it.
- get away = escape  
The police chased the thief, but he got away.
- get away with something = escape punishment  
He cheated on his taxes and got away with it.
- get back = return  
He got back from his vacation last Saturday.
- get back at someone = get revenge  
My brother wants to get back at me for stealing his girlfriend.
- get back to someone = communicate with someone at a later time  
The boss can't talk to you today. Can she get back to you tomorrow?
- get by = have just enough but nothing more  
On her salary, she's just getting by. She can't afford a car or a vacation.
- get in trouble = be caught and punished for doing something wrong  
They got in trouble for cheating on the test.
- get in(to) = enter a car  
She got in the car and drove away quickly.
- get out (of) = leave a car  
When the taxi arrived at the theater, everyone got out.
- get on = seat yourself on a bicycle, motorcycle, horse  
She got on the motorcycle and left.
- get on = enter a train, bus, airplane  
She got on the bus and took a seat in the back.
- get off = leave a bicycle, motorcycle, horse, train, bus, airplane  
They will get off the train at the next stop.
- get out of something = escape responsibility  
My boss wants me to help him on Saturday, but I'm going to try to get out of it.

(continued)

- get over something = recover from an illness or disappointment  
She has the flu this week. I hope she gets over it soon.
- get rid of someone or something = free oneself of someone or something undesirable  
My apartment has roaches, and I can't get rid of them.
- get through (to someone) = communicate, often by telephone  
I tried to call my mother many times, but her line was busy. I couldn't get through.
- get through (with something) = finish  
I can meet you after I get through with my homework.
- get together = meet with another person  
I'd like to see you again. When can we get together?
- get up = arise from bed  
He woke up at six o'clock, but he didn't get up until 6:30.

## Appendix F

### MAKE and DO

Some expressions use *make*. Others use *do*.

Make	Do
make a date/an appointment	do (the) homework
make a plan	do an exercise
make a decision	do the cleaning, laundry, dishes, washing, etc.
make a telephone call	do the shopping
make a meal (breakfast, lunch, dinner)	do one's best
make a mistake	do a favor
make an effort	do the right/wrong thing
make an improvement	do a job
make a promise	do business
make money	What do you do for a living? (asks about a job)
make noise	How do you do? (said when you meet someone for the first time)
make the bed	



## Appendix G

### Prepositions of Time

- **in** the morning: He takes a shower *in* the morning.
- **in** the afternoon: He takes a shower *in* the afternoon.
- **in** the evening: He takes a shower *in* the evening.
- **at** night: He takes a shower *at* night.
- **in** the summer, fall, winter, spring: He takes classes *in* the summer.
- **on** that/this day: May 4 is my birthday. I became a citizen *on* that day.
- **on** the weekend: He studies *on* the weekend.
- **on** a specific day: His birthday is *on* March 5.
- **in** a month: His birthday is *in* March.
- **in** a year: He was born *in* 1978.
- **in** a century: People didn't use cars *in* the 19th century.
- **on** a day: I don't have class *on* Monday.
- **at** a specific time: My class begins *at* 12:30.
- **from** a time to (OR **till** OR **until**) another time: My class is *from* 12:30 to (OR *till* OR *until*) 3:30.
- **in** a number of hours, days, weeks, months, years: She will graduate *in* three weeks. (This means "after" three weeks.)
- **for** a number of hours, days, weeks, months, years: She was in Mexico *for* three weeks. (This means during the period of three weeks.)
- **by** a time: Please finish your test *by* six o'clock. (This means "no later than" six o'clock.)
- **until** a time: I lived with my parents *until* I came to the U.S. (This means "all the time before.")
- **during** the movie, class, meeting: He slept *during* the meeting.
- **about/around** six o'clock: The movie will begin *about* six o'clock. People will arrive *around* 5:45.
- **in** the past/future: *In* the past, she never exercised.
- **at** present: *At* present, the days are getting longer.
- **in** the beginning/end: *In* the beginning, she didn't understand the teacher at all.
- **at** the beginning/end of something: The semester begins *at* the beginning of September. My birthday is *at* the end of June.
- **before/after** a time: You should finish the job *before* Friday. The library will be closed *after* six o'clock.
- **before/after** an action takes place: Turn off the lights *before* you leave. Wash the dishes *after* you finish dinner.

## Appendix H

### Verbs and Adjectives Followed by a Preposition

Many verbs and adjectives are followed by a preposition.

accuse someone of	(be) familiar with	(be) prepared for/to
(be) accustomed to	(be) famous for	prevent (someone) from
adjust to	feel like	prohibit (someone) from
(be) afraid of	(be) fond of	protect (someone) from
agree with	forget about	(be) proud of
(be) amazed at/by	forgive someone for	recover from
(be) angry about	(be) glad about	(be) related to
(be) angry at/with	(be) good at	rely on/upon
apologize for	(be) grateful to someone for	(be) responsible for
approve of	(be) guilty of	(be) sad about
argue about	(be) happy about	(be) satisfied with
argue with	hear about	(be) scared of
(be) ashamed of	hear of	(be) sick of
(be) aware of	hope for	(be) sorry about
believe in	(be) incapable of	(be) sorry for
blame someone for	insist on/upon	speak about
(be) bored with/by	(be) interested in	speak to/with
(be) capable of	(be) involved in	succeed in
care about	(be) jealous of	(be) sure of/about
care for	(be) known for	(be) surprised at
compare to/with	(be) lazy about	take care of
complain about	listen to	talk about
(be) concerned about	look at	talk to/with
concentrate on	look for	thank (someone) for
consist of	look forward to	(be) thankful (to someone)
count on	(be) mad about	for
deal with	(be) mad at	think about/of
decide on	(be) made from/of	(be) tired of
depend on/upon	(be) married to	(be) upset about
(be) different from	object to	(be) upset with
disapprove of	(be) opposed to	(be) used to
(be) divorced from	participate in	wait for
dream about/of	plan on	warn (someone) about
(be) engaged to	pray to	(be) worried about
(be) excited about	pray for	worry about



# Appendix I

## Direct and Indirect Objects

The order of direct and indirect objects depends on the verb you use. It also can depend on whether you use a noun or a pronoun as the object.

**Group 1** Pronouns affect word order. The preposition used is *to*.

**Patterns:** He gave a present to his wife. (DO to IO)  
He gave his wife a present. (IO/DO)  
He gave it to his wife. (DO to IO)  
He gave her a present. (IO/DO)  
He gave it to her. (DO to IO)

**Verbs:** bring            lend            pass            sell            show            teach  
give            offer            pay            send            sing            tell  
hand            owe            read            serve            take            write

**Group 2** Pronouns affect word order. The preposition used is *for*.

**Patterns:** He bought a car for his daughter. (DO for IO)  
He bought his daughter a car. (IO/DO)  
He bought it for his daughter. (DO for IO)  
He bought her a car. (IO/DO)  
He bought it for her. (DO for IO)

**Verbs:** bake            buy            draw            get            make  
build            do            find            knit            reserve

**Group 3** Pronouns don't affect word order. The preposition used is *to*.

**Patterns:** He explained the problem to his friend. (DO to IO)  
He explained it to her. (DO to IO)

**Verbs:** admit            introduce            recommend            say  
announce            mention            repeat            speak  
describe            prove            report            suggest  
explain

**Group 4** Pronouns don't affect word order. The preposition used is *for*.

**Patterns:** He cashed a check for his friend. (DO for IO)  
He cashed it for her. (DO for IO)

**Verbs:** answer            change            design            open            prescribe  
cash            close            fix            prepare            pronounce

**Group 5** Pronouns don't affect word order. No preposition is used.

**Patterns:** She asked the teacher a question. (IO/DO)  
She asked him a question. (IO/DO)

**Verbs:** ask            charge            cost            wish            take (with time)

## Capitalization Rules

- The first word in a sentence: **M**y friends are helpful.
- The word “I”: My sister and **I** took a trip together.
- Names of people: **J**ulia Roberts; **G**eorge **W**ashington
- Titles preceding names of people: **D**octor (**D**r.) **S**mith;  
**P**resident **L**incoln; **Q**ueen **E**lizabeth; **M**r. **R**ogers; **M**rs. **C**arter
- Geographic names: the **U**nited States; **L**ake **S**uperior; **C**alifornia; the **R**ocky **M**ountains; the **M**ississippi **R**iver

NOTE: The word “the” in a geographic name is not capitalized.

- Street names: **P**ennsylvania **A**venue (**A**ve.); **W**all **S**treet (**S**t.);  
**A**bbey **R**oad (**R**d.)
- Names of organizations, companies, colleges, buildings, stores, hotels:  
the **R**epublican **P**arty; **H**einle **C**engage; **D**artmouth **C**ollege; the  
**U**niversity of **W**isconsin; the **W**hite **H**ouse; **B**loomington’s; the **H**ilton  
**H**otel
- Nationalities and ethnic groups: **M**exicans; **C**anadians; **S**paniards;  
**A**mericans; **J**ews; **K**urds; **E**skimos
- Languages: **E**nglish; **S**panish; **P**olish; **V**ietnamese; **R**ussian
- Months: **J**anuary; **F**ebruary
- Days: **S**unday; **M**onday
- Holidays: **C**hristmas; **I**ndependence **D**ay
- Important words in a title: *G*rammar in *C*ontext; *T*he *O*ld *M*an and the *S*ea;  
*R*omeo and *J*uliet; *T*he *S*ound of *M*usic

NOTE: Capitalize “the” as the first word of a title.



## Glossary of Grammatical Terms

- **Adjective** An adjective gives a description of a noun.  
It's a *tall* tree.      He's an *old* man.      My neighbors are *nice*.
- **Adverb** An adverb describes the action of a sentence or an adjective or another adverb.  
She speaks English *fluently*.      I drive *carefully*.  
She speaks English *extremely* well.      She is *very* intelligent.
- **Adverb of Frequency** An adverb of frequency tells how often the action happens.  
I *never* drink coffee.      They *usually* take the bus.
- **Affirmative** means *yes*.
- **Apostrophe '** We use the apostrophe for possession and contractions.  
My *sister's* friend is beautiful.      Today *isn't* Sunday.
- **Article** The definite article is *the*. The indefinite articles are *a* and *an*.  
I have *a* cat.      I ate *an* apple.      *The* teacher came late.
- **Auxiliary Verb** Some verbs have two parts: an auxiliary verb and a main verb.  
He *can't* study.      We *will* return.
- **Base Form** The base form, sometimes called the "simple" form, of the verb has no tense. It has no ending (-s or -ed): *be, go, eat, take, write*.  
I *didn't* go out.      We *don't* know you.      He *can't* drive.
- **Capital Letter** A B C D E F G . . .
- **Clause** A clause is a group of words that has a subject and a verb. Some sentences have only one clause.  
*She speaks Spanish.*

Some sentences have a **main clause** and a **dependent clause**.

MAIN CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE ( <b>reason clause</b> )
She found a good job	because she has computer skills.
MAIN CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE ( <b>time clause</b> )
She'll turn off the light	before she goes to bed.
MAIN CLAUSE	DEPENDENT CLAUSE ( <b>if clause</b> )
I'll take you to the doctor	if you don't have your car on Saturday.

(continued)

- **Colon :**
- **Comma ,**
- **Comparative Form** A comparative form of an adjective or adverb is used to compare two things.  
My house is *bigger* than your house.  
Her husband drives *faster* than she does.
- **Complement** The complement of the sentence is the information after the verb. It completes the verb phrase.  
He works *hard*.      I slept *for five hours*.      They are *late*.
- **Consonant** The following letters are consonants: *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z*.  
NOTE: *y* is sometimes considered a vowel, as in the word *syllable*.
- **Contraction** A contraction is made up of two words put together with an apostrophe.  
*He's* my brother.      *You're* late.      They *won't* talk to me.  
(*He's* = *he is*)      (*You're* = *you are*)      (*won't* = *will not*)
- **Count Noun** Count nouns are nouns that we can count. They have a singular and a plural form.  
1 pen – 3 pens      1 table – 4 tables
- **Dependent Clause** See **Clause**.
- **Direct Object** A direct object is a noun (phrase) or pronoun that receives the action of the verb.  
We saw *the movie*.      You have *a nice car*.      I love *you*.
- **Exclamation Mark !**
- **Frequency Words** Frequency words are *always, usually, generally, often, sometimes, rarely, seldom, hardly ever, never*.  
I *never* drink coffee.      We *always* do our homework.
- **Hyphen -**
- **Imperative** An imperative sentence gives a command or instructions. An imperative sentence omits the word *you*.  
*Come here*.      *Don't be late*.      *Please sit down*.
- **Infinitive** An infinitive is *to + base form*.  
I want *to leave*.      You need *to be* here on time.
- **Linking Verb** A linking verb is a verb that links the subject to the noun or adjective after it. Linking verbs include *be, seem, feel, smell, sound, look, appear, taste*.  
She *is* a doctor.      She *seems* very intelligent.      She *looks* tired.



- **Modal** The modal verbs are *can, could, shall, should, will, would, may, might, must*.

They *should* leave. I *must* go.

- **Negative** means no.

- **Nonaction Verb** A nonaction verb has no action. We do not use a continuous tense (*be + verb -ing*) with a nonaction verb. The nonaction verbs are: *believe, cost, care, have, hear, know, like, love, matter, mean, need, own, prefer, remember, see, seem, think, understand, want*, and sense-perception verbs.

She *has* a laptop. We *love* our mother. You *look* great.

- **Noncount Noun** A noncount noun is a noun that we don't count. It has no plural form.

She drank some *water*. He prepared some *rice*.  
Do you need any *money*? We had a lot of *homework*.

- **Noun** A noun is a person (*brother*), a place (*kitchen*), or a thing (*table*). Nouns can be either count (*1 table, 2 tables*) or noncount (*money, water*).

My *brother* lives in California. My *sisters* live in New York.  
I get *advice* from them. I drink *coffee* every day.

- **Noun Modifier** A noun modifier makes a noun more specific.

*fire* department    *Independence* Day    *can* opener

- **Noun Phrase** A noun phrase is a group of words that form the subject or object of the sentence.

A *very nice woman* helped me at registration.  
I bought a *big box of cereal*.

- **Object** The object of the sentence follows the verb. It receives the action of the verb.

He bought a *car*. I saw a *movie*. I met *your brother*.

- **Object Pronoun** Use object pronouns (*me, you, him, her, it, us, them*) after the verb or preposition.

He likes *her*. I saw the movie. Let's talk about *it*.

- **Parentheses ( )**

- **Paragraph** A paragraph is a group of sentences about one topic.

- **Participle, Present** The present participle is verb + *-ing*.

She is *sleeping*. They were *laughing*.

- **Period .**

- **Phrase** A group of words that go together.

*Last month* my sister came to visit.  
There is a strange car *in front of my house*.

(continued)

- **Plural** Plural means more than one. A plural noun usually ends with *-s*.  
She has beautiful *eyes*.      My *feet* are big.
- **Possessive Form** Possessive forms show ownership or relationship.  
Mary's coat is in the closet.      My brother lives in Miami.
- **Preposition** A preposition is a short connecting word: *about, above, across, after, around, as, at, away, back, before, behind, below, by, down, for, from, in, into, like, of, off, on, out, over, to, under, up, with*.  
The book is *on* the table.      She studies *with* her friends.
- **Pronoun** A pronoun takes the place of a noun.  
I have a new car. I bought *it* last week.  
John likes Mary, but *she* doesn't like *him*.
- **Punctuation** Period . Comma , Colon : Semicolon ; Question Mark ? Exclamation Mark !
- **Question Mark ?**
- **Quotation Marks " "**
- **Regular Verb** A regular verb forms its past tense with *-ed*.  
He *worked* yesterday.      I *laughed* at the joke.
- **-s Form** A present tense verb that ends in *-s* or *-es*.  
He *lives* in New York.      She *watches* TV a lot.
- **Sense-Perception Verb** A sense-perception verb has no action. It describes a sense. The sense perception verbs are: *look, feel, taste, sound, smell*.  
She *feels* fine.      The coffee *smells* fresh.      The milk *tastes* sour.
- **Sentence** A sentence is a group of words that contains a subject<sup>1</sup> and a verb (at least) and gives a complete thought.  
SENTENCE: She came home.  
NOT A SENTENCE: When she came home
- **Simple Form of Verb** The simple form of the verb, also called the base form, has no tense; it never has an *-s, -ed, or -ing* ending.  
Did you *see* the movie?      I couldn't *find* your phone number.
- **Singular** Singular means one.  
She ate a *sandwich*.      I have one *television*.
- **Subject** The subject of the sentence tells who or what the sentence is about.  
My *sister* got married last April. *The wedding* was beautiful.

<sup>1</sup>In an imperative sentence, the subject *you* is omitted: Sit down. Come here.



- **Subject Pronouns** Use subject pronouns (*I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they*) before a verb.

*They* speak Japanese.      *We* speak Spanish.

- **Superlative Form** A superlative form of an adjective or adverb shows the number one item in a group of three or more.

January is the *coldest* month of the year.

My brother speaks English the *best* in my family.

- **Syllable** A syllable is a part of a word that has only one vowel sound. (Some words have only one syllable.)

change (one syllable)

after (af-ter = two syllables)

look (one syllable)

responsible (re-spon-si-ble = four syllables)

- **Tag Question** A tag question is a short question at the end of a sentence. It is used in conversation.

You speak Spanish, *don't you?*      He's not happy, *is he?*

- **Tense** A verb has tense. Tense shows when the action of the sentence happened.

**SIMPLE PRESENT:** She usually *works* hard.

**FUTURE:** She *will work* tomorrow.

**PRESENT CONTINUOUS:** She *is working* now.

**SIMPLE PAST:** She *worked* yesterday.

- **Verb** A verb is the action of the sentence.

He *runs* fast.      I *speak* English.

Some verbs have no action. They are linking verbs. They connect the subject to the rest of the sentence.

He *is* tall.      She *looks* beautiful.      You *seem* tired.

- **Vowel** The following letters are vowels: *a, e, i, o, u*. *Y* is sometimes considered a vowel (for example, in the word *mystery*).

# Appendix L

## Special Uses of Articles

No Article	Article
Personal names: John Kennedy Michael Jordan	The whole family: the Kennedys the Jordans
Title and name: Queen Elizabeth Pope Benedict	Title without name: the Queen the Pope
Cities, states, countries, continents: Cleveland Ohio Mexico South America	Places that are considered a union: the United States the former Soviet Union the United Kingdom Place names: the _____ of _____ the Republic of China the District of Columbia
Mountains: Mount Everest Mount McKinley	Mountain ranges: the Himalayas the Rocky Mountains
Islands: Coney Island Staten Island	Collectives of islands: the Hawaiian Islands the Virgin Islands the Philippines
Lakes: Lake Superior Lake Michigan	Collectives of lakes: the Great Lakes the Finger Lakes
Beaches: Palm Beach Pebble Beach	Rivers, oceans, seas, canals: the Mississippi River the Atlantic Ocean the Dead Sea the Panama Canal
Streets and avenues: Madison Avenue Wall Street	Well-known buildings: the Willis Tower the Empire State Building
Parks: Central Park Hyde Park	Zoos: the San Diego Zoo the Milwaukee Zoo



No Article	Article
Seasons: summer      fall spring      winter Summer is my favorite season. NOTE: After a preposition, <i>the</i> may be used. In (the) winter, my car runs badly.	Deserts: the Mojave Desert the Sahara Desert
Directions: north      south east      west	Sections of a piece of land: the Southwest (of the U.S.) the West Side (of New York)
School subjects: history math	Unique geographical points: the North Pole the Vatican
Name + <i>college or university</i> : Northwestern University Bradford College	The University/College of _____: the University of Michigan the College of DuPage County
Magazines: <i>Time</i> <i>Sports Illustrated</i>	Newspapers: the <i>Tribune</i> the <i>Wall Street Journal</i>
Months and days: September Monday	Ships: the <i>Titanic</i> the <i>Queen Elizabeth</i>
Holidays and dates Thanksgiving Mother's Day July 4 (month + day)	The day of the month: the Fourth of July the fifth of May
Diseases: cancer    AIDS polio     malaria	Ailments: a cold            a toothache a headache       the flu
Games and sports: poker soccer	Musical instruments, after <i>play</i> : the drums the piano NOTE: Sometimes <i>the</i> is omitted. She plays (the) drums.
Languages: French English	The _____ language: the French language the English language
Last month, year, week, etc. = the one before this one: I forgot to pay my rent last month. The teacher gave us a test last week.	The last month, the last year, the last week, etc. = the last in a series: December is the last month of the year. Summer vacation begins the last week in May.

(continued)

No Article	Article
In office = in an elected position: The president is in office for four years.	In the office = in a specific room: The teacher is in the office.
In back/front: She's in back of the car.	In the back/the front: He's in the back of the bus.



## Appendix M

### Alphabetical List of Irregular Verb Forms

Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle	Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle
be	was/were	been	drink	drank	drunk
bear	bore	born/borne	drive	drove	driven
beat	beat	beaten	eat	ate	eaten
become	became	become	fall	fell	fallen
begin	began	begun	feed	fed	fed
bend	bent	bent	feel	felt	felt
bet	bet	bet	fight	fought	fought
bid	bid	bid	find	found	found
bind	bound	bound	fit	fit	fit
bite	bit	bitten	flee	fled	fled
bleed	bled	bled	fly	flew	flown
blow	blew	blown	forbid	forbade	forbidden
break	broke	broken	forget	forgot	forgotten
breed	bred	bred	forgive	forgave	forgiven
bring	brought	brought	freeze	froze	frozen
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	get	got	gotten
build	built	built	give	gave	given
burst	burst	burst	go	went	gone
buy	bought	bought	grind	ground	ground
cast	cast	cast	grow	grew	grown
catch	caught	caught	hang	hung	hung <sup>2</sup>
choose	chose	chosen	have	had	had
cling	clung	clung	hear	heard	heard
come	came	come	hide	hid	hidden
cost	cost	cost	hit	hit	hit
creep	crept	crept	hold	held	held
cut	cut	cut	hurt	hurt	hurt
deal	dealt	dealt	keep	kept	kept
dig	dug	dug	know	knew	known
dive	dove/dived	dove/dived	lay	laid	laid
do	did	done	lead	led	led
draw	drew	drawn	leave	left	left

<sup>2</sup>Hanged is used as the past form to refer to punishment by death. Hung is used in other situations:  
She hung the picture on the wall.



Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle	Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle
lend	lent	lent	split	split	split
let	let	let	spread	spread	spread
lie	lay	lain	spring	sprang	sprung
light	lit/lighted	lit/lighted	stand	stood	stood
lose	lost	lost	steal	stole	stolen
make	made	made	stick	stuck	stuck
mean	meant	meant	sting	stung	stung
meet	met	met	stink	stank	stunk
mistake	mistook	mistaken	strike	struck	struck/stricken
overcome	overcame	overcome	strive	strove	striven
overdo	overdid	overdone	swear	swore	sworn
overtake	overtook	overtaken	sweep	swept	swept
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown	swell	swelled	swelled/swollen
pay	paid	paid	swim	swam	swum
plead	pled/pleaded	pled/pleaded	swing	swung	swung
prove	proved	proven/proved	take	took	taken
put	put	put	teach	taught	taught
quit	quit	quit	tear	tore	torn
read	read	read	tell	told	told
ride	rode	ridden	think	thought	thought
ring	rang	rung	throw	threw	thrown
rise	rose	risen	understand	understood	understood
run	ran	run	uphold	upheld	upheld
say	said	said	upset	upset	upset
see	saw	seen	wake	woke	woken
seek	sought	sought	wear	wore	worn
sell	sold	sold	weave	wove	woven
send	sent	sent	wed	wedded/wed	wedded/wed
set	set	set	weep	wept	wept
sew	sewed	sewed/sewn	win	won	won
shake	shook	shaken	wind	wound	wound
shed	shed	shed	withhold	withheld	withheld
shine	shone/shined	shone/shined	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
shoot	shot	shot	withstand	withstood	withstood
show	showed	shown/showed	wring	wrung	wrung
shrink	shrank/shrunk	shrunk/shrunk	write	wrote	written
shut	shut	shut			
sing	sang	sung			
sink	sank	sunk			
sit	sat	sat			
sleep	slept	slept			
slide	slid	slid			
slit	slit	slit			
speak	spoke	spoken			
speed	sped	sped			
spend	spent	spent			
spin	spun	spun			
spit	spit/spat	spit/spat			

**Note:**

The past and past participle of some verbs can end in *-ed* or *-t*.

burn	burned or burnt
dream	dreamed or dreamt
kneel	kneeled or knelt
learn	learned or learnt
leap	leaped or leapt
spill	spilled or spilt
spoil	spoiled or spoilt

# Appendix N

## Map of the United States of America



AL	Alabama	HI	Hawaii	MA	Massachusetts	NM	New Mexico	SD	South Dakota
AK	Alaska	ID	Idaho	MI	Michigan	NY	New York	TN	Tennessee
AZ	Arizona	IL	Illinois	MN	Minnesota	NC	North Carolina	TX	Texas
AR	Arkansas	IN	Indiana	MS	Mississippi	ND	North Dakota	UT	Utah
CA	California	IA	Iowa	MO	Missouri	OH	Ohio	VT	Vermont
CO	Colorado	KS	Kansas	MT	Montana	OK	Oklahoma	VA	Virginia
CT	Connecticut	KY	Kentucky	NE	Nebraska	OR	Oregon	WV	West Virginia
DE	Delaware	LA	Louisiana	NV	Nevada	PA	Pennsylvania	WI	Wisconsin
FL	Florida	ME	Maine	NH	New Hampshire	RI	Rhode Island	WY	Wyoming
GA	Georgia	MD	Maryland	NJ	New Jersey	SC	South Carolina	DC*	District of Columbia

\*The District of Columbia is not a state. Washington, D.C., is the capital of the United States.  
 Note: Washington, D.C., and Washington state are not the same.



# Index

## A

*A/an*, 156, 171, 438, 439, 440, 445  
vs. *the*, 443

Action verbs, 61-67

vs. nonaction verbs, 61

Active voice, 416, 425

vs. passive voice, form of, 418

Adjective(s), 192-193

with *as . . . as*, 393-394, 398-399

vs. adjective clauses, 358

after adverbs, 198, 200

vs. adverbs, 200

after *be*, *seem*, or sense-perception verbs, 192

comparative form, 382-383, 388, 390

ending in *-ed*, 3, 93, 192

ending in *-ing*, 192

ending in *-ly*, 198

after *enough*, 203

after *get*, 200

after impersonal expressions (*it + be*), 192

infinitives after, 332, 334, 336

before nouns, 192

with plural nouns, 157

possessive, 119, 121

prepositions with gerunds after, 327-328

superlative form, 381, 382, 386

with *very*, *so*, *quite*, and *extremely*, 192

Adjective clauses, 357-372

vs. adjectives, 358

formal and informal, prepositions in, 367

with relative pronoun as object, 362

with relative pronoun as subject, 360

with comma, 366

after superlative form, 381

with *when* and *whenever*, 366

with *whose*, 369

*who* vs. *whom* as object of, 362

Adverb(s), 198-206

with *as . . . as*, 393-394, 398-399

before adjectives, 198, 200

vs. adjectives, 200

comparative form, 382, 388, 390

after *enough*, 203

of frequency, 27

*-ly*, spelling of, AP5

of manner, 198

with passive voice, 418

with present perfect tense, 285

superlative form, 381, 382, 386

with *very*, *so*, *real*, and *quite*, 198

Adverbial phrases, gerunds in, 330

*A few*

vs. *few* or *very few*, 177

vs. *(a) little* or *very little*, 176, 448

Affirmative questions

in passive voice, 422

with present continuous tense, 52, 58

with present perfect continuous, 296

with present perfect tense, 284, 286

with simple past tense, 94, 102

with simple present tense, 58

with *be going to* and *will*, 67, 70

Affirmative statements

with *be going to*, 70

with *be* in simple past tense, 94

with future tense, 67, 70

with modals, 243

in passive voice, 422

with present continuous tense, 46, 49,  
52, 58

with present perfect continuous, 296

with present perfect tense, 284, 286

with simple past tense, 100, 102

with simple present tense, 15, 58

*After* vs. *in*, 218

*Ago* vs. *before*, 218

*Alike/like*, 401

*A little*

before comparative forms, 388

vs. *(a) few*, 176, 448

vs. *little* or *very little*, 177

*A lot of*

with count and noncount nouns, 173

vs. *too much/too many*, 174, 205

*Already* and *yet*, 305

*An/a*, 156, 438, 439, 440

vs. *the*, 443

*a* vs. *an*, 171

with generalizations, 445

*Another/other*, 451-456

*Any*

vs. *no*, 171

before *other*, 451

vs. *some*, 171, 440, 457

Apostrophes

for contractions, 5

for possession, 117

Articles, 438-451, AP20-22

definite, 438, 442-443

vs. *a/an*, 443

after quantity words, 448

before superlative form, 381

indefinite, 156, 438, 439, 440

*a* vs. *an*, 171

generalizations with, 156, 445

with singular nouns, 156

vs. *the*, 443

*As . . . as*, 393-394

with adjectives and adverbs, 398-399

vs. *the same . . . as*, 398-399

*As many/much . . . as*, 395

## B

Base form. *See* Verb(s), base form

*Be*

adjectives after, 192

with *born*, 93

in contractions, 5

forms, 3, 5, 8, 93, 102

with passive voice, 417, 418

short answers with, 8, 102

simple past tense, 93

simple present tense, 3

with *there*. *See* *There + be*, 166-167

uses, 3

*Be able to*, 240, 248

*Be allowed to*, 240

*Before*

vs. *by*, 218

vs. *ago*, 218

*Be going to*, 70

vs. *will*, 72

*Be like* vs. *look like*, 403

*Be permitted to*, 248

*Be supposed to*, 240, 256

vs. *must*, 246

pronunciation of, 246

*Be used to*

gerund after, 346

vs. *get used to*, 346

negative of, 346

noun after, 346

vs. *used to*, 346

*By* vs. *before*, 218

## C

*Can*, 240, 242, 248, 268

*Cannot*, 242, 256

*Can't*, 256

pronunciation of, 248

Clauses

adjective. *See* Adjective clauses,

357-372

*if*, 75

*since* clauses, 287

*time*, 75

Commas, 75

with adjective clauses, 366, 369

with time clauses, 222

Comparatives, 380, 382-383, 388-406

forms, 388

irregular, 382

spelling of, 383

word order with, 390

Comparison

with *as . . . as*, 393-394

with *as many/much . . . as*, 395

with *the same . . . as*, 397

Contractions

with *be*, 5

with *don't/doesn't*, 17

with *had*, 252

with *has/have* not, 284

negative

with *be*, 5, 93

with modals, 242

with present continuous tense, 46

with short answers, 8, 19, 52, 102, 243,  
286, 296

with *was/were* not, 93

with *wh-* words, 9

with *will*, 67

with *would*, 268

- Could*, 240  
to ask permission, 268  
for past ability, 248  
for past permission, 248
- Count nouns, 159–165, 171, 173, 439, 445  
with *a few* or *several*, 176  
with *a lot of/many*, 173  
with *as many... as*, 395  
using *a* or *an*, 171  
with expressions of quantity, 170  
vs. noncount nouns, 159  
plural, 159  
quantities with, 164  
questions using *how many*, 173  
singular, 159  
with *there + be*, 166  
*too many* before, 203
- D**
- Definite article, 438, 442–443, AP20–22  
vs. *a/an*, 443  
before superlative form, 381
- Different from*, 404
- Direct object(s), 129  
and indirect objects, AP13  
reflexive pronoun as, 132  
after *say*, 130
- Do/does/did*, in questions, 136–137
- Don't/doesn't*, 17
- Don't have to* vs. *must not*, 256
- During* vs. *for*, 218
- E**
- ed*  
adjectives ending in, 3, 192  
for regular past tense verbs, 95, 282  
for regular past participle, 282
- Enough*, 203
- Equality  
*as... as for*, 398–399  
*the same... as for*, 398–399
- er*, comparative form, 388
- Ever*, 305  
questions with, 31  
in superlative statements, 381
- Every* vs. *all*, 157
- F**
- Few/very few* vs. *a few*, 177
- Few* vs. *(a) little*, 177, 448
- For*, 297  
vs. *during*, 218  
with noun or object pronoun, 334  
with present perfect tense, 287
- Frequency words and expressions, 27–33  
answering *how often* with, 31  
position of, 29, 31  
in short answers, 31  
with simple present tense, 27  
with *will*, 67
- Future tense, 67–78  
with *be going to*, 70  
vs. *will*, 72  
negatives, 67  
with *time/if* clause, 75
- G**
- Gerund(s), 320–331  
in adverbial phrases, 330  
after *be used to/get used to*, 346  
vs. infinitive subjects, 334  
vs. infinitives, 327, 328  
as noun modifiers, 194  
after prepositions, 327–328  
as subject, 323  
after verbs, 325, 340
- Get*, adjective after, 200  
expressions with, AP8–10
- Get used to*, 346
- Good* vs. *well*, 198, 200
- Got to*, informal pronunciation of, 244
- H**
- Had*, contraction with, 252
- Had better*, 252, 256
- Hardly* vs. *hard*, 198
- Have*, as action vs. nonaction verb, 61
- Have got to*, 244
- Have/has* with present perfect tense  
contractions with, 284  
with present perfect tense, 280
- Have to*, 240, 244
- How long*, with present perfect tense. See  
Since clauses, 287
- How many*  
vs. *how much*, 173  
with present perfect tense, 302
- How often*, 31
- I**
- If* clauses, with future tense, 75
- Indefinite articles, 156, 438, 439, 440  
*a* vs. *an*, 171  
generalizations with, 156, 445  
with singular nouns, 156  
vs. *the*, 443
- Indefinite pronouns, 457–460
- Indirect object(s), 129, AP13  
after *tell*, 130  
reflexive pronoun as, 132
- Inequality, 398–399
- Infinitive(s), 332–345  
after adjectives, 332, 334, 336  
after expressions with *it*, 332  
vs. gerunds, 327, 328  
*help* followed by object and, 341  
after nouns, 334  
objects before, 332, 341  
to show purpose, 332, 343  
as subject, 334  
after verbs, 332, 338, 340
- Infinitive phrases, after *too* and *enough*,  
203
- ing* form  
as adjectives, 192  
as gerund, 320  
with present continuous tense, 46  
with past continuous tense, 220  
spelling of, AP1
- In order to*, 343
- In vs. after*, 218
- Irregular adjectives and adverbs, 382  
comparatives and superlatives of, 382
- Irregular noun plurals, 154, AP4–5
- Irregular verbs  
past and past participle, 282–283,  
AP22–23  
simple past tense, 97
- It**  
before impersonal expressions, 192  
infinitives after expressions with, 332  
passive voice after, 425  
with *take* and *time*, 23
- L**
- Late* vs. *late*, 198
- Like/alike*, 401
- Little*  
vs. *(a) few*, 177, 448  
vs. *a little*, 177
- Look like* vs. *be like*, 403
- ly* adjectives, 198
- ly* adverbs, 198  
with *more*, 388
- M**
- Many*, 448  
vs. *much*, 173
- May*, 240  
to ask permission, 248, 268  
vs. *maybe*, 264  
for possibility, 264
- Maybe* vs. *may/might* be, 264
- May not*, 256
- Might*, 240  
for possibility, 264
- Modals and related expressions, 239–271  
*be able to*, 240, 248  
*be allowed to*, 240  
*be permitted to*, 248  
*be supposed to*, 240, 246  
*can*, 240, 248, 268  
*cannot*, 242  
*could*, 240, 248, 268  
*had better*, 252  
*have got to*, 244  
*have to*, 240, 244  
*may*, 240, 248, 264, 268  
*might*, 240, 264  
*must*, 240, 244, 246, 252  
for obligation or urgency, 244, 245,  
261  
for conclusions/deductions, 261  
negatives, 242, 256  
for politeness, 268  
*should*, 240, 252  
statements and questions with, 243  
*will*, 240, 264, 268  
*would*, 240, 268
- More*  
*any* and *some* before, 457  
comparative form with, 388
- Most*, 448
- Much*  
before comparative forms, 388  
vs. *many*, 173
- Must*, 240  
vs. *be supposed to*, 246  
for necessity/obligation/urgency, 244,  
246  
with rules, 252  
vs. *should*, 252  
for deduction/conclusion, 261
- Must not*  
vs. *don't have to*, 256  
for negative conclusions/deductions,  
261



**N**

## Negative(s)

- with *be going to*, 70
- of *be used to*, 346
- of *get used to*, 346
- with future tense, 67
- of modals, 256
- with past continuous tense, 220
- with simple present tense, 17
- with present continuous tense, 46, 52
- with present perfect continuous tense, 296
- with present perfect tense, 284, 286
- with simple past tense, 100, 102
- with *there + be*, 166
- of *used to*, 90, 346
- with *will*, 67

## Negative conclusions/deductions, must not for, 261

## Negative questions

- with *be going to*, 70
- with *be in past*, 94
- in passive voice, 422
- with present continuous tense, 52
- with present perfect continuous tense, 296
- with present perfect tense, 284, 286
- with simple past tense, 102
- with *will*, 67

## Negative statements

- with *any*, 440, 457
- with *be going to*, 70
- with *be in past*, 94
- with modal, 243
- in passive voice, 422
- with past tense of *be*, 93
- with present continuous tense, 52
- with present perfect continuous tense, 296
- with present perfect tense, 286
- with simple past tense, 100, 102
- with simple present tense, 17
- with *some/any*, 171
- with *will*, 67

## Never

- with simple present tense, 27
- verb after, 31

## Nonaction verbs, 61-67, 297

- vs. action verbs, 61

## Noncount nouns, 159-165, 171, 173, 439, 445

- vs. count nouns, 159
- with expressions of quantity with, 170
- with *a little*, 176
- with *as much . . . as*, 395
- quantities with, 164
- questions using *how much*, 173
- with *some*, 443
- with *there + be*, 166
- too much* before, 203
- using *a lot of/much* with, 173
- using *some or any*, 171

## Noun(s)

- with *the same . . . as*, 397
- adjectives before, 192
- comparatives with, 390
- as compound words, 194
- contractions with, 5

count nouns, 159-165, 171, 173, 439, 445

definite article with, 442-443

after *enough*, 203

general, 448

gerunds before, 194

with indefinite articles, 440

indefinite vs. definite, with *the other/another*, 451

before infinitives, 334, 341

as modifiers, 194

noncount nouns, 159-165, 171, 173, 439, 445

*one/ones* as substitution after adjective, 192

possessive, 117, 119, 120, 194

with *the same . . . as*, 398-399

singular and plural, 153-159, AP4-5

specific, 442-443

superlative before, 386

with *there + be*, 166

*for* with, 334

Noun modifiers, 194-197

**O**

## Object(s)

- direct and indirect, 129, AP13
- before infinitives, 332, 341
- of preposition, reflexive pronoun as, 132
- with *say/tell*, 130
- verbs without, 425

## Object pronouns, 124-132, 125

before infinitives, 341

after *than*, 388

*for* with, 334

*One*, as indefinite pronoun, 457

*One/ones*

after *other/another*, 451

as substitute for noun, 192

*Other*

after possessive form, 451

after *some*, 451

*Other/another*, 451-456

**P**

## Participles, past

- vs. base forms and past forms, 282
- of irregular and regular verbs, 282
- with passive voice, 417
- with present perfect tense, 280

## Passive voice, 415-436

vs. active voice, form of, 418

with adverbs, 418

with a *by* phrase, 425

form of, 417, 418

with a performer, 417

without a performer, 419, 425

pronouns with, 425

in statements and questions, 422

uses of, 418, 419

verbs that cannot be used with, 425

word order with, 418

## Past continuous tense, 221-231

forms of, 220

vs. simple past tense, 230

with simple past tense, 222, 225

with specific times, 221

*when* with,

vs. simple past tense, 229

vs. *while*, 225

with *when* and clauses, 222

with *while* clauses, 225

Past forms, irregular, 283, AP22-23

## Past participles

- vs. base forms and past forms, 282
- of regular and irregular verbs, 282
- with passive voice, 417, 418
- with present perfect tense, 280

Past progressive tense. See Past continuous tense

Past tense. See Simple past tense

## Phrases

prepositional, after superlative form, 381

## Plural nouns, 153-159, AP4-5

with *are or there are*, 5

count nouns, 159

using *some or any*, 171

generalizations with, 156, 445

irregular forms, 154, AP4-5

with *other/another*, 451

possessive forms, 117

pronunciation of, 153

regular forms, 153

with *some*, 443

with *there + be*, 167

Possession, with *whose* in adjective clause, 369

## Possessive forms, 117-124, 443

of adjectives, 119, 121

of inanimate objects, 117

as noun modifiers, 194

of nouns, 117, 119, 120

before *other*, 451

of pronouns, 120, 121

## Preposition(s)

in adjective clauses, 367

adverbial phrases beginning with, gerunds in, 330

gerunds after, 327-328

object of, reflexive pronoun as, 132

object pronoun after, 124

word order with

at end of question, 52

in *wh-* questions, 21

Prepositional phrases, after superlative form, 381

## Present continuous tense, 46-50

affirmative questions with, 52, 58

affirmative statements with, 46, 49, 52, 58

forms, 46, 58

with future meaning, 72

questions with, 52

negatives with, 46, 52

short answers with, 52

vs. simple present, 58

uses of, 46, 49, 58

## Present perfect continuous tense, 294-301

formation of, 296

negatives, 296

nonaction verbs and, 297

vs. present perfect, 297

short answers with, 296

statements and questions with, 296

with *for* and *since*, 297

use of, 297

Present perfect progressive tense. See Present perfect continuous tense



Present perfect tense, 280–293, 302–310  
 adverbs with, 285  
 affirmative statements and questions  
 with, 284, 286  
 with *for* + an amount of time, 287  
 continuation from past to present with,  
 287  
 contractions with, 284  
 formation of, 280  
*have/has* with, 280  
 with indefinite past time, 305  
 negative statements and questions with,  
 284, 286  
 with no reference to time, 305  
 past participle with, 280  
 vs. present perfect continuous tense,  
 297  
 questions using, 286  
 with *ever*, *yet*, and *already*, 305  
 with *how much/how many*, 302  
 with *how long*, 287  
 repetition from past to present with, 302  
 short answers with, 286  
 vs. simple past tense, 292, 302  
 for repeated action, 304  
 vs. simple present tense, 290  
*since* clause with, 287  
 with *so far* and *up to now*, 302, 304  
 with *yet* and *already*, 305

Present progressive tense. *See* Present  
 continuous tense

Present tense. *See* Simple present tense

Pronouns  
 in active vs. passive sentences, 425  
 definite, 457  
 indefinite, 457–460  
 object, 124–132  
 before infinitives, 341  
 after *than*, 388  
 for with, 334  
 possessive, 120, 121  
 reflexive, 132–133, 132–136  
 relative, 360–369  
 in short answers, 8  
 subject, 119, 121, 125  
 after *than*, 388

Pronunciation  
 of *be supposed to*, 246  
 of *can* and *can't*, 248  
 of *-ed* endings, AP1  
 of *going to* as “gonna,” 70  
 of *got to*, 244  
 of *had better*, 252  
 of *have to*, 244  
 of *s* form of nouns, 153  
 of *to* in infinitives, 338  
 of *used to*, 346  
 of *want to* as “wanna,” 338

Punctuation  
 apostrophes  
 for contractions, 5  
 for possession, 117  
 commas, 75  
 with adjective clauses, 366, 369  
 separating clauses, time clauses, 222  
 separating frequency expressions at  
 beginning of sentences, 29  
 with *time/if* clause, 75  
 Purpose, infinitives to show, 332–33

## Q

Quantity words and expressions, 170–180,  
 448  
 using *a few* or *several*, 176  
 with count and noncount nouns, 164,  
 170  
 with *there + be*, 166

Questions, 136–140  
 with *any*, 457  
 with *be going to*, 70  
 about the complement, 136–137  
*how often* in, 31  
 with modals, 243  
 for politeness, 268  
 prepositions in, 21  
 with present continuous tense, 52  
 with simple past tense, 102  
 with *some/any*, 171, 440  
 about the subject, 136–137  
 with verb tenses, 19, 52, 67–68, 94, 102,  
 286, 296,  
*wh.* *See* *Wh-* questions  
 with *whose*, 123  
 with *will*, 67  
*yes/no.* *See* *Yes/no* questions

## R

Reflexive pronouns, 132–136

Regular noun plurals, 153

Regular verbs  
 past and past participle, 282  
 simple past tense, 95

Relative clauses. *See* Adjective clauses

Relative pronouns  
 as object of adjective clause, 362  
 omission of in informal adjective clause,  
 367  
 as subject of adjective clause, 360  
*that*, 360, 362, 367  
*which*, 360, 362, 367  
*who*, 360, 362, 367  
*whom*, 362, 367  
*whose*, 369

## S

*Same as*, 404  
*Say/tell*, 130

Sense-perception verbs  
 as action vs. nonaction verbs, 61  
 adjective after, 192  
 with *like* and *alike*, 401

*-s* form of nouns, 153

Short answers  
 with *be*, 8  
 with *be going to*, 70  
 with frequency words, 31  
 with modals, 243  
 with present continuous tense, 52  
 with present perfect continuous tense,  
 296  
 with present perfect tense, 286  
 with simple past tense, 102  
 with simple present tense, 19

*Should*, 240  
 vs. *must*, 252

*Shouldn't*, 256

Similarity  
*be like* and *look like* to show, 403  
 with *like* and *alike*, 401

*same as* to show, 404

Simple past tense, 93–105  
 affirmative statements and questions  
 with, 102  
 with *be*, 93  
 irregular verbs, 97, AP22–23  
 negative statements with, 100  
 vs. past continuous tense, 230  
 with past continuous tense, 222  
 vs. present perfect tense, 292, 302  
 for repeated action, 304  
 regular verbs, 95  
 short answers with, 102  
*since* clause with. *See* *Since* clauses, 287  
 with *when*, vs. past continuous tense,  
 229

Simple present tense, 1–33  
 affirmative questions with, 58  
 affirmative statements with, 15, 58  
 with *be*, 3  
 forms, 15, 58  
 with frequency words and expressions, 27  
 in *if* and *time* clause, 75  
 with negative statements, 17  
 with nonaction verbs, 61  
 vs. present continuous tense, 58  
 vs. present perfect tense, 290  
 short answers with, 19  
 use, 15, 58  
*wh-* questions with, 19, 23  
*yes/no* questions with, 19

*Since*, 297  
 with present perfect tense, 287

Singular nouns, 156, 157  
 count nouns, 159  
 with generalizations, 156, 445  
 with indefinite articles, 156  
 irregular plurals, 154  
 with *a* or *an*, 443  
 with *other/another*, 451  
 regular plurals, 153  
 with *there + be*, 167

*-s* noun ending  
 contractions with, 5  
 possessive forms, 117

*So*, adjectives after, 192

*Some*, 170, 171, 448  
 vs. *any*, 457  
 as indefinite pronoun, 457  
 before *other*, 451

*Some/any*, 171, 440

Spelling  
 of comparatives and superlatives forms,  
 383  
 of *-ed* form of verb, AP1  
 of *-ing* form of verb, AP1  
 of *-ly* adverbs, AP5  
 of *-s* form of verb, AP1

Subject(s)  
 of adjective clauses, relative pronouns  
 as, 360  
 gerunds as, 323  
 infinitives as, 334  
 vs. gerund, 334  
 questions about, 136–137

Subject pronouns, 119, 121, 125  
 contractions with, 5  
 after *than*, 388

Superlatives, 380–387



of adjectives and adverbs, 381, 383, 382, 386  
form, 381  
of irregular adjectives and adverbs, 382  
before nouns, 386  
word order with, 386

## T

Take, with time, 23

Tell/say, 130

Tense(s)

future, 67-78

past continuous, 221-231

present continuous (present progressive), 46-50, 52, 58, 72

present perfect, 280-293, 297, 302-310

present perfect continuous (present perfect progressive), 294-301

simple past, 93-105, 222, 229, 230, 292, 302, 304

simple present, 1-33, 58, 61, 75, 290

Than, pronoun after, 388

That

as object of adjective clause, 362

as relative pronoun, 360

The, 438, 442

vs. *a/an*, 443

before superlative form, 381

There + *be*, 3, 166-169

contraction with, 5, 167

with count or noncount nouns, 166

negative forms of, 166

plural and singular nouns with, 167

with quantity words, 166

questions with, 167

uses of, 167

word order with, 167

with present perfect, 289

The same . . . as

vs. *as . . . as*, 398-399

Think, as action vs. nonaction verb, 61

Time clauses

comma with, 222

with future tense, 75, 215-219

Time words, 215-219, 231-232

To

in gerunds vs. infinitives, 327, 328

in infinitives, 332

pronunciation of, 338

with purpose, 343

Too

before adjectives and adverbs, 203

before an infinitive phrase, 203

vs. *enough*, 203

vs. *very*, 205

Too many

before count nouns, 203

vs. *a lot of*, 174, 205

Too much

vs. *a lot of*, 174, 205

with noncount nouns, 203  
after a verb phrase, 203

## U\*

Until, 215

Used to

base verb form after, 346

vs. *be/get used to*, 346

habitual past with, 90-93

negative of, 90, 346

pronunciation of, 346

## V

Verb(s)

action, 61-67

vs. nonaction verbs, 61

active voice of, 416

base form, 15

after *did*, 102

in infinitives, 332

after modal, 240

vs. past and past participle, 282-283

vs. *-s* form, 15

after *used to*, 346

gerunds after, 325, 340

infinitives after, 332, 338

irregular

past participles of, 282, AP22-23

simple past, 97

nonaction, 61-67, 297

vs. action verbs, 61

with no object, 425

passive voice of. See Passive voice

prepositions with gerunds after, 327-328

regular

past participles of, 282

past tense of, 95

*-s* form, 15

sense-perception

as action vs. nonaction verbs, 61

with *like* and *alike*, 401

superlative after, 386

Verb phrases

comparatives with, 390

superlative after, 386

Verb tenses. See Tense(s)

Very

adjectives after, 192

vs. *too*, 205

Very few/few vs. *a few*, 177

Very little/little vs. *a little*, 177

## W

Want to, pronunciation of, 338

Was/were

with past continuous tense, 220

with past tense, 93

Was/were going to, 228

Well vs. *good*, 198, 200

When, 215

in adjective clause, 366

vs. *whenever*, 217

vs. *while*, with past continuous tense, 225

When clause, 229

with past continuous tense, 222

Whenever vs. *when*, 217

Where, in adjective clause, 366

Which, as relative pronoun, 360

as object of adjective clause, 362

after preposition in adjective clause, 367

as subject of adjective clause, 360

While, 215

with past continuous tense, 230

with simple past tense, 230

vs. *when*, with past continuous tense, 225

Who

as object of adjective clause, 362

after preposition in adjective clause, 367

as subject of adjective clause, 360

vs. *whom*, 21, 137

vs. *whose*, 369

Whom

as object of adjective clause, 362

after preposition in adjective clause, 367

vs. *who*, 21, 137

in adjective clause, 362

Whose, 123

in adjective clause, 369

Wh- questions

*how often* in, 31

with *mean*, *spell*, *say*, *cost*, *take*, 23

with prepositions, 21

with tenses, 19, 52, 67-68, 70, 94, 102,

220, 286, 296

Will, 67-68, 240, 264, 268

vs. *be going to*, 72

Won't, 264

Word order

with adverbs, 198

with comparatives, 390

with direct and indirect objects, 129,

AP13

with frequency words and expressions,

29, 31

with gerunds, 320, 325

with negative questions, 9

with passive voice and adverbs, 418

with prepositions in *wh-* questions, 21

in statements with *be*, 8

with superlatives, 386

Would, 240

in contraction, 268

Would like, 268

Would rather, 268

## Y

Yes/no questions

with *be*, 8

with *ever*, 31

with simple present tense, 19

word order in, 8

Yet and *already*, 305



# Photo Credits

- 10, 71, 118, 129, 131, 140, 151, 185, 193, 195, 197, 240, 251, 254, 258, 279, 415, 429, 437, 453, 454 ©photostogo/RF  
38, 54, 154, 173, 364, 405, 449 ©photos.com/RF  
26, 45, 49, 155, 201, 227, 321, 337, 357, 438 ©istockphoto/RF  
1 (top) ©istockphoto/RF; (bottom) ©Lauren0788/Dreamstime/RF  
2 ©Phase4Photography/shutterstock/RF  
4 ©Pamela Cather/istockphoto/RF  
5 ©Eric Isselée/istockphoto/RF  
6 ©Aldo Murillo/istockphoto/RF  
12 ©Oleg Prikhodko/istockphoto/RF  
13 ©Stephen Sparkes/istockphoto/RF  
14 (top) ©Boris Djuranovic/Dreamstime/RF  
14 (bottom) ©photostogo/RF  
18 ©Jim Parkin/istockphoto/RF  
22 ©Aaron Bunker/shutterstock/RF  
24 ©Arthur Chen/shutterstock/RF  
25 ©Andreas Gradin/istockphoto/RF  
41 (left column, top) ©Katrina Brown/Dreamstime/RF; (left column, middle) ©Ljupco Smokovski/Dreamstime/RF; (left column, bottom) ©Milosluz/Dreamstime/RF; (right column, top) ©Fibobjects/Dreamstime/RF; (right column, bottom) ©Photowitch/Dreamstime/RF  
43 ©Catherine Yeulet/istockphoto/RF  
44 ©Noam Armonn/Dreamstime/RF  
47 ©Catherine Yeulet/istockphoto/RF  
57 ©Mandy Godbear/shutterstock/RF  
61 (top) ©photos.com/RF; (bottom) ©photostogo/RF  
62 ©Jeff Clow/Dreamstime/RF  
65 ©Lisa F. Young/shutterstock/RF  
66 ©Michael Krinke/istockphoto/RF  
67 Photo courtesy of Sandra Elbaum  
69 ©iofoto/shutterstock/RF  
77 ©Pascal Genest/istockphoto/RF  
78 ©Amanda Hsu Perkins/shutterstock/RF  
87 (top) ©Blend Images/Alamy; (bottom) ©INTERFOTO/Alamy  
88 ©Photos 12/Alamy  
89 (left) ©FilmMagic/Getty Images; (right) ©AFP/Getty Images  
92 ©AP Photo/LM Otero  
96 ©Time & Life Pictures/Getty Images  
99 ©AP Photo/Obama Presidential Campaign  
101 ©AFP/Getty Images  
115 Photo courtesy of Sandra Elbaum  
121 ©Kimberly Hall/shutterstock/RF  
126 ©Crystal Kirk/Dreamstime/RF  
127 ©Aldo Murillo/istockphoto/RF  
128 ©JUPITERIMAGES/Brand X/Alamy  
133 (top) ©photostogo/RF; (bottom) ©Diego Cervo/shutterstock/RF  
135 ©zulufoto/shutterstock/RF  
152 ©Getty Images  
158 ©Getty Images  
163 (top) ©photostogo/RF; (bottom, left) ©photos.com/RF; (bottom, right) ©Aweech/Dreamstime/RF  
169 ©Getty Images  
170 ©shutterstock/RF  
177 (top) ©Nexus7/Dreamstime/RF; (bottom) ©Serban Enache/Dreamstime/RF  
189 (top) ©istockphoto/RF; (bottom) ©Monkey Business Images/shutterstock/RF  
190 ©Sean Locke/istockphoto/RF  
196 ©Matjaz Boncina/istockphoto/RF  
202 ©Monkey Business Images/shutterstock/RF  
205 ©Pamela Moore/istockphoto/RF  
213 ©Jacom Stephens/istockphoto/RF  
214 ©Patti McConville/Alamy  
215 Photo courtesy of Sandra Elbaum  
221 ©Caro/Alamy  
223 ©Photo Researchers/Alamy  
239 ©Design Pics Inc /Alamy  
241 ©Kenneth C. Zirkel/istockphoto/RF  
253 ©Monkey Business Images/Dreamstime/RF  
266 ©Bryan Reese/istockphoto/RF  
267 ©Gene Chutka/istockphoto/RF  
270 ©Gene Chutka/istockphoto/RF  
281 (top) ©Getty Images; (bottom) ©Alex Segre/Alamy  
291 ©Chris Schmidt/istockphoto/RF  
293 ©Jenkedco/Dreamstime/RF  
294 ©Noriko Brewster/istockphoto/RF  
300 ©Vasiliki Varvaki/istockphoto/RF  
301 ©Linda & Colin McKie/istockphoto/RF  
309 ©Monkey Business Images/shutterstock/RF  
319 (left) ©Thomas M. Perkins/shutterstock/RF; (right) ©Sean Locke/istockphoto/RF  
330 ©Pali Rao/istockphoto/RF  
341 ©Brad Killer/istockphoto/RF  
349 ©Lisa Kyle Young/istockphoto/RF  
359 ©Ted Foxx/Alamy  
363 ©Oleg Kruglov/Dreamstime/RF  
366 ©ClassicStock/Alamy  
368 ©Zsolt Nyulaszi/shutterstock/RF  
379 (clockwise from left) ©Jack Rogers/Dreamstime/RF; ©Marek Slusarczyk/Dreamstime/RF; ©Rayna Januska/istockphoto/RF  
380 ©Photogolfer/Dreamstime/RF  
384 (top) ©Jose Gil/Dreamstime/RF; (bottom) ©Aflo Foto Agency/Alamy  
387 ©Andreas Gradin/shutterstock/RF  
389 (top) ©Ron Sumners/istockphoto/RF; (bottom) ©Joanna Pecha/istockphoto/RF  
392 ©Oleksandr Gumerov/istockphoto/RF  
393 ©Photos 12/Alamy  
400 (top) ©Bill Grove/istockphoto/RF; (bottom) ©Antonio Ros/Dreamstime/RF  
401 (left) ©istockphoto/RF; (center) ©Frank Ramspott/istockphoto/RF; (right) ©Andrew Roche/istockphoto/RF  
404 (top) ©Laurence Gough/istockphoto/RF; (bottom) ©photostogo/RF  
417 ©Junial Enterprises/shutterstock/RF  
424 ©Brad Killer/istockphoto/RF  
441 ©James Pauls/istockphoto/RF  
443 ©shutterstock/RF  
444 ©Photoeuphoria/Dreamstime/RF  
446 ©Jeffrey Smith/istockphoto/RF  
447 ©James Steidl/istockphoto/RF  
457 ©Pattie Steib/istockphoto/RF  
459 ©Jason Stitt/Dreamstime/RF